

Explanatory Notes Relating to Income Tax

Published by
The Honourable Paul Martin, P.C., M.P.
Minister of Finance

December 1997

Canada





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
University of Toronto

Explanatory Notes Relating to Income Tax

Published by
The Honourable Paul Martin, P.C., M.P.
Minister of Finance

December 1997



Department of Finance
Canada

Ministère des Finances
Canada

© Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (1997)
All rights reserved

All requests for permission to reproduce this work or any part thereof shall be addressed to Public Works and Government Services Canada.

Price: \$58

Available from the Finance Canada Distribution Centre
300 Laurier Avenue West, Ottawa K1A 0G5
Tel: (613) 943-8665
Fax: (613) 996-0518

Cette publication est également disponible en français.

Cat No.: F2-97/2-1997E

ISBN-0-660-17274-7



PREFACE

These explanatory notes relate to proposed amendments to the *Income Tax Act* and other statutes. These notes describe these proposed amendments, clause by clause, for the assistance of Members of Parliament, taxpayers and their professional advisors.

The Honourable Paul Martin
Minister of Finance

Table of Contents

1	1	Income Tax Act	1
2	18	Excise Tax Act	18
3	25	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	25
4	37	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	37
5	48	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	48
6	58	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	58
7	68	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	68
8	78	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	78
9	88	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	88
10	98	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	98
11	108	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	108
12	118	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	118
13	128	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	128
14	138	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	138
15	148	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	148
16	158	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	158
17	168	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	168
18	178	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	178
19	188	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	188
20	198	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	198
21	208	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	208
22	218	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	218
23	228	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	228
24	238	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	238
25	248	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	248
26	258	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	258
27	268	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	268
28	278	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	278
29	288	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	288
30	298	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	298
31	308	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	308
32	318	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	318
33	328	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	328
34	338	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	338
35	348	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	348
36	358	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	358
37	368	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	368
38	378	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	378
39	388	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	388
40	398	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	398
41	408	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	408
42	418	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	418
43	428	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	428
44	438	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	438
45	448	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	448
46	458	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	458
47	468	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	468
48	478	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	478
49	488	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	488
50	498	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	498
51	508	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	508
52	518	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	518
53	528	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	528
54	538	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	538
55	548	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	548
56	558	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	558
57	568	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	568
58	578	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	578
59	588	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	588
60	598	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	598
61	608	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	608
62	618	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	618
63	628	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	628
64	638	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	638
65	648	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	648
66	658	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	658
67	668	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	668
68	678	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	678
69	688	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	688
70	698	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	698
71	708	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	708
72	718	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	718
73	728	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	728
74	738	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	738
75	748	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	748
76	758	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	758
77	768	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	768
78	778	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	778
79	788	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	788
80	798	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	798
81	808	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	808
82	818	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	818
83	828	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	828
84	838	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	838
85	848	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	848
86	858	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	858
87	868	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	868
88	878	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	878
89	888	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	888
90	898	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	898
91	908	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	908
92	918	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	918
93	928	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	928
94	938	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	938
95	948	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	948
96	958	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	958
97	968	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	968
98	978	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	978
99	988	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	988
100	998	Income Tax Act (Amendment)	998

These explanatory notes are provided to assist in an understanding of proposed amendments to the *Income Tax Act* and other statutes. These notes are intended for information purposes only and should not be construed as an official interpretation of the provisions they describe.

The Honourable Paul Martin
Minister of Finance

Bill C-108, An Act to amend the Income Tax Act (1997),
Bill C-109, An Act to amend the Income Tax Act (1997)

These bills were introduced in the House of Commons on June 11, 1997.
They were passed by the House of Commons on June 11, 1997.

Bill C-108

Amendment to the Income Tax Act (1997)
Bill C-109, An Act to amend the Income Tax Act (1997)
Bill C-110, An Act to amend the Income Tax Act (1997)
Bill C-111, An Act to amend the Income Tax Act (1997)

These bills were introduced in the House of Commons on June 11, 1997.

Bill C-108

Bill C-109

Table of Contents

Clause in Legis- lation	Section of the Income Tax Act	Topic	Page
Division A			
1997 Budget Proposals			
2.	12	Income from Business or Property	15
3.	18	Prohibited Deductions	16
4.	20	Income from Business or Property – Deductions	16
5.	37	Scientific Research and Experimental Development	17
6.	38	Taxable Capital Gains	18
7.	39	Capital Gains and Capital Losses	19
8.	40	Capital Gains	21
9.	56	Amounts Included in Income	21
10.	63	Child Care Expenses	23
11.	64	Attendant Care Expenses	23
12.	72	Reserves for Year of Death	24
13.	75	Attribution Rule	24
14.	81	Amounts not Included in Income	25
15.	87	Amalgamations	26
16.	88	Windings-Up	26
17.	89	Definitions	27
18.	107.3	Beneficiaries of Qualifying Environmental Trusts	28
19.	108	Trusts – Definitions	29
20.	110.1	Charitable Donations Deduction	30
21.	117.1	Annual Adjustment of Deductions and Other Amounts	32
22.	118.1	Charitable Donations Tax Credit	33
23.	118.2	Medical Expense Tax Credit	37
24.	118.3	Disability Tax Credit	40
25.	118.4	Disability Tax Credit	40
26.	118.5	Tuition Tax Credit	41
27.	118.6	Education Tax Credit	42
28.	118.61	Carryforward of Tuition and Education Tax Credits	42
29.	118.8	Transfer of Unused Credits to Spouse	43
30.	118.81	Transfer of the Tuition and Education Tax Credits	44
30.	118.9	Transfer to Parent or Grandparent	44

Table of Contents

Clause in Legis- lation	Section of the Income Tax Act	Topic	Page
31.	118.92	Ordering of Credits	45
32.	122.51	Refundable Medical Expense Supplement	45
33.	127	Investment Tax Credit	46
34.	127.41	Qualifying Environmental Trust	49
35.	127.52	Minimum Tax	49
36.	128.1	Change of Residence	50
37.	146	Registered Retirement Savings Plans	50
38.	146.1	Registered Education Savings Plans	54
39.	147.1	Registered Pension Plans	74
40.	147.3	Transfer of Property within a Registered Pension Plan	74
41.	149	Exemptions from Tax	75
41.1	149.1	National Arts Services Organizations	76
42.	152	Assessment	76
43.	153	Withholding of Tax	78
44.	156.1	Instalment Payments	78
45.	163	Penalties	79
46.	172	Appeals	79
47.	180	Appeal Period	80
48.	190.1	Part VI Tax on Capital of Financial Institutions	80
49.	204.2	Cumulative Excess Amount in respect of RRSPs	81
50.	204.8	Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations	82
51.	204.8	Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations – Definitions	82
52.	204.81	Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations – Conditions	83
53.	204.82	Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations – Recovery of Credit	84
54.	204.83	Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations – Refund of Tax and Penalty	87

Table of Contents

Clause in Legis- lation	Section of the Income Tax Act	Topic	Page
55.	204.85	Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations – Restrictions on Dissolution	88
56.	204.86	Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations – Return and Payment of Tax	89
57.	204.9	Tax in Respect of Overpayment to Registered Education Savings Plans	90
58.	204.91	Tax Payable by Subscribers	94
59.	204.94	Special Tax on Income Payments from Registered Education Savings Plans	95
60.	211.6	Tax on Qualifying Environmental Trusts	97
61.	211.6	Tax on Qualifying Environmental Trusts	97
62.	212	Non-Resident Withholding Tax	98
63.	214	Non-Residents – Deemed Payments	99
64.	217	CPP/QPP Lump Sum Payments	99
65.	241	Taxpayer Information	100
66.	248	Definitions	100
67.	250	Residence of Qualifying Environmental Trust	102

Division B

Other Amendments

68.	6	Group Disability Benefits – Insolvent Insurer . . .	103
69.	8	Income from Office or Employment – Deductions	105
70.	10	Valuation of Inventory	108
71.	12	Income from Business or Property – Inclusions	112
72.	12.2	Accrual Taxation of Life Insurance Policies – Riders	115
73.	13	Recaptured Depreciation	115
74.	14	Eligible Capital Property	123
75.	15	Shareholder Benefits	128
76.	15.1	Small Business Development Bonds	132
77.	15.2	Small Business Development Bonds	132
78.	16	Blended Payments	133

Table of Contents

Clause in Legis- lation	Section of the Income Tax Act	Topic	Page
79.	18	Income from Business or Property	
		– Disallowed Deductions	134
80.	18.1	Matchable Expenditures	138
81.	20	Income from Business or Property – Deductions	151
82.	27	Crown Corporations	158
83.	28	Farming or Fishing Business	159
84.	34.1	Death of a Partner or Proprietor	160
85.	34.2	Reserve for December 31, 1995 Income	161
86.	37	Scientific Research and Experimental Development	162
87.	37.1 to 37.3	Scientific Research and Experimental Development – Additional Allowance	164
88.	39.1	Exempt Capital Gains Balance in Respect of Flow-Through Entity	164
89.	40	Capital Gains and Losses – General Rules	166
90.	44	Exchanges of Property	172
91.	48.1	Gain when Small Business Corporation Becomes Public	173
92.	51	Convertible Property	175
93.	52	Costs of Shares to Subsidiary	175
94.	53	Adjustments to Cost Base	176
95.	54	Capital Gains and Losses – Definitions	181
96.	55	Avoidance	182
97.	56	Amounts Included in Income	197
98.	56.1	Support Payments	199
99.	60	Other Deductions	199
100.	60.1	Support Payments	202
101.	61.3	Deduction for Insolvency	203
102.	62	Moving Expenses	203
103.	63	Child Care Expenses	204
104.	66	Exploration and Development Expenses	204
105.	66.6	Successor Rules – Acquisition from Tax-Exempt	208
106.	66.7	Exploration and Development Expenses – Successor Rules	209
107.	69	Inadequate Consideration	211
108.	70	Death of a Taxpayer	215
109.	79	Seizure of Debtor's Property	216
110.	79.1	Claim for Debts	217

Table of Contents

Clause in Legis- lation	Section of the Income Tax Act	Topic	Page
111.	80	Debt Forgiveness	217
112.	80.03	Definitions	228
113.	80.04	Agreement re: Settlement of Debt	230
114.	82	Dividends from Canadian Corporations	231
115.	84.1	Non-arm's Length Sales of Shares	232
116.	85	Transfer of Property to Corporation by Shareholders	234
117.	87	Amalgamations	236
118.	88	Winding-up of a Corporation	246
119.	89	Definition – Canadian Corporation	259
120.	93	Disposition of Shares in Foreign Affiliate	259
121.	94.1	Offshore Investment Fund Property	260
122.	95	Foreign Accrual Property Income	261
123.	96	Partnerships and their Members	266
124.	97	Contribution of Property to Partnership	269
125.	98.1	Disposition of a Partnership Interest	270
126.	100	Loss Relating to Interest in a Partnership	270
127.	104	Trusts and their Beneficiaries	272
128.	107	Dispositions Related to Trusts	275
129.	108	Trusts	281
130.	110.6	Capital Gains Exemption	283
131.	112	Taxable Dividends Received by Corporations . . .	285
132.	115	Taxable Income Earned In Canada by Non-Residents	299
133.	116	Dispositions of Property by Non-Residents	301
134.	118	Age Tax Credit	304
135.	118.5	Tuition Tax Credit	304
136.	118.95	Credits in Year of Bankruptcy	305
137.	120.2	Minimum Tax Carry-Over	306
138.	122.2	Child Tax Credit	306
139.	122.5	Goods and Services Tax Credit	307
140.	122.6	Child Tax Benefit – Definitions	309
141.	122.61	Child Tax Benefit – Bankrupt Individuals	311
142.	122.62	Child Tax Benefit – Eligible Individuals	311
143.	122.63	Child Tax Benefit – Agreements	313
144.	122.64	Child Tax Benefit – Communication of Information	314
145.	125	Small Business Deduction	315
145.1.	125.5	Film or Video Production Services Tax Credit	318

Table of Contents

Clause in Legis- lation	Section of the Income Tax Act	Topic	Page
146.	127	Investment Tax Credit	326
147.	127.1	Refundable Investment Tax Credit	327
148.	127.41	Part XII Tax Credit	328
149.	127.5	Minimum Tax	329
150.	127.52	Minimum Tax – Adjusted Taxable Income	329
151.	127.55	Minimum Tax – Exceptions	335
152.	128	Bankrupt Individuals	335
153.	128.1	Immigration – Paid-Up Capital	340
154.	129	Dividend Refund	340
155.	130	Investment Corporations	341
156.	130.1	Definition of Mortgage Investment Corporation	345
157.	131	Mutual Fund Corporations	345
158.	132	Mutual Fund Trusts	347
159.	132.2	Mutual Fund Reorganizations	349
160.	133	Non-Resident-Owned Investment Corporations . .	351
161.	136	Cooperative Corporations	352
162.	141.1	Insurer – Not Private Corporation	352
163.	142.2	Definition – "specified debt obligation"	353
164.	142.3	Income from Specified Debt Obligation	353
165.	142.4	Disposition of Specified Debt Obligation	356
166.	142.5	Mark-to-Market Properties	363
167.	142.6	Accrued Capital Gains and Losses Election	364
168.	143.2	Cost of Tax Shelter Investments	366
169.	144	Employee Profit Sharing Plans	373
170.	146	Registered Retirement Savings Plans	377
171.	146.3	Registered Retirement Income Funds	387
172.	147	Deferred Profit Sharing Plans	394
173.	147.1	Registered Pension Plans – Deemed RPP Registration	395
174.	147.2	Registered Pension Plans – Deductibility of Contributions	395
175.	147.3	Registered Pension Plans – Transfers	398
176.	147.4	RPP Annuity Contracts	399
177.	148.1	Eligible Funeral Arrangements	404
178.	149	Exemptions from Tax	406
179.	149.1	Charities – Disbursement Quota	412
180.	150	Returns	413
181.	152	Assessments	414
182.	153	Withholding	421

Table of Contents

Clause in Legis- lation	Section of the Income Tax Act	Topic	Page
183.	154	Tax Transfer Payments	421
184.	157	Instalment Payments – Corporations	422
185.	159	Acting for Another	423
186.	160	Tax Liability – Non-arm's Length Transfers of Property	425
187.	161	Interest	426
188.	162	Penalties – Tax Shelter	428
189.	163	Penalties	430
190.	164	Refunds	431
191.	164	Transitional Provision	435
192.	165	Objections to Assessments	436
193.	169	Appeals	438
194.	181.1	Large Corporations Tax	439
195.	181.2	Large Corporations Tax – Calculation of Capital	440
196.	181.3	Large Corporations Tax – Taxable Capital of Financial Institutions	441
197.	181.4	Large Corporations Tax – Taxable Capital of Non-Residents	442
198.	181.5	Large Corporations Tax – Related Corporations	442
199.	181.71	Large Corporations Tax – Application to Crown Corporations	443
200.	186.1	Part IV Tax – Exempt Corporations	444
201.	187.61	Part IV.1 Tax – Application to Crown Corporations	444
202.	190.1	Tax on Capital of Financial Institutions – Calculation	445
203.	190.13	Determination of Capital of Financial Institutions	446
204.	190.15	Tax on Capital of Financial Institutions – Related Corporations	447
205.	190.211	Tax on Capital of Financial Institutions – Application to Crown Corporations	448
206.	Part VI	Computation of Taxable Capital Employed in Canada	448
207.	191.3	Agreement Respecting Liability for Tax	449
208.	191.4	Part VI.1 – Application to Crown Corporations	450

Table of Contents

Clause in Legis- lation	Section of the Income Tax Act	Topic	Page
209.	204.8	Labour-Sponsored Venture	
		Capital Corporations	450
210.	206	Foreign Property Tax	451
211.	206.1	Tax in Respect of Acquisition of Shares	463
212.	207.6	Retirement Compensation Arrangements – Transfers	464
213.	211.1	Tax on Investment Income of Life Insurers	465
214.	211.3	Tax on Investment Income of Life Insurers – Instalments	466
215.	211.5	Tax on Investment Income of Life Insurers – Interest on Instalments	467
216.	212	Tax on Income of Non-Residents	468
217.	216	Optional Method of Payment	469
218.	219	Branch Tax	470
219.	219	Branch Tax	470
220.	219.1	Corporate Emigration	478
220.1.	219.3	Effect of Tax Treaty	480
221.	220	Administration and Enforcement	481
222.	221	Regulations	482
223.	221.1	Court Costs	484
224.	223	Amounts Payable	484
225.	225.1	Collection Restrictions	485
226.	227	Withholding Taxes	485
227.	230	Electronic Records	487
228.	231	Definitions	488
229.	231.5	Copies as Evidence	488
230.	232	Solicitor-Client Privilege – Examination of Documents	489
231.	233.1	Information Return	489
232.	233.2	Foreign Reporting	492
233.	237	Social Insurance Number	494
234.	237.1	Tax Shelters	494
235.	239	Other Offences and Punishments	498
236.	241	Taxpayer Information	500
237.	244	Procedure and Evidence	502
238.	247	Transfer Pricing	504
239.	248	Definitions	515
240.	249.1	Fiscal Periods	523
241.	250	International Shipping Corporations	523
242.	251	Corporations – Control and Share Rights	525

Table of Contents

Clause in Legis- lation	Section of the Income Tax Act	Topic	Page
243.	251.1	Affiliated Person	526
244.	252	Meaning of Spouse	531
245.	254	Contract under Pension Plan	532
246.	256	Acquisition of Control of a Corporation	533
247.	various	Coming-into-Force – Loss Deferral	539
248.	ITAR 20	Depreciable Property-Transitional Rules	540
249.	ITAR 26	Capital Gains Subject to Tax	541
250.	BIA 67	Deemed Trusts	543
251.	CPP 5	Delegation	543
252.	CPP 23	Withholdings	544
253.	CPP 24	Electronic Records	544
254.	CPP 25	Judicial Authorization – Copies as Evidence	545
255.	CPP 28	Appeal Period – Reasons for Decisions	546
256.	CPP 40	Regulations for Delegation	547
257.	CSA 2	Definitions	547
258.	CSA 10	Release of Information	548
259.	CSA 11	Agreements with Provinces for Exchange of Information	548
260.	CCAA 18.3	Deemed Trusts	549
261.	CPEIA 39	Issuance of Permits	551
262.	CA 2	Delegation	550
263.	CA 134	Ministerial Order for Delegation	550
264.	CA 164	Regulations for Delegation	551
265.	CT 2531	Goods Assisting Persons with Disabilities	551
266.	EIA 86	Withholding	552
267.	EIA 87	Electronic Records	552
268.	EIA 103	Appeal to Tax Court of Canada	553
269.	EIA 108	Regulations for Delegation	554
270.	EIA 112	Judges Sitting as Umpires	555
271.	EIA 126	Judicial Authorization	555
272.	EIA 145	Time for Repayment	556
273.	EIA 146	Returns	556
274.	EIA 159	Appeals	557
275.	ETA 2	Definitions	557
276.	ETA 20.2	Records and Books of Account	558
277.	ETA 38.1	Exception – First Split-Run Edition	558
278.	ETA 98	Electronic Records	559
279.	ETA 100	Copies as Evidence	559
280.	ETA 105	Proof of Documents	560

Table of Contents

Clause in Legis- lation	Section of the Income Tax Act	Topic	Page
281.	ETA 123	Definitions	560
282.	ETA 286	Electronic Records	560
283.	ETA 291	Copies as Evidence	561
284.	ETA 295	Provision of Information	561
285.	ETA 335	Proof of Documents	562
286.	ITCIA 5	Periodic Pension Payment	562
287.	ITCIA 5.1	Definition – "specified portion"	564
288.	OAS 33	Provision of Information	564
289.	TCC 9	Deputy Judges of the Court	565
290.	TCC 12	Extensions of Time	565
291.	TCC 17.2	General Procedure for Tax Appeals	566
292.	TCC 18.15	Informal Procedure for Tax Appeals	567
293.	TCC 18.26	Reimbursement of Filing Fees	569
294.	TCC 18.27	Variation of Filing Fee	569
295.	TCC 18.29	Appeals other than Income Tax or GST	570
296.	TCC 18.3001	GST Appeals	571
297.	TCC 18.3002	GST Appeals	571
298.	TCC 18.3009	Reimbursement of Filing Fee	571
299.	TRDA 2	Definitions and Filing Requirements	572
300.	TRDA 4	Definitions and Filing Requirements	572
301.	TRDA 5	Prescribed Form of Notice	573
302.	UI 57	UI Withholdings	573
303.	WGTP 4	Disposition of Farmland	573
304.	S.C. 1988, c. 55	Small Business Deduction	574
305.	S.C. 1995, c. 21	Foreign Affiliates	574
306.	S.C. 1996, c. 21	Scientific Research & Experimental Development	575
307.	S.C. 1997, c.25	Definitions – Support	577
308.	S.C. 1997, c.25	Canadian Exploration Expenses, Canadian Development Expenses, and Canadian Oil and Gas Property Expenses	578

PART I

DIVISION A

EXPLANATORY NOTES TO DRAFT AMENDMENTS

1997 BUDGET INCOME TAX PROPOSALS

Clause 2

Income from Business or Property

ITA

12

Section 12 of the *Income Tax Act* provides for the inclusion of various amounts in computing the income of a taxpayer for a taxation year from a business or property.

ITA

12(1)(z.1) and (z.2)

Paragraph 12(1)(z.1) of the Act provides that any amount received by a taxpayer in the taxpayer's capacity as a beneficiary of a mining reclamation trust is to be included in computing the taxpayer's income for tax purposes. Paragraph 12(1)(z.2) provides that consideration received by a taxpayer for the sale of the taxpayer's interest as a beneficiary of a mining reclamation trust is also generally included in computing the taxpayer's income.

Paragraphs 12(1)(z.1) and (z.2) are amended so that each reference to a "mining reclamation trust" is replaced by a broader reference to a "qualifying environmental trust". These amendments are in consequence of the extension of the rules for mining reclamation trusts reflected by the new definition "qualifying environmental trust" in subsection 248(1). For more details, see the commentary on that definition.

These amendments apply to taxation years that end after February 18, 1997.

Clause 3

Prohibited Deductions

ITA

18

Section 18 of the Act prohibits the deduction of certain outlays and expenses in computing a taxpayer's income from a business or property.

ITA

18(11)

Paragraphs 20(1)(c), (d), (e), (e.1) and (f) of the Act permit deductions for interest and certain other financing expenses relating to borrowed money used by a taxpayer for the purpose of earning money from a business or property. These provisions are, however, subject to subsection 18(11) which prohibits the deduction of such expenses in respect of indebtedness incurred for the purposes of making a contribution to an RRSP or certain other deferred income plans.

Subsection 18(11) is amended to ensure that interest and similar expenses are not deductible in respect of borrowed money used to contribute to a registered education savings plan.

This amendment applies to 1998 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 4

Income from a Business or Property – Deductions

ITA

20

Section 20 of the Act provides rules relating to the deductibility of certain outlays, expenses and other amounts in computing a taxpayer's income for a taxation year from a business or property.

ITA

20(1)(ss) and (tt)

Paragraph 20(1)(ss) of the Act provides that contributions made by a taxpayer to a mining reclamation trust of which the taxpayer is a beneficiary are deductible in computing the taxpayer's income for the taxation year in which the contributions were made.

Paragraph 20(1)(tt) of the Act generally provides that any consideration paid by a taxpayer for the acquisition of an interest in a mining reclamation trust is deductible in computing the taxpayer's income for the year of acquisition.

These provisions are amended so that the references to "mining reclamation trust" are replaced by broader references to "qualifying environmental trust". These amendments are in consequence of the extension of the rules for mining reclamation trusts reflected by the new definition "qualifying environmental trust" in subsection 248(1). For more details, see the commentary on that definition.

These amendments apply to taxation years that end after February 18, 1997. However, a special transitional rule applies in the case of qualifying environmental trusts (other than mining reclamation trusts) to which contributions were first made after 1995 but before February 19, 1997. In this case, contributions made before February 19, 1997 will be considered to be made on February 19, 1997 so that they will qualify for deduction under paragraph 20(1)(ss).

Clause 5

Scientific Research and Experimental Development

ITA

37

Section 37 of the Act sets out rules for the deductibility of expenditures incurred by a taxpayer for scientific research and experimental development (SR&ED).

ITA
37(12)

Subsection 37(11) generally provides that, in order to deduct an amount as a scientific research and experimental development (SR&ED) expenditure under subsection 37(1), the taxpayer must file a form with Revenue Canada within one year of the taxpayer's filing-due date for the year in which the expenditure was incurred, identifying the expenditure and supporting its characterization as SR&ED.

Subsection 37(12) of the existing Act provides that the filing requirement in subsection 37(11) does not apply where an expenditure is reclassified by the Minister of National Revenue as an expenditure on or in respect of scientific research and experimental development.

Amended subsection 37(12) deems an expenditure in respect of which the taxpayer has not met the filing requirement in subsection 37(11) not to be an expenditure on or in respect of scientific research and experimental development. This will cause the expenditure to be classified in accordance with the scheme of the Act, but without reference to the provisions relating to scientific research and experimental development. For example, an expenditure on equipment, which would have been an SR&ED capital expenditure if the prescribed form had been filed on time, would generally be treated as depreciable property, while an expenditure which would have been an SR&ED current expenditure would generally be deductible as a current expense under section 9.

This amendment applies to the 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 6

Taxable Capital Gains

ITA
38(a) and (a.1)

The portion of a taxpayer's capital gain that is required to be included in computing income is his or her "taxable capital gain".

New paragraph 38 (a.1) provides that if a capital gain results from the making of a gift to a qualified donee of a security listed on a stock exchange, a share or unit of a mutual fund, an interest in a segregated fund or a prescribed debt obligation, only 3/8 of the gain will be a taxable capital gain and hence included in income. For this purpose a qualified donee means any person, other than a private charitable foundation, to whom gifts may be made that qualify for the charitable donations deduction or tax credit. This preferential income inclusion rate will also apply to the deemed capital gain arising on the death of an individual to the extent that the property is the subject of a gift, described above, in the individual's will. It is intended that "prescribed debt obligation" be defined by regulation to include certain debt obligations that have a readily determinable market value such as government bonds. This amendment applies to gifts made after February 18, 1997 and before 2002.

Clause 7

Capital Gain and Capital Loss

ITA

39

Section 39 of the Act sets out the meaning of capital gain, capital loss and business investment loss and provides a number of special rules relating to capital gains.

Subclause 7(1)

ITA

39(1)(a)(v)

A taxpayer's capital gain for a taxation year from the disposition of property is determined under paragraph 39(1)(a) of the Act. Because of subparagraph 39(1)(a)(v), a disposition of an interest of a beneficiary under a mining reclamation trust does not give rise to any capital gain.

Subparagraph 39(1)(a)(v) is amended so that the reference to a "mining reclamation trust" is replaced by a broader reference to a "qualifying environmental trust". This amendment is in consequence of the extension of the rules for mining reclamation trusts reflected

by the new definition "qualifying environmental trust" in subsection 248(1). For more details, see the commentary on that definition.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 18, 1997.

Subclause 7(2)

Mutual Funds

ITA
39(5)

Subsection 39(5) of the Act provides a list of taxpayers who are not entitled to the election under subsection 39(4) to treat any gain or loss arising on disposition of Canadian securities as a capital gain or loss.

Subsection 39(5) is amended to exclude from the list a taxpayer that is a mutual fund corporation or a mutual fund trust. This amendment clarifies that prescribed labour-sponsored venture capital corporations (which under subsection 131(8) are generally treated as mutual fund corporations) and other mutual funds can elect to treat each gain or loss arising on a disposition of a Canadian security as a capital gain or capital loss.

This amendment generally applies to the 1991 and subsequent taxation years. In addition, under a transitional rule, a mutual fund corporation or mutual fund trust has until its filing-due date for its first taxation year that includes the date of Royal Assent to file the election required under subsection 39(4) in prescribed form. In these circumstances, the election applies from the taxation year specified in the election provided that the specified year is no earlier than its 1991 taxation year and no later than its taxation year that includes the date of Royal Assent.

It should be noted that it is intended that a parallel change will be made to paragraph (c) of the definition "eligible corporation" in subsection 5100(1) of the *Income Tax Regulations* to exclude mutual fund corporations from the application of that paragraph for the 1991 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 8

Capital Gains

ITA

40(1.01)

When a taxpayer makes a charitable gift of a non-qualifying security new subsections 110.1(6) and 118.1(13) of the Act provide that the gift will be ignored for the purposes of the charitable donations deduction and tax credit, respectively. However, if the donee disposes of the security within five years the donor will be treated as having made a gift at that later time. New subsection 40(1.01) of the Act is introduced in order to permit the taxpayer to claim a reserve in respect of any gain realized from the making of the original gift so that the resulting inclusion in income can be shifted to a later year, including, in particular, the year in which the donor ultimately receives recognition under section 110.1 or 118.1 for the donation. The reserve cannot be claimed once the taxpayer receives tax recognition for the gift nor if the taxpayer becomes non-resident or tax-exempt. If the security is not disposed of within the five year period by the donee, the donor will not be required to bring the reserve back into income in the year following expiration of the period. This amendment applies to the 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 9

Amounts Included in Income

ITA

56

Section 56 of the Act lists income of certain types that are required to be included in computing the income of a taxpayer from sources other than office, employment, business and property.

Subclauses 9(1) and (2)**CPP/QPP Benefits**

ITA

56(1)(a)(i) and (a.1)

Subparagraph 56(1)(a)(i) of the Act includes in the income of a taxpayer for a taxation year certain pension benefits received in the year, including death benefits under the Canada Pension Plan (CPP) and Quebec Pension Plan (QPP).

Subparagraph 56(1)(a)(i) is amended so that any CPP/QPP death benefit is ignored under that subparagraph. Instead, any CPP/QPP death benefit in respect of the death of an individual will be included under new paragraph 56(1)(a.1) in the income of the estate that arose on or as a consequence of the death of the individual.

These amendments apply to 1997 and subsequent taxation years. However, any CPP/QPP death benefit in respect of the death of an individual received by the individual's estate on or before July 31, 1997 is not covered by these amendments.

Subclause 9(3)**CPP/QPP Benefits for Previous Years**

ITA

56(8)

Subsection 56(8) of the Act allows an individual to exclude from income in the year of receipt CPP/QPP disability benefits that relate to one or more prior years (except where the prior year benefits are less than \$300) and to pay tax on those benefits as if they had been received in the prior years to which they relate. The payment of tax on this basis is provided for in section 120.3 of the Act. This amendment broadens the application of subsection 56(8) to all CPP/QPP benefits of at least \$300 that relate to prior years.

This amendment applies to benefits received after 1994.

Clause 10

Child Care Expenses

ITA

63(3)

Section 63 of the Act provides rules concerning the deductibility of child care expenses in computing an individual's income.

Subsection 63(3) contains the definition "earned income". In any year, an individual is not allowed to deduct child care expenses in excess of two-thirds of earned income for that year.

This amendment to the English version of the definition "earned income" is consequential on the amendment to paragraph 56(8)(a). It ensures that, while all types of benefits received under the Canada and Quebec Pension Plans may be eligible for the special tax treatment provided under that paragraph, only disability pensions paid under those plans may be included in computing an individual's earned income for the purposes of the child care expense deduction.

This amendment applies to amounts received after 1994.

Clause 11

Attendant Care Expenses

ITA

64

Section 64 of the Act permits the deduction, in computing the income of an individual who has a severe and prolonged mental or physical impairment, of expenses paid to an attendant (other than the individual's spouse) who is at least 18 years of age that are incurred

to enable the individual to work. Such an individual is entitled under the existing Act to deduct the least of the three following amounts:

- the actual amount of expenses for attendant care provided in Canada,
- $\frac{2}{3}$ of the individual's earned income for the year, and
- \$5,000.

These amendments remove the \$5,000 limitation in section 64 and apply for 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 12

Reserves for Year of Death

ITA

72(1)(c)

Paragraph 72(1)(c) of the Act denies the deductibility of the capital gains reserves in subparagraphs 40(1)(a)(iii) and 44(1)(e)(iii) in the year in which a taxpayer dies. This amendment adds a reference to new paragraph 40(1.01)(c) of the Act so that a taxpayer will not be able to claim this special reserve, which is available in respect of a gain arising from the making of a charitable donation of a non-qualifying security, in the year of death. This amendment applies to the 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 13

Attribution Rule

ITA

75

Section 75 of the Act provides that where a person transfers property to a trust under certain conditions, any income from the property is attributed to the transferor.

ITA
75(3)(c.1)

Subsection 75(3) of the Act exempts income from property held by mining reclamation trusts and certain other trusts from the attribution rule in subsection 75(2).

Paragraph 75(3)(c.1) is amended so that the reference to a "mining reclamation trust" is replaced by a broader reference to a "qualifying environmental trust". This amendment is in consequence of the extension of the rules for mining reclamation trusts reflected by the new definition "qualifying environmental trust" in subsection 248(1). For more details, see the commentary on that definition.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 22, 1994.

Clause 14

Amounts not Included in Income

ITA
81(1)(o) and (p)

Paragraph 81(1)(o) of the Act provides that a "refund of payments" (as defined in subsection 146.1(1)) under an education savings plan is not to be included in computing a taxpayer's income.

Paragraph 81(1)(p) provides that an "educational assistance payment" received by a beneficiary from a non-registered or revoked education savings plan is likewise not included in computing a taxpayer's income.

Paragraph 81(1)(o) is repealed by this amendment because it is unnecessary. There is nothing in the Act that would otherwise include a "refund of payments" in computing a taxpayer's income.

Paragraph 81(1)(p) is also repealed. Because subsection 146.1(14) is being repealed, no amount is included in the income of a subscriber upon the revocation of a registered education savings plan. Consequently, it is no longer appropriate to exclude educational assistance payments from revoked registered retirement saving plans

from income. In addition, it is not appropriate to provide an income exclusion for an education savings plan that has never been registered.

These amendments apply to 1998 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 15

Amalgamations

ITA

87(2)(*m.1*)

New subsection 40(1.01) of the Act permits a taxpayer to claim a reserve in respect of a capital gain arising from the making of a charitable donation of a non-qualifying security. Where two or more companies amalgamate new paragraph 87(2)(*m.1*) of the Act treats the amalgamated company as a continuation of each of its predecessors so that if a predecessor claimed a reserve under paragraph 40(1.01)(*c*) in its last taxation year the same amount will be included under paragraph 40(1.01)(*b*) in the amalgamated company's income for its first taxation year. By virtue of paragraph 88(1)(*e.2*) of the Act this rule applies equally upon the winding-up of a wholly-owned subsidiary into its parent corporation. This amendment applies to the 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 16

Windings-Up

ITA

88(1)(*e.61*)

In certain circumstances new subsections 110.1(6) and 118.1(13) of the Act will apply to treat a wholly-owned subsidiary corporation that has been wound up as having made a charitable donation after the corporation has ceased to exist. In such cases new paragraph 88(1)(*e.61*) will apply to treat the gift as having been made by the subsidiary's parent corporation so that it may claim the

resulting deduction under section 110.1 in computing its taxable income. This amendment applies after July 31, 1997.

Clause 17

Definitions

ITA
89(1)

Subsection 89(1) defines certain terms that apply to corporations and their shareholders.

Subclauses 17(1) and (2)

"capital dividend account"

A private corporation's capital dividend account includes, among other items, the non-taxable portion of the corporation's net taxable capital gains. In order to integrate the taxation of a corporation and its shareholders, dividends are received tax-free by shareholders when they are paid out of this account. Subclauses 17(1) and (2) propose amendments to exclude capital gains and losses resulting from the making of gifts by the corporation from the computation of its capital dividend account.

These amendments apply to gifts made after November 1997.

Subclause 17(3)

"public corporation"

Subsection 89(1) of the Act contains the definition "public corporation" which, by virtue of subsection 248(1), is relevant for all purposes of the Act.

The definition is amended to provide that a prescribed labour-sponsored venture capital corporation is not a public corporation for the purposes of the Act unless a class of its shares becomes listed on a prescribed stock exchange in Canada. For this

purpose, it is intended that section 6701 of the Regulations will be amended to add a cross reference to this definition.

This amendment applies to the 1995 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 18

Beneficiaries of Qualifying Environmental Trusts

ITA

107.3

Section 107.3 of the Act sets out a number of rules dealing with the taxation of the beneficiaries of "mining reclamation trusts", as defined in subsection 248(1).

Section 107.3 is amended so that each reference to a "mining reclamation trust" is replaced by a broader reference to a "qualifying environmental trust". Similarly, a reference to a "mine" is replaced by a broader reference to a "site". These amendments are in consequence of the extension of the rules for mining reclamation trusts reflected by the new definition "qualifying environmental trust" in subsection 248(1). For more details, see the commentary on that definition.

Subsection 107.3(3) is also amended so that, in the event that a trust ceases to be a qualifying environmental-trust at any time, the taxation year of the trust is deemed to have ended immediately before that time (rather than at that time, as is provided under the existing provision). Consequently, tax under Part XII.4 will apply to the trust for the taxation year that is deemed to have ended because of the change in status.

These amendments apply to taxation years that end after February 18, 1997.

Clause 19

Trusts – Definitions

ITA

108

Section 108 of the Act sets out certain definitions and rules that apply for the purposes of subdivision k of Division B of Part I of the Act which deals with the taxation of trusts and their beneficiaries.

ITA

108(1)

"preferred beneficiary"

Subsection 108(1) of the Act defines the expression "preferred beneficiary", which is relevant for the purpose of the preferred beneficiary election in subsection 104(14). A preferred beneficiary for a trust's taxation year is essentially an individual who

- is resident in Canada,
- is a beneficiary under the trust at the end of the trust's taxation year who is entitled to a disability tax credit under subsection 118.3(1) of the Act for the individual's taxation year in which the trust's taxation year ends, and
- is the trust settlor, the settlor's spouse or former spouse, a child, grandchild or great-grandchild of the settlor or a spouse of such a person.

The definition "preferred beneficiary" is amended so that the requirement that the beneficiary under a trust be entitled to a tax credit under subsection 118.3(1) is satisfied for a trust taxation year where the beneficiary is entitled to the tax credit for the beneficiary's taxation year that ends in the trust year. This amendment affects only testamentary trusts with non-calendar year ends. It ensures that trustees of a testamentary trust will know, with greater certainty, the status of a beneficiary by the time a preferred beneficiary election is made in respect of the beneficiary.

This definition is also amended to provide that an adult is not excluded as a "preferred beneficiary" for a trust taxation year because the adult is not entitled to the tax credit under subsection 118.3(1), where the adult is a dependant (within the meaning assigned by subsection 118(6)) of another individual for the adult's taxation year that ends in the trust year because of mental or physical infirmity and an income test is satisfied. The income test is satisfied where the adult's income (computed without reference to any amount designated under a preferred beneficiary election and allocated to the adult) for the adult's year that ends in the trust year does not exceed \$6,456. The \$6,456 limit is the same as the income limit used for the purposes of the dependant tax credit under subsection 118(1) of the Act. Amended subsection 117.1(1) of the Act provides for the indexing of this new limit.

These amendments apply to trust taxation years that end after 1996.

Clause 20

Charitable Donations Deduction

ITA

110.1

Section 110.1 of the Act provides for the deductibility in computing taxable income of charitable donations and certain other gifts made by corporations.

Subclause 20(1)

ITA

110.1(1) and (1.1)

Subsection 110.1(1) of the Act provides for the deduction of a corporation's charitable donations, gifts to the Crown and certain gifts of cultural property and ecologically sensitive land. Donors may carry forward unused deductions for up to five years.

Under the existing Act the deduction for charitable donations is limited to 50 per cent of the corporation's net income for the year of the donations, plus 50 per cent of any taxable capital gains resulting

from the making of the donations. Crown gifts and gifts of cultural property and ecologically sensitive land are not subject to this limitation under the existing Act. The present amendment provides that both charitable gifts and Crown gifts are to be subject to a new deduction limit, namely, 75 per cent of the corporation's net income, 25 per cent of any taxable capital gain resulting from the gifts plus 25 per cent of any recapture of depreciation included in income as a result of the making of the gifts. This new limitation applies to gifts deducted in taxation years that begin after 1996, except that there will be no limitation on Crown gifts made before February 19, 1997 nor on Crown gifts made pursuant to an agreement in writing made before that date.

New subsection 110.1(1.1) of the Act contains two rules governing the deductibility of charitable donations and other gifts under subsection 110.1(1). The first rule is that once the amount of a gift has been deducted in a taxation year it may not be carried forward to be deducted again in a future year. This rule is now contained in the definition of each of the four types of gift in subsection 110.1(1). The second rule, in paragraph 110.1(1.1)(b), is that gifts will be considered to be deducted in the order that they were made. This "first-in, first-out" assumption reflects Revenue Canada's interpretation of section 110.1 of the existing Act and is the assumption most favourable to taxpayers. New subsection 110.1(1.1) applies in computing taxable income for taxation years that begin after 1996.

Subclause 20(2)

ITA

110.1(5) to (7)

Certain gifts of ecologically sensitive land are deductible under paragraph 110.1(1)(d) of the Act in computing a corporate donor's taxable income. For this purpose "land" includes a covenant, easement or servitude to which land is subject. As it is generally difficult to establish the fair market value of these rights, new subsection 110.1(5) of the Act is introduced to provide that the fair market value of a gift of a covenant, easement or servitude will not be considered to be less than the decrease in value of the subject land that resulted from the making of the gift. This amendment applies to gifts made after February 27, 1995.

New subsections 118.1(13), (14) and (16) to (20) of the Act apply to deny or defer an individual's charitable donations tax credit in certain circumstances. New subsection 110.1(6) provides that those rules are to apply equally in determining a corporation's charitable donations deduction. Where because of new subsection 118.1(13) a corporation's deduction for a charitable donation would be deferred until after the corporation has ceased to exist, new subsection 110.1(7) of the Act treats the corporation as having made the donation in its last taxation year. An exception is provided for corporations which have ceased to exist as a result of an amalgamation under subsection 87(1) or a winding-up under subsection 88(1). In that case the new corporation or the parent corporation will be treated under paragraph 87(2)(v) or 88(1)(e.61), respectively, as having made the donation at the time provided for in new subsection 118.1(13). These amendments apply after July 31, 1997.

Clause 21

Annual Adjustment of Deductions and Other Amounts

ITA

117.1(1)

Subsection 117.1(1) of the Act provides for the indexing of various amounts, including the amounts on which the personal tax credits are based. The indexing is based on annual increases in the Consumer Price Index in excess of 3 per cent.

These amendments renumber existing paragraphs 117.1(1)(a) and (a.1) of the Act as paragraphs 117.1(1)(b.1) and (b.2), respectively. This change, effective for 1997 and subsequent taxation years, allows for the insertion of new paragraph 117.1(1)(a).

New paragraph 117.1(1)(a) and further amendments to subsection 117.1(1) provide for the indexing after 1996 of the \$6,456 income limit for preferred beneficiaries, described in the commentary to the amended definition "preferred beneficiary" in subsection 108(1) of the Act. These amendments apply to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Paragraph 117.1(1)(b.2) is amended as a consequence of new section 122.51 of the Act dealing with the refundable medical expense supplement for low-income earners. The \$500 maximum amount of the supplement, as well as the threshold amounts of \$2,500 and \$16,069, will also be indexed. This amendment applies to 1998 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 22

Charitable Donations Tax Credit

ITA
118.1

Section 118.1 of the Act provides the tax credit that may be claimed by individuals who make charitable donations, gifts to the Crown and certain gifts of cultural property and ecologically sensitive land. Donors may carry forward unused claims for up to five years.

Subclauses 22(1) to (4)

ITA
118.1(1)

Subsection 118.1(1) of the Act provides definitions of various terms for purposes of the charitable donations tax credit, including "total gifts" which is the amount on which the tax credit is determined under subsection 118.1(3) of the Act.

Under the existing Act the amount of charitable donations that may be included in an individual's total gifts for a taxation year is limited to 50 per cent of the individual's net income for the year plus 50 per cent of any taxable capital gains resulting from the making of the donations. Crown gifts and gifts of cultural property and ecologically sensitive land are not subject to this limitation under the existing Act. The amendments to subsection 118.1(1) provide that both an individual's charitable donations and gifts to the Crown are to be subject to a new limit on inclusion in the individual's total gifts, namely, 75 per cent of the individual's net income, 25 per cent of any taxable capital gains resulting from the gifts (to the extent that they were not excluded from the individual's taxable income by the

lifetime capital gains exemption in section 110.6 of the Act) plus 25 per cent of any recapture of depreciation included in income as a result of the making of the gifts. This new limitation applies to gifts deducted in taxation years that begin after 1996, except that there will be no limitation on Crown gifts made before February 19, 1997 nor on Crown gifts made pursuant to agreements in writing made before that date.

Subclause 22(5)

ITA

118.1(2.1)

New subsection 118.1(2.1) of the Act provides that gifts will be considered to have been claimed in determining an individual's charitable donations tax credits in the order in which they were made. This "first-in, first-out" assumption reflects Revenue Canada's interpretation of section 118.1 of the existing Act and is the assumption most favourable to taxpayers. New subsection 118.1(2.1) applies to taxation years that begin after 1996.

Subclause 22(6)

ITA

118.1(4) and (5)

Subsection 118.1(4) of the Act treats a gift made in the year of an individual's death as having been made in the preceding year to the extent that it was not deducted in the year of death. This provision is modified in two ways. First, this amendment clarifies that subsection 118.1(4) is subject to subsection 118.1(13) of the Act so that where an individual has made a gift of a non-qualifying security in the year in which the individual died the gift will not be considered to have been made in the preceding year because of the application of subsection 118.1(4), but rather paragraph 118.1(13)(a) applies to treat the gift as not having been made. Secondly, the amendment ensures that where a gift is deemed to have been made by an individual in the year of death under subsection 118.1(5) (gift made by will) or subsection 118.1(13) or (15) (gift deemed to have been made when donee disposes of a non-qualifying security), subsection 118.1(4) will apply to treat the gift as having been made

in the year preceding the year of the death. This amendment applies to gifts made after July 31, 1997.

Subsection 118.1(5) of the Act treats a gift made by an individual's will as having been made immediately before the individual's death. This amendment clarifies that, where a gift of a non-qualifying security is made by a will, subsection 118.1(13) of the Act is to prevail to treat the gift as not having been made. This amendment applies to gifts made after July 31, 1997.

Subclause 22(7)

ITA

118.1(12) to (20)

Certain gifts of ecologically sensitive land are included in an individual's "total ecological gifts" (as defined in subsection 118.1(1) of the Act) for the purpose of determining the individual's charitable donations tax credit. For this purpose "land" includes a covenant, easement or servitude to which land is subject. As it is generally difficult to establish the fair market value of these rights, new subsection 118.1(12) of the Act is introduced to provide that the fair market value of a gift of a covenant, easement or servitude will not be considered to be less than the decrease in value of the subject land that resulted from the making of the gift. This amendment applies to gifts made after February 27, 1995.

New subsection 118.1(13) of the Act provides that if an individual makes a gift of a non-qualifying security, that gift will be ignored for the purpose of the charitable donations tax credit. However, if the donee disposes of the security within five years or the security ceases to be a non-qualifying security of the individual within five years, the individual will be treated as having made a gift at that later time. The fair market value of the later gift will be considered to be the lesser of two amounts. The first amount is the consideration received by the donee for the disposition (except to the extent that the consideration is another non-qualifying security of the individual) or in the case of the security ceasing to be a non-qualifying security, its fair market value at that later time. The second amount is the fair market value of the original gift as modified by subsection 118.1(6). This subsection does not apply to excepted gifts. An excepted gift is defined by subsection 118.1(19) of the Act to be a gift of a share to

an arm's length donee that is not a private foundation, provided that if the donee is a charitable organization or a public foundation the donor deals at arm's length with the foundation's directors and officers.

New subsection 118.1(14) of the Act provides that if a donee receives a new share in the course of certain corporate reorganizations in exchange for a share that was a non-qualifying security of an individual, the new share will be considered to be the same share as the original share. This ensures that the individual will be deemed under subsection 118.1(13) to have made a charitable gift if the new share is subsequently disposed of by the donee within five years from the donation of the original share.

For the purpose of new subsections 118.1(13), (14) and (15), new subsection 118.1(18) of the Act defines a non-qualifying security of an individual to be an obligation of the individual or a non-arm's length person, a share issued by a corporation with which the individual does not deal at arm's length or any other security issued by the individual or a non-arm's length person. Specifically excepted from this definition are obligations, shares and other securities listed on prescribed stock exchanges and deposits with financial institutions. For this purpose "financial institution" is defined in new subsection 118.1(20) of the Act as being a member of the Canadian Payments Association or a credit union that is a shareholder or member of a central for the purposes of the Canadian Payments Association Act.

Where an individual makes a gift of a non-qualifying security and dies before the donee disposes of the gift within the prescribed five-year period, new subsection 118.1(15) of the Act will apply to treat the subsequently resulting gift as having been made by the individual in the year of death, rather than at the time of the disposition by the donee.

New subsection 118.1(16) of the Act applies in two cases. The first case occurs where an individual makes a gift, the donee holds a non-qualifying security of the individual within five years thereafter and the donee acquired the security no earlier than five years before the gift was made. The second case occurs where an individual makes a gift to a non-arm's length donee, the individual or a non-arm's length person uses property of the donee within five years

thereafter, the use of the property was pursuant to an agreement made no earlier than five years before the making of the gift and the use of the property was not in the course of the donee's charitable activities. In either of these cases the fair market value of the gift will be reduced for the purpose of the individual's charitable donations tax credit. In the case of the acquisition of a non-qualifying security the gift's value will be reduced by the fair market value of the consideration given by the donee to acquire the security. In the case of the use of property, the gift will be reduced by the fair market value of the property. New subsections 118.1(13) to (16) generally apply after July 31, 1997.

New subsection 118.1(17) of the Act applies an ordering rule for the purpose of subsection 118.1(16) so that the acquisition of a non-qualifying security of a donor by a donee or the use of a donee's property by a donor will reduce the donor's charitable donations tax credits on a "first-in, first out" basis. For example, if in each of years 1 to 3 a donor makes a gift of \$100 and in year 4 the donee acquires a non-qualifying security of the donor for \$130, subsections 118.1(16) and (17) apply to eliminate the gift in year 1 and to reduce the gift in year 2 to \$70. The gift in year 3 is not affected. This amendment applies after July 31, 1997.

Clause 23

Medical Expense Tax Credit

ITA
118.2

Section 118.2 of the Act provides the medical expense tax credit.

Subclause 23(1)

ITA
118.2(2)(b.1)

Paragraph 118.2(2)(b.1) of the Act allows amounts paid as remuneration for part-time attendant care in Canada for an individual who has a severe and prolonged mental or physical impairment to qualify, up to a maximum of \$5,000 (\$10,000 if the individual has

died in the year), as medical expenses, provided the amounts are paid to an attendant (other than the individual's spouse) who is at least 18 years of age and no other deduction is claimed in respect of those amounts. This amendment increases the \$5,000 and \$10,000 maximums to \$10,000 and \$20,000, respectively.

This amendment applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 23(2)

ITA

118.2(2)(1.4) to (1.7)

Subsection 118.2(2) of the Act lists the expenses that are considered qualifying medical expenses.

This amendment adds to the list of qualifying medical expenses the following four items:

- fees for sign language interpretation services provided to an individual who has a speech or hearing impairment, if the fees are paid to a person engaged in the business of providing such services;
- reasonable moving expenses (up to a maximum of \$2,000) of an individual who lacks normal physical development or has a severe and prolonged mobility impairment to move to a dwelling that is more accessible by the individual or in which the individual is more mobile or functional;
- reasonable costs of alterations to the driveway of the principal place of residence of an individual who has a severe and prolonged mobility impairment to facilitate the individual's access to a bus; and
- an amount (not in excess of \$5,000) equal to 20 per cent of the cost of a van that, at the time of its acquisition or within six months after that time, has been adapted for the transportation of an individual who requires the use of a wheelchair.

This amendment applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 23(3)

ITA

118.2(2)(m)

Under paragraph 118.2(2)(m) of the Act the cost of a device or of equipment may qualify as a medical expense if it is of a kind the Governor in Council has prescribed by regulation, having regard, where applicable, to the purpose of its acquisition or use. The amendment broadens the scope of the regulations by allowing the Governor in Council to stipulate a dollar limit for claims in respect of a particular device or equipment. The amendment is consequential on the inclusion, as a qualifying medical expense, of the cost (up to a maximum of \$1,000) of an air conditioner to be used by an individual to cope with a severe chronic ailment, disease or disorder.

This amendment applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 23(4)

ITA

118.2(3)(b)

Paragraph 118.2(3)(b) of the Act provides that the amount of any reimbursement that is received for medical expenses, and that is not included in an individual's income, will reduce the amount of medical expenses that would otherwise be eligible for the medical expense tax credit. The amendment clarifies that this paragraph applies where the taxpayer seeking to claim the expenses, the patient or a person related to the taxpayer or the patient is entitled to a reimbursement in respect of the expenses.

This amendment applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 24

Disability Tax Credit

ITA

118.3(1)(a.2)

Subsection 118.3(1) of the Act provides the formula for calculating the disability tax credit and the conditions for entitlement to the credit for those individuals with a severe and prolonged mental or physical impairment. Only medical doctors (and, in the case of a sight impairment, optometrists) are allowed to certify impairments under the existing Act. Under this amendment, audiologists will be authorized to certify a hearing impairment.

This amendment applies to certifications made after February 18, 1997.

Clause 25

Disability Tax Credit

ITA

118.4(2)

Section 118.4 of the Act sets out the circumstances under which an individual will be considered to have a severe and prolonged impairment, in order to determine whether the individual may be eligible for the disability tax credit. Subsection 118.4(2) provides a definition of the group of people to whom various references in section 63 (relating to child care expenses), section 118.2 (relating to medical expenses) and section 118.3 (relating to the disability tax credit) of the Act apply.

When the Statute Revision Commission revised the Act in the Fifth Supplement of the Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985, the term "medical doctor" was erroneously omitted from the list of people included in subsection 118.4(2). This amendment restores that reference for taxation years that end after November 1991, as these are the taxation years to which the amendment which deleted the reference applied. Also, effective after February 18, 1997,

it adds audiologists to the list of persons to whom subsection 118.4(2) applies.

Clause 26

Tuition Tax Credit

ITA

118.5(3)

Section 118.5 of the Act provides for a tax credit in respect of tuition fees paid to certain educational institutions. The amount of the credit is determined under subsection 118.5(1) by applying the appropriate percentage (17 per cent) to the eligible fees paid for an individual's tuition to a qualified institution where the total of such fees exceeds \$100. This amendment allows an individual to claim as tuition fees certain ancillary fees and charges paid in respect of the individual's enrolment at a post-secondary educational institution if the payment of such fees or charges is made to the institution and is required from all of the institution's full-time students or part-time students, depending on whether the individual is enrolled at the institution on a full-time or part-time basis.

Mandatory fees or charges do not qualify for the tuition tax credit to the extent that they are levied in relation to a student association, property to be acquired by students, services not ordinarily provided at post-secondary educational institutions in Canada or tax-exempt financial assistance to students. As well, mandatory charges paid for the construction, renovation or maintenance of a building or facility generally do not qualify for the credit. An exception is made to the extent that the building or facility is owned by the institution and is used to provide courses at the post-secondary school level or services that, if fees or charges were required to be paid by all of the institution's students for such services, the fees or charges would be eligible for the tuition tax credit.

Finally, where ancillary fees or charges paid in respect of an individual's enrolment at a post-secondary educational institution would qualify for the tuition fee credit, but for the fact that the payment of those fees or charges is not required from all of the institution's full-time students or part-time students, as the case may

be, an amount not in excess of \$250 in respect of those fees may be included in computing the individual's tuition fee credit.

This amendment applies to the 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 27

Education Tax Credit

ITA

118.6(2)

Section 118.6 of the Act provides the education tax credit.

Subsection 118.6(2) of the Act contains the formula for calculating the amount of the credit. This amount is determined by multiplying the "appropriate percentage" (17 per cent) by \$100 and by the number of months in the year during which the individual was enrolled as a full-time student in a qualifying education program at a designated educational institution. This amendment, which applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years, increases the monthly amount used in the formula to calculate the credit from \$100 to \$150 for 1997 and to \$200 thereafter.

Clause 28

Carryforward of Tuition and Education Tax Credits

ITA

118.61

New section 118.61 of the Act provides for the carryforward of a student's unused tuition and education tax credits.

Subsection 118.61(1) provides for the calculation of a student's unused tuition and education tax credits at the end of a taxation year that may be carried forward to future taxation years for use by the student. That amount is determined by, first, adding to the student's unused tuition and education tax credits at the end of the previous year (where that year is after 1996) the portion of the student's

tuition and education credits for the current year that is not needed to eliminate the student's tax payable for the current year. This total is then reduced by the amount of the tuition and education tax credits carryforward that is deductible for the current year (which is, as set out in subsection 118.61(2), equal to the lesser of the previous year's carryforward and the tax that would be payable for the current year by the student if no tuition and education tax credits were allowed). Finally, this total is further reduced by the tuition and education tax credits transferred for the year by the student to the student's spouse, parent or grandparent.

This amendment applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 29

Transfer of Unused Credits to Spouse

ITA

118.8

Section 118.8 of the Act governs the transfer to a spouse of certain unused tax credits. The credits which may be transferred are the tuition and education tax credits and the age, pension and disability tax credits. The amendments to section 118.8 are consequential on the introduction of the carryforward of the tuition and education tax credits under new section 118.61 of the Act. Starting with the 1997 taxation year, students will have the option of transferring the unused portion of their tuition and education tax credits or keeping it to reduce their own tax liability for future years. They will also be permitted to transfer part of the unused portion of these credits and carry forward the remainder.

This amendment applies to the 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 30**Transfer of the Tuition and Education Tax Credits**

ITA

118.81

New section 118.81 of the Act provides for the calculation of the tuition and education tax credits that may be transferred for a taxation year from a student to the student's spouse under section 118.8 of the Act, or to a parent or grandparent under section 118.9 of the Act. The amount is determined by deducting from the lesser of \$850 and the total of the student's tuition fee and education tax credits for the year the student's tax payable for the year, determined before claiming those credits.

This amendment applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Transfers to Parent or Grandparent

ITA

118.9

Section 118.9 of the Act governs the transfer of a student's tuition and education tax credits to the student's parent or grandparent. The amendment to section 118.9 is consequential on the introduction of the carryforward of the unused tuition and education tax credits under new section 118.61 of the Act. Starting with the 1997 taxation year, students will have the option of transferring the unused portion of their tuition and education tax credits or keeping it to reduce their own tax liability for future years. They will also be permitted to transfer part of the unused portion of these credits and carry forward the remainder.

This amendment applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 31

Ordering of Credits

ITA
118.92

Section 118.92 of the Act provides that the tax credits allowed in computing any individual's tax payable are to be applied in a specific order. The amendment to this section adds a reference to section 118.61, which is the provision that allows for the carryforward of an individual's unused tuition and education tax credits under new section 118.61 of the Act.

This amendment applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 32

Refundable Medical Expense Supplement

ITA
122.51

New section 122.51 of the Act provides a refundable tax credit for eligible individuals – the refundable medical expense supplement. The supplement is equal to the lesser of \$500 and 25/17 of the medical expense tax credit claimed by an eligible individual for the year. The supplement is reduced by 5 per cent of the individual's "adjusted income" in excess of an indexed threshold (\$16,069 for 1997).

For the purpose of the new medical expense supplement, "eligible individual" for a taxation year is defined in subsection 122.51(1) as an individual (other than a trust) who is resident in Canada throughout the year, 18 years of age or older at the end of the year and whose total business and employment income (excluding disability benefits) for the year is at least \$2,500. The individual's "adjusted income" for a taxation year is also defined under this subsection as being the total, for the year, of the individual's income and that of a spouse cohabiting with the individual at the end of the year.

Subsection 122.51(2) provides that an individual's medical expense supplement for a taxation year is deemed to be paid on account of the individual's tax liability for the year. Thus, to the extent that the supplement exceeds the individual's tax otherwise payable for the year, it will be refunded to the individual.

These amendments apply to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 33

Investment Tax Credit

Subclauses 33(1) to (3)

ITA
127(9)

Subsection 127(9) of the Act provides definitions for terms that are used in the provisions relating to the investment tax credit.

"investment tax credit"

The definition of "investment tax credit" is amended to exclude expenditures in respect of which the taxpayer has not filed a prescribed form with Revenue Canada within one year after the taxpayer's filing-due date for the taxation year in which the expenditure was incurred. This requirement previously applied only to scientific research & experimental development investment tax credits.

This amendment applies to all taxation years, except that taxpayers who are not affected by the existing filing requirement in the definition of "qualified expenditure" in subsection 127(9) have until the date specified or May 31, 1997, whichever is later, to file the prescribed form.

"qualified expenditure"

The definition of "qualified expenditure" in subsection 127(9) of the Act is amended consequential on the amendment to the definition of "investment tax credit" to remove the filing requirement in

paragraph (e), which now appears in the amended definition of "investment tax credit" as described in the commentary on that provision.

The definition is also amended to clarify that the reference to an expenditure incurred by the taxpayer in respect of scientific research and experimental development in amended paragraph (f) can apply to an expenditure described in subparagraph 37(1)(a)(i.1) of the Act. Expenditures described in that paragraph (generally non-arm's length payments for SR&ED) do not qualify as SR&ED expenditures for the purposes of calculating the investment tax credit of the payer. Rather, the SR&ED performer is entitled to claim SR&ED benefits on its expenditures or, in certain circumstances, renounce those expenditures in favour of the payer by way of a joint election under subsection 127(13).

The definition is further amended by moving the exception to the exclusion from "qualified expenditure" contained in paragraph (g) to the end of the paragraph, to clarify that an expenditure described in the first part of that paragraph, which is an expenditure on SR&ED directly undertaken by the taxpayer, is not excluded as a qualified expenditure.

These amendments apply to taxation years that begin after 1995.

"taxable supplier"

This definition is amended to correct a formatting error which arose between the initial release of the draft legislation introducing this provision and the tabling of the Notice of Ways and Means Motion containing the provision in December 1995. The concluding portion "in the course of carrying on a business through a permanent establishment (as defined by regulation) in Canada" modifies both subparagraphs (b)(i) and (ii). This amendment applies to taxation years that begin after 1995.

Subclause 33(4)

ITA

127(11.4)

Subsection 127(11.4) of the Act was introduced contemporaneously with the introduction of the filing deadline for claiming SR&ED investment tax credits, to address the circumstances in which a taxpayer identified an amount as being a particular type of expense, but on reassessment Revenue Canada concluded that the amount should, instead, have been treated as SR&ED. In the absence of subsection 127(11.4), Revenue Canada could have been in the position of reassessing a taxpayer to disallow the classification made by the taxpayer, but also disallowing its classification as an SR&ED expense because it would be past the filing deadline.

In order to resolve this issue, subsection 127(11.4) of the existing Act provides that the filing deadline does not apply where Revenue Canada reclassifies an expenditure as SR&ED on an assessment of tax payable (or on a determination that no tax is owing). However, in order to ensure that taxpayers who do not file the required form on time are not accorded an inappropriate benefit because of a reassessment by Revenue Canada, subsection 127(11.4) is repealed for the 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

For the 1997 and subsequent taxation years, new subsection 37(12) of the Act will cause the affected expenditures to be treated, on an assessment by Revenue Canada, as if the SR&ED provisions did not exist. In most cases this will allow the taxpayer the original treatment claimed for the expenditure. Where that claim was also in error, Revenue Canada can assess to reflect the correct non-SR&ED classification of the expense.

As a transitional measure, subsection 127(11.4) is amended to refer to paragraph (m) of the definition "investment tax credit", consequential on the introduction of the filing deadline in the definition "investment tax credit" applicable for the 1996 taxation year.

Clause 34

Qualifying Environmental Trust

ITA
127.41

Section 127.41 of the Act provides a refundable tax credit to beneficiaries of a mining reclamation trust.

Section 127.41 is amended so that the reference to a "mining reclamation trust" is replaced by a broader reference to a "qualifying environmental trust". This amendment is in consequence of the extension of the rules for mining reclamation trusts reflected by the new definition "qualifying environmental trust" in subsection 248(1). For more details, see the commentary on that definition.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 18, 1997.

Clause 35

Minimum Tax

ITA
127.52(1)(d)(i)

Paragraph 127.52(1)(d) of the Act provides that in computing an individual's adjusted taxable income for minimum tax purposes the total amount of capital gains and losses is to be taken into account. This is achieved through the direction in the paragraph to ignore the references in sections 38 and 41 to "3/4 of". This amendment exempts from the application of this rule gains resulting from charitable donations and other gifts for which a charitable donations deduction or tax credit may be claimed. The result is that only the reduced amount of any such taxable capital gain will be included in the base for determining an individual's minimum tax. This amendment applies to taxation years that begin after 1996.

Clause 36**Change of Residence**

ITA

128.1(4)(b)(iii)

Subsection 128.1(4) of the Act provides a set of rules that apply to a taxpayer who ceases to be a resident of Canada. Under paragraph 128.1(4)(b), a taxpayer's property is generally treated in these circumstances as if it were disposed of at fair market value. Subparagraph 128.1(4)(b)(iii) provides an individual with an exemption from this deemed disposition where the property involved is a right to receive a pension benefit or certain other amounts described in subsection 212(1).

Subparagraph 128.1(4)(b)(iii) is amended to extend this exemption to rights under registered education savings plans.

This amendment applies to changes in residence after October 1, 1996.

Clause 37**Registered Retirement Savings Plans**

ITA

146(1)

Section 146 of the Act provides rules relating to registered retirement savings plans (RRSPs).

"earned income"

Subsection 146(1) defines "earned income" which is relevant in determining the maximum deduction in respect of premiums under an RRSP.

This amendment to the English version of the definition "earned income" is consequential on the amendment to paragraph 56(8)(a). It ensures that, while all types of benefits received under the Canada

and Quebec Pension Plans may be eligible for the special tax treatment provided under that paragraph, only disability pensions paid under those plans may be included in computing an individual's earned income for RRSP purposes.

This amendment applies to amounts received after 1994.

ITA

146(1)

"RRSP deduction limit"

Subsection 146(1) of the Act defines "RRSP deduction limit", which is relevant in determining the maximum tax-deductible contributions that an individual may make in a year to RRSPs.

An individual's RRSP deduction limit for a year is defined to be the amount determined by the formula

$$A + B - C$$

where

A = the amount of the individual's unused RRSP deduction room carried forward from the previous year,

B = the amount of new RRSP deduction room that becomes available to the individual in the year (based on the individual's earned income for the previous year and certain other factors), and

C = the amount of the individual's net past service pension adjustment for the year.

This definition is amended in two ways. First, the formula is amended, for the 1998 and subsequent taxation years, to add an amount (variable R) which is described as the individual's total pension adjustment reversal for the year. The Income Tax Regulations will be amended to define an individual's total pension adjustment reversal for a year as the sum of the individual's pension adjustment reversals (PARs) for the year under deferred profit

sharing plans (DPSPs) and benefit provisions of registered pension plans (RPPs).

The Regulations will also be amended to provide rules for the calculation of PARs. Under those rules, the determination of an individual's PAR under a DPSP or benefit provision of an RPP will usually be required where the individual ceases, after 1996 and before retirement, to be entitled to benefits under the plan or provision. In general terms, an individual's PAR under a defined benefit provision of an RPP will be the total of the individual's pension credits and past service pension adjustments under the provision since 1990, minus any lump sum amounts paid to the individual, or transferred to an RRSP or other money purchase type of registered plan, in respect of the individual's post-1989 benefits under the provision. An individual's PAR under a DPSP or money purchase provision of an RPP will be the total of all amounts included in the individual's pension credits under the plan or provision since 1990 but not vested in the individual.

The Regulations will generally require that an individual's PAR be reported to Revenue Canada and to the individual within 60 days after the calendar year quarter in which the individual ceases to be entitled to benefits under the DPSP or the benefit provision of the RPP, as the case may be. However, for those individuals who cease to be entitled to benefits after 1996 and before October 1998, the reporting deadline will be extended to December 31, 1998. The Regulations will require that PARs be reported by the plan administrator in the case of an RPP, and by the plan trustees in the case of a DPSP. PAR will be included in the individual's total pension adjustment reversal for the year in which the individual's entitlement to benefits ceases (except where entitlement ceases in 1997, in which case the resulting PAR will be added to the individual's total pension adjustment reversal for 1998).

The second amendment to the definition "RRSP deduction limit" is technical. It clarifies that, where an amount is prescribed in respect of an individual for a year for purposes of the description of B, the amount is subtracted in determining the value of B. This amendment applies after 1988, which coincides with the introduction of the definition "RRSP deduction limit".

ITA
146(1)

"unused RRSP deduction room"

Subsection 146(1) defines "unused RRSP deduction room", which measures the amount of deduction room for RRSP contributions that an individual may carry forward from a year to use in future years.

An individual's unused RRSP deduction room at the end of a year is defined to be the amount determined by the formula

$$A + B - (C + D)$$

where

A = the amount of the individual's unused RRSP deduction room carried forward from the previous year,

B = the amount of new RRSP deduction room that becomes available to the individual in the year (based on the individual's earned income for the previous year and certain other factors),

C = the amount of the individual's net past service pension adjustment for the year, and

D = the amount of any RRSP contributions deducted by the individual in computing income for the year.

This definition is amended in two ways. First, the formula is amended, for the 1998 and subsequent taxation years, to add an amount (variable R) which is the individual's total pension adjustment reversal for the year. See the commentary on the amendments to the definition "RRSP deduction limit" in subsection 146(1) for further information.

The second amendment is technical. It clarifies that, where an amount is prescribed in respect of an individual for a year for purposes of the description of B, the amount is subtracted in determining the value of B. This amendment applies after 1988,

which coincides with the introduction of the definition "unused RRSP deduction room".

Clause 38

Registered Education Savings Plans

ITA

146.1

Section 146.1 of the Act contains rules relating to registered education savings plans (RESPs). Significant amendments are being made to this section: to increase the annual contribution limit; to allow an RESP subscriber to receive the trust's accumulated income under certain circumstances; to permit RESP beneficiaries who are enrolled in a distance education course to receive educational assistance payments; and to allow spouses to be joint subscribers under an RESP. Additional technical amendments are being made to improve the operation of the RESP rules.

Overview

The federal budget of February 18, 1997 announced significant changes to the rules governing RESPs. The purpose of this overview is to provide an outline of the existing rules governing RESPs, together with the proposed changes. For technical detail, reference should be made to proposed section 146.1 and Parts X.4 and X.5 of the Act and to the detailed explanatory notes with respect to those provisions. It must be stressed that, while the Act provides a basic framework for RESPs, the actual benefits provided under a specific RESP depend on its terms.

Q1. What are RESPs?

RESPs are vehicles designed for individuals to accumulate income for post-secondary education. Typically, the plans are entered into by parents seeking to save for their children's post-secondary education.

There are currently two basic types of RESPs. A qualifying child can be a beneficiary under a plan (sometimes referred to as a "group RESP") under which benefits are a proportionate share of income

accumulating in respect of a group of children of the same age. In this case, contributions are made in respect of each such child under similar RESPs with the same promoter and the benefits for a child vary depending on the timing and amounts of contributions made in respect of the child and the investment performance of assets associated with the plan. A child or adult, alone or with family members, can also be a beneficiary under RESPs that are sometimes referred to as "self-directed" or "individual" RESPs.

An RESP is entered into between an RESP promoter and a subscriber. A subscriber can establish an RESP for the benefit of any number of beneficiaries. Where there is more than one beneficiary under a single plan, each beneficiary under the plan must be related to the subscriber by blood relationship or adoption. For example, an individual cannot establish an RESP for the individual's own benefit or the benefit of the individual's spouse unless there is only one beneficiary. However, a parent can establish an RESP for the benefit of all his or her children.

Q2. What are the contribution limits for RESPs?

The existing annual contribution limit per beneficiary is \$2,000. The proposed amendments increase the \$2,000 limit to \$4,000 for 1997 and subsequent taxation years. The lifetime contribution limit per beneficiary remains at \$42,000.

It should be noted that the contribution limits cannot be avoided by establishing more than one RESP or by having different subscribers establish RESPs. For example, if a grandparent contributed \$1,500 into an RESP in respect of a grandchild in a year, the remaining RESP contribution room available to any other subscriber in respect of the grandchild in the year would be \$2,500.

Q3. Can RESP income and RESP contributions be returned to a subscriber?

There is nothing in the Act which would prevent RESP contributions from being returned to a subscriber. Conversely, under the existing rules in the Act, RESP income cannot be returned to a subscriber, except by way of educational assistance payments. Educational assistance payments can generally be paid only to students in full-time attendance at a university or college, although the

amendments will accommodate distance education by allowing such payments to be made to students taking a full-time course load at a university or college.

The amendments permit an RESP to make a distribution at any time after 1997 of accumulated income to a subscriber where the following conditions are met:

- the subscriber is resident in Canada,
- each beneficiary in respect of whom contributions were made by the subscriber has attained 21 years of age and is not eligible at that time to receive educational assistance payments, and
- the RESP has been in existence for at least 10 years.

After a subscriber's death, an RESP may allow for the distribution of accumulated income to any person resident in Canada. In addition, the "age 21" and "10 year hold" conditions are waived in the case of deceased beneficiaries.

It should also be noted that RESP assets can be transferred from one RESP to another without restarting the 10 year hold requirement.

Q4. What is the tax treatment of RESP contributions?

RESP contributions are not deductible in computing income. They can be returned to the subscriber at any time without tax consequences, in accordance with the terms of the RESP.

Q5. What is the tax treatment of RESP income?

RESP income is included in computing a recipient's income once it is distributed, and taxed accordingly. However, in many cases the recipient will be a student whose total income will result in a minimal amount of tax. The tax advantage of an RESP is that tax is not levied on an annual basis on undistributed RESP income.

When RESP income is returned to a subscriber under the new rules, an additional 20-per-cent tax is levied on the subscriber except to the extent that the subscriber "rolls over" the RESP income to an RRSP as described below. The 20-per-cent tax is in recognition of the

deferral of taxes on interest and other income on funds contributed into an RESP. For example, assume \$1,000 of RESP income is distributed to a subscriber whose marginal federal/provincial combined income tax rate is 50 per cent, the subscriber will pay \$500 of regular income tax and an additional \$200 of penalty tax.

If, after the death of a subscriber, income is returned under the new rules to an individual other than the spouse or former spouse of the deceased subscriber, the 20-per-cent tax will apply with respect to such income.

Q6. Can the 20-per-cent penalty tax be avoided by transferring RESP income to an RRSP?

When RESP income is transferred on behalf of a subscriber into an RRSP, the RESP income is still included in computing the subscriber's income. However, the amount transferred into the RRSP counts as a normal RRSP contribution which can offset the income inclusion and eliminate the 20-per-cent penalty tax if the subscriber has sufficient unused RRSP room. Subject to a lifetime limit of \$40,000, RESP income transferred into an RRSP will generally not be subject to the 20-per-cent penalty tax, provided that the subscriber deducts a regular RRSP contribution for the year of the transfer equal to at least the amount of the transfer. **Note: If a transfer of RESP income is made in the first 60 days of a taxation year, the 20-per-cent tax will be reduced only in the event that the transfer is deducted in computing income for that year.**

The proposed amendments will provide the authority to impose withholding taxes with respect to RESPs. However, to accommodate transfers of RESP income to RRSPs, provision to waive withholding taxes will be made in some cases.

Q7. Can the 20-per-cent penalty tax also be avoided by transferring RESP income to a spousal RRSP of an RESP subscriber?

Yes, provided the RESP subscriber has sufficient RRSP deduction room.

Q8. What if the RESP contribution limits are exceeded?

Subscribers are required to report overcontributions in respect of a beneficiary, based on contributions to all plans in respect of the beneficiary. There is a 1 per cent per month penalty tax in respect of excess amounts.

In addition, the registration of an RESP will become revocable in the event that an excess contribution is made in respect of a beneficiary. However, it is expected that the Minister of National Revenue would generally revoke a plan on this basis only in cases where there has been a flagrant disregard of the contribution limits.

Q9. What happens if an overcontribution to an RESP is made by mistake?

The Minister of National Revenue will have discretion to waive the penalty tax.

Q10. Can property be transferred from one RESP to another?

In most situations, a transfer from one RESP to another will not have any adverse consequences. Transfers can be made without any resulting taxes or penalties where there is a common beneficiary under the transferor and transferee plan. In addition, this rule will be extended to cases where a beneficiary under the transferor plan is a sibling of a beneficiary under the transferee plan, provided that the beneficiary under the transferee plan is under 21 years of age.

In situations not described above, transfers can result in penalty tax because the RESP contribution history in respect of each beneficiary under a transferor plan will, in effect, be assumed by each beneficiary under the transferee plan. As a consequence, each contribution that was made into the transferor plan is treated on a retroactive basis as also having been made into the transferee plan.

Similar rules will also apply where one beneficiary replaces another beneficiary under the same plan.

Q11. Will RESPs have to be changed because of the proposed amendments to allow distributions of accumulated income?

No. On the other hand, the amendments will not prevent any change in the terms of existing RESPs. An existing arrangement could be altered where the parties to the arrangement agree. In addition, it is understood that "group" RESPs normally have specific contractual provisions governing modifications to existing arrangements.

ITA

146.1(1)

Subsection 146.1(1) of the Act defines a number of terms that apply to RESPs.

Subclause 38(1)

"pre-1972 income" and "tax-paid income"

These definitions are being repealed, effective after 1997. For further details, see the commentary on the repeal of subsections 146.1(8) to (10) of the Act.

Subclause 38(2)

"educational assistance payment"

An "educational assistance payment" is a payment, other than a refund of payments, made to a designated beneficiary under an education savings plan to assist the beneficiary to further his or her post-secondary education. Educational assistance payments are included in computing income under subsection 146.1(7).

Paragraph 146.1(2)(g) and new paragraph 146.1(2)(g.1) are RESP registration rules which restrict the circumstances in which educational assistance payments can be made.

The definition is amended so that scholarships and other similar amounts paid out of an education savings plan to non-beneficiaries will also be treated as educational assistance payments. As indicated by existing paragraph (b) of the definition "trust" in

subsection 146.1(1), payments of this nature to non-beneficiaries are contemplated under the RESP rules.

This amendment applies after 1997.

"education savings plan"

An RESP is an "education savings plan" that has been accepted for registration by the Minister of National Revenue. An "education savings plan" is defined as a contract between an individual who is the subscriber, and a person or organization who is the promoter. Under the terms of the contract, the subscriber makes contributions to the promoter in exchange for, among other things, the promoter's undertaking to make educational assistance payments to eligible beneficiaries.

The definition is amended to provide that the contract may be entered into jointly by an individual and the individual's spouse. It is also amended to prohibit a trust (which is treated as an individual for the purposes of the Act) from establishing an RESP. The existing reference to a "subscriber" within the definition has also been replaced by a new definition of "subscriber", which is explained in the commentary on that provision.

These amendments apply to contracts made after 1997.

"refund of payments"

A "refund of payments" under an education savings plan is essentially a return of all or part of the contributions made by or on behalf of a subscriber under the plan.

The definition is amended to clarify that a "refund of payments" under a plan also includes an amount transferred from another plan to the extent that the amount would have been a "refund of payments" if it had been paid directly to a subscriber under the other plan.

This amendment applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

"registered education savings plan"

A "registered education savings plan" is an education savings plan that has been accepted for registration by Revenue Canada.

The definition is amended so that an RESP that is amended subsequent to registration continues to be considered to be an RESP. The definition is also amended to provide that, once the registration of an education savings plan has been revoked under amended subsection 146.1(13), the plan is no longer treated as an RESP (except for the purposes of the income inclusion rules in subsections 146.1(7) and (7.1) and the overcontribution tax in Part X.4 of the Act). This exception ensures that educational assistance payments and accumulated income payments made under a revoked plan will be included in the recipient's income.

These amendments apply after 1997.

Subclause 38(3)

"trust"

For the purpose of the RESP rules, a "trust" is defined to be any person who irrevocably holds property pursuant to an education savings plan for a number of limited purposes. Under paragraph (b) of the definition, one of the permitted purposes of an RESP trust is the payment of scholarships to non-beneficiaries.

Paragraph (b) of the definition is being eliminated. This amendment is consequential on an amendment to the definition "educational assistance payment", under which payments of scholarships and other amounts to non-beneficiaries will be treated as educational assistance payments. For further detail, see the commentary on the amendments to the definition "educational assistance payment".

The definition is also amended so that after 1997 a trust is permitted to provide for the payment of accumulated income payments. For further details, see the commentary on the new definition of "accumulated income payment".

These amendments apply after 1997.

Subclause 38(4)**"accumulated income payment"**

The definition "accumulated income payment" is being introduced, effective after 1997. It is any distribution out of an education savings plan, other than a distribution that is an educational assistance payment, a refund of payments, a payment to an educational institution in Canada or a transfer to another RESP.

Accumulated income payments are required under new subsection 146.1(7.1) of the Act to be included in computing the recipient's income and are relevant in computing the special 20-per-cent tax in new Part X.5 of the Act. The circumstances in which such payments can be made is limited by new paragraph 146.1(2)(d.1).

"RESP annual limit"

The definition "RESP annual limit" is introduced, effective after 1989. It represents the maximum annual amount that can be contributed to an RESP in a year in respect of a beneficiary. The amount was \$1,500 from 1990 to 1995 and \$2,000 for 1996 and will be \$4,000 for 1997 and subsequent years. The definition is used in amended paragraph 146.1(2)(k) and amended Part X.4 of the Act.

"subscriber"

The existing definition "subscriber", contained within the definition of "education savings plan", defines a subscriber simply as the individual who entered into the RESP contract with the promoter.

A separate definition of "subscriber" is being introduced, effective for contracts entered into after 1997. Generally, a subscriber under an education savings plan is the individual (or individuals) with whom the promoter entered into the plan. The definition also provides for replacement subscribers under certain circumstances relating to marriage breakdown and death, as described below.

Where a spouse or former spouse of a subscriber acquires the subscriber's rights under the plan pursuant to a court order or written agreement relating to a division of property between the two

individuals on the breakdown of their marriage, the spouse or former spouse is considered to be a subscriber under the plan. In such a case, the former subscriber ceases to be a subscriber under the plan.

Also, where the plan allows a person to make contributions into the plan after the death of a subscriber, the person is a subscriber under the plan. For example, if the estate of the subscriber continues to make contributions into the plan in respect of the plan's beneficiaries, the estate is considered to be a subscriber.

The definition is relevant for a number of purposes. Under new paragraph 146.1(2)(d.1), an RESP may allow a subscriber to receive "accumulated income payments". Under amended Part X.4 of the Act, the liability for RESP overcontributions tax is imposed on RESP subscribers.

Subclause 38(5)

ITA
146.1(2)

Subsection 146.1(2) of the Act sets out the requirements that must be satisfied in order to register an education savings plan. The preamble to subsection 146.1(2) is amended to make it clear that the requirements in that subsection do not simply relate to the terms of an education savings plan. This amendment is, in part, consequential on the amendment to paragraph 146.1(2)(m) described in the commentary below.

This amendment applies to applications made after 1997. Other amendments to subsection 146.1(2) are described in the commentary below.

Subclause 38(6)

ITA
146.1(2)(b)

Paragraph 146.1(2)(b) of the Act requires that, before an education savings plan may be registered, there must be at least 150 subscribers who have entered into plans with the promoter which meet all the

other requirements of subsection 146.1(2). Note, however, that relief from this requirement is provided under subsection 146.1(3).

Paragraph 146.1(2)(b) is amended by changing the requirement that there be at least 150 subscribers who have entered into plans with the promoter to a requirement that there be at least 150 plans entered into with the promoter. Paragraph 146.1(2)(b) is also amended to eliminate an unnecessary reference to the former Act.

These amendments apply to applications made after 1997.

Subclause 38(7)

ITA

146.1(2)(d) and (d.1)

Paragraph 146.1(2)(d) of the Act ensures that payments to a subscriber under a plan are restricted to a refund of payments (unless the subscriber is also the beneficiary under the plan). Under the existing rules, subscribers generally forfeit RESP income in the event the designated beneficiaries do not pursue post-secondary education.

Paragraph 146.1(2)(d) is amended so that the restriction applies only to payments made to a subscriber under a plan before 1998. This amendment is consequential on the introduction of new paragraph 146.1(2)(d.1) of the Act which permits RESP income to be returned to a subscriber where certain conditions are satisfied.

New paragraph 146.1(2)(d.1) is added to allow, but not require, RESPs to be established or amended so that subscribers (and other persons) can receive RESP income under certain circumstances. An RESP may provide after 1997 for the payment of "accumulated income payments" (as defined in subsection 146.1(1)) to or on behalf of a person resident in Canada. Generally, the person must be a subscriber under the plan. However, where a subscriber has died, the plan may allow accumulated income payments to be made to any person resident in Canada.

Where more than one person is entitled to receive accumulated income payments under a plan, the payments must be made separately to each person. The plan must not allow for the payments to be made jointly.

In addition, the following conditions must be satisfied at the time an accumulated income payment is made:

- each individual in respect of whom a contribution had been made into the plan has attained 21 years of age and is not pursuing post-secondary education (or each such individual is deceased); and
- the plan has been in existence for at least 10 years (or each individual in respect of whom a contribution had been made into the plan is deceased and was the subscriber, was related to a subscriber, or was the nephew, niece, great nephew or great niece of a subscriber).

New subsection 146.1(7.1) requires the inclusion in income of accumulated income payments received under an RESP. In addition, new Part X.5 of the Act sets out a special tax on accumulated income payments.

These amendments apply to 1998 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 38(8)

ITA

146.1(2)(g) and (g.1)

Paragraph 146.1(2)(g) of the Act provides that educational assistance payments to beneficiaries of RESPs may be made only where the beneficiary is a student in full-time attendance at a post-secondary institution and enrolled in a qualifying educational program.

Paragraph 146.1(2)(g) is amended so that it applies only with respect to payments made before 1997. This amendment is consequential on the introduction of new paragraph 146.1(2)(g.1).

New paragraph 146.1(2)(g.1) provides that educational assistance payments made after 1996 to an individual under an RESP may be made only where the individual is enrolled in a qualifying educational program as a full-time student at a post-secondary educational institution. As a result, educational assistance payments may now be made out of an RESP to students who are taking distance education courses, such as correspondence courses.

Amended paragraph 146.1(2)(g) and new paragraph 146.1(2)(g.1) apply to plans entered into after February 20, 1990. However, for plans entered into before 1998, the restrictions do not apply to students who are not designated RESP beneficiaries.

ITA

146.1(2)(g.2)

New paragraph 146.1(2)(g.2) of the Act requires that each contribution made into an RESP either be a subscriber contribution made in respect of a beneficiary under the plan, or a transfer from another RESP.

This amendment applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 38(9)

ITA

146.1(2)(i.1)

New paragraph 146.1(2)(i.1) of the Act applies only with respect to an RESP that allows for the payment of accumulated income payments. Where a plan allows such payments, the plan must provide for its termination on or before March of the year following the year in which the first such payment is made.

This amendment applies to 1998 and subsequent taxation years.

ITA

146.1(2)(i.2)

New paragraph 146.1(2)(i.2) of the Act prohibits a plan from receiving property from another RESP after the other plan has made an accumulated income payment. This condition ensures that transfers between plans cannot be used to extend the life of a plan beyond the term provided for in new paragraph 146.1(2)(i.1).

This amendment applies to 1998 and subsequent taxation years.

ITA

146.1(2)(j)

Paragraph 146.1(2)(j) of the Act restricts the selection of RESP beneficiaries, where a plan permits more than one individual to be a beneficiary. Where this is the case, the subscriber must be connected by blood relationship or adoption to each of the beneficiaries. Subsection 251(6) provides rules for determining connection by blood relationship and adoption.

Paragraph 146.1(2)(j) is amended to ensure that this restriction operates as intended where an RESP has more than one subscriber. Where this is the case and there is more than one beneficiary, each of the beneficiaries must be connected by blood relationship or adoption to each of the living subscribers (or to have been connected to a deceased original subscriber). This amendment relates to an amendment to the definition "education savings plan" in subsection 146.1(1), which contemplates an RESP having joint subscribers.

Subparagraph 146.1(2)(j)(ii) is introduced to restrict the contributions that can be made in respect of a beneficiary, in the event that an RESP allows more than one beneficiary. A contribution into the plan in respect of a beneficiary in these circumstances is permitted to be made only where:

- the beneficiary has not attained 21 years of age at the time the plan was entered into, or
- the contribution is made by way of a transfer from another RESP or after such a contribution, provided that another contribution in respect of the beneficiary had been made before the transfer into the other plan.

While special provision is made above for transfers from another RESP, new paragraph 146.1(2)(g.2) does not allow a plan to accept contributions into the plan by way of a transfer from another education savings plan in the event that the registration of the other plan has been revoked. The registration of the other plan will be revocable under subsections 146.1(12.1) to (13) in the event that the other plan does not comply with new subparagraph 146.1(2)(j)(ii).

These amendments generally apply to 1998 and subsequent taxation years. However, the whole of paragraph 146.1(2)(j) does not apply to plans entered into before July 14, 1990. In addition, subparagraph 146.1(2)(j)(ii) does not apply to plans entered into before 1998.

Subclause 38(10)

ITA

146.1(2)(k)

Paragraph 146.1(2)(k) of the Act ensures that an RESP will not accept contributions in respect of a beneficiary which exceed \$2,000 per year.

Paragraph 146.1(2)(k) is amended to raise this limit to the RESP annual limit. As defined in subsection 146.1(1), the RESP annual limit for the 1997 and subsequent years is \$4,000.

Paragraph 146.1(2)(k) is also amended so that, for the purpose of this paragraph, contributions made by way of a transfer from another RESP do not use up this limit. Note, however, that RESP overcontributions may result in a penalty tax for the subscriber under Part X.4 of the Act.

These amendments apply to plans entered into after February 20, 1990.

Subclause 38(11)

ITA

146.1(2)(m)

Paragraph 146.1(2)(m) of the Act requires that an RESP comply with prescribed conditions. There are no conditions currently prescribed for this purpose.

Paragraph 146.1(2)(m) is replaced by a further condition for registration of an education savings plan. For an education savings plan to be accepted for registration, the Minister of National Revenue must have no reasonable basis to believe that the promoter will not

take all reasonable measures to ensure that the plan will continue to comply with the plan registration conditions.

This amendment applies to applications made after 1997.

Subclause 38(12)

ITA

146.1(4.1)

New subsection 146.1(4.1) of the Act applies where an RESP is amended. It requires the promoter to file the text of the amendment with Revenue Canada within 60 days after the plan is amended. The penalty for failure to comply with this requirement is provided under subsection 162(7) of the Act.

The requirement to file RESP amendments does not apply until Royal Assent. However, Revenue Canada currently requires, in paragraph 27 of Information Circular 93-3, that amendments be submitted.

Subclause 38(13)

ITA

146.1(6.1)(a)

Subsection 146.1(6.1) of the Act contains special rules that apply with respect to transfers of property from one RESP to another.

Paragraph 146.1(6.1)(a) ensures that RESP transfers will not result in penalty tax under Part X.4 of the Act. Paragraph 146.1(6)(a) is repealed, effective for transfers that occur after 1996. This amendment is consequential on the introduction of subsection 204.9(5) of the Act.

Subclause 38(14)

ITA

146.1(6.1)(b) and (c)

Paragraph 146.1(6.1)(b) of the Act ensures that transfers from one RESP to another cannot be used to avoid specified registration

conditions. It provides that, for the purposes of paragraphs 146.1(2)(h) and (i), the transferee plan is deemed to have been entered into on the earlier of the day otherwise determined and the day on which the transferor plan was entered into.

Paragraph 146.1(6.1)(b) is amended so that this deeming rule also applies for the purpose of new subparagraph 146.1(2)(d.1)(vi) of the Act, which generally prohibits distributions of RESP accumulated income from plans that have existed for less than 10 years. This ensures that property can be transferred from one RESP to another without restarting the "10 year hold" requirement. Amended paragraph 146.1(6.1)(b) applies after 1997.

New paragraph 146.1(6.1)(c) of the Act, which applies to transfers that occur after 1997, exempts transferred amounts from being included in computing the income of any person.

Subclause 38(15)

ITA

146.1(7)

Subsection 146.1(7) of the Act requires that an RESP beneficiary include in income for a taxation year the total of all educational assistance payments paid to, or on behalf of, the beneficiary in the year under the plan, excluding the beneficiary's portion of "tax-paid-income".

Subsection 146.1(7) is amended so that educational assistance payments paid out of an RESP to or for any individual are included in computing the individual's income. This ensures that non-beneficiaries who receive scholarships under the plan are required to include such amounts in computing their income.

Subsection 146.1(7) is also amended to delete the provisions relating to "tax-paid-income" as they are no longer relevant. For further details, see the commentary on subsections 146.1(8) to (10) of the Act.

These amendments apply to 1998 and subsequent taxation years.

ITA

146.1(7.1) and (7.2)

New subsection 146.1(7.1) of the Act provides that accumulated income payments received by a taxpayer in a taxation year under an RESP are required to be included in computing the taxpayer's income for the year.

In order to discourage the trading of RESP interests, subsection 146.1(7.1) also provides that any amounts received by a taxpayer in a year from the disposition of a subscriber's interest under an RESP, other than amounts excluded by virtue of new subsection 146.1(7.2), are included in the taxpayer's income for the year. For this purpose, the following amounts are excluded:

- any amount received under the plan;
- any amount received in satisfaction of a right to a refund of payments; and
- any amount received under a court order or written agreement relating to a division of property between two individuals on the breakdown of their marriage.

These amendments apply to 1998 and subsequent taxation years.

ITA

146.1(8) to (10)

Subsections 146.1(8) to (10) of the Act contain income exclusion rules that apply with respect to the distribution of property relating to pre-1972 income of a trust governed by an education savings plan. To the extent that trust income earned prior to 1972 had been included in the subscriber's income, the rules provide a deduction for the portion of "tax-paid-income" included in payments to a beneficiary under the plan.

Subsections 146.1(8) to (10) are repealed for 1998 and subsequent taxation years as they are no longer relevant, since all pre-1972 plans would be expected to have been wound up by this time.

Subclause 38(16)

ITA

146.1(12.1) to (13)

Subsection 146.1(13) of the Act permits the Minister of National Revenue to revoke the registration of an RESP that ceases to comply with the requirements for registration. The existing rules are amended to improve the procedure for revoking the registration of an RESP. The new rules are similar to those found in section 147.1 of the Act that apply to the revocation of the registration of a pension plan.

New subsection 146.1(12.1) of the Act provides that the Minister may revoke the registration of an RESP if:

- the plan ceases to comply with the conditions for its registration;
- the plan ceases to comply with any provision of the plan; or
- an individual has become liable for tax under Part X.4 of the Act because of contributions into the plan.

As a first step in revoking the registration of an RESP, the Minister must notify the promoter in writing of the Minister's intention to revoke the plan's registration as of a specified day. The day can be no earlier than the day of the failure that entitles the Minister to send the notice of intent, or the last day of the month for which tax under Part X.4 of the Act is payable, as the case may be. Upon receipt of such a notice, the promoter under the plan may, under amended subsection 172(3) of the Act, appeal to the Federal Court of Appeal.

New subsection 146.1(12.2) provides that, after the Minister has sent a notice of intent to revoke the registration of an RESP, the Minister may notify the promoter in writing that the registration of the plan is revoked as of a specified date, which day can be no earlier than the day stated in the notice of intent. The notice of revocation cannot be sent until 30 days after the notice of intent was sent.

Amended subsection 146.1(13) provides that the registration of an RESP is revoked as of the day specified in the Minister's notice of revocation sent under subsection 146.1(12.2) unless, in the course of

an appeal under subsection 172(3), the Federal Court of Appeal orders otherwise.

These amendments apply after 1997.

ITA

146.1(14)

A trust governed by a revoked RESP is subject to tax under Part I of the Act on its taxable income. Any distributions from the revoked RESP as educational assistance payments or accumulated income payments are required to be included in the recipient's income pursuant to subsections 146.1(7) and (7.1) of the Act. In addition, distributions from a revoked RESP may give rise to penalty tax under new Part X.5 of the Act. Existing subsection 146.1(14) provides for an amount to be included in computing the income of a subscriber upon the revocation of an RESP.

Subsection 146.1(14) is being repealed, effective after 1997. It is no longer considered necessary in light of the other tax implications described above with respect to revoked RESPs.

Subclause 38(17)

ITA

146.1(15)

New subsection 146.1(15) of the Act allows the Governor in Council to make regulations requiring promoters to file information returns relating to education savings plans.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 39**Registered Pension Plans**

ITA

147.1(18)

Paragraph 147.1(18)(d) of the Act allows the Governor in Council to make regulations requiring registered pension plan administrators to make determinations relating to the computation of pension adjustments and past service pension adjustments. This paragraph is amended to include, after 1996, a reference to total pension adjustment reversals.

Paragraph 147.1(18)(t) of the Act allows the Governor in Council to make regulations defining several expressions used in the Act, such as "pension adjustment" and "past service pension adjustment". This paragraph is amended to include, after 1996, a reference to "total pension adjustment reversal".

See the commentary on the amendments to the definition "RRSP deduction limit" in subsection 146(1) of the Act for further information.

Clause 40**Transfer of Property within a Registered Pension Plan**

ITA

147.3(14.1)

Existing subsections 147.3(9) to (11) of the Act set out the tax consequences associated with transfers between registered pension plans (RPPs) and transfers from an RPP to a registered retirement savings plan or to a registered retirement income fund. With the introduction of new subsection 147.3(14.1), subsections 147.3(9) to (11) are also made to apply to transfers between benefit provisions of the same RPP.

Specifically, new subsection 147.3(14.1) provides that, where property held under one benefit provision of an RPP is made

available to pay benefits under another benefit provision of the same plan, subsections 147.3(9) to (11) apply in the same manner as they would have applied if the provisions had been in separate RPPs.

This means that, where an amount is transferred on behalf of an individual from one benefit provision to another of the same RPP and the transfer would not be in accordance with any of subsections 147.3(1) to (7) of the Act, the amount is deemed to have been paid from the plan to the individual and, as such, is taxable. The amount is also deemed to have been paid by the individual to the plan as a contribution under the recipient provision.

It should be noted that, by virtue of subsection 147.3(14) read in conjunction with subsection 147.3(14.1), subsections 147.3(9) to (11) also apply where property held under one benefit provision is made available to pay benefits under another benefit provision of the same RPP without the property being actually transferred.

New subsection 147.3(14.1) applies to transactions occurring on or after July 31, 1997.

Clause 41

Exemptions from Tax

ITA

149(1)(z)

Paragraph 149(1)(z) of the Act exempts mining reclamation trusts from tax under Part I of the Act. Instead, these trusts are taxed under Part XII.4.

Paragraph 149(1)(z) is amended so that the reference to a "mining reclamation trust" is replaced by a broader reference to a "qualifying environmental trust". This amendment is in consequence of the extension of the rules for mining reclamation trusts reflected by the new definition "qualifying environmental trust" in subsection 248(1). For more details, see the commentary on that definition.

This amendment applies to the 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 41.1**National Arts Services Organizations**

ITA

149.1(6.4)

Subsection 149.1(6.4) of the Act provides that a national arts service organization that is designated by the Minister of Canadian Heritage and registered by the Minister of National Revenue as meeting prescribed criteria shall, for the purpose of certain provisions of the Act, be treated as a registered charity that is designated as a charitable organization. This amendment adds paragraph 38(a.1) of the Act to the list of those provisions so that capital gains resulting from the making of gifts to national arts service organizations may qualify for the lower income inclusion rate provided in that paragraph.

This amendment applies after February 18, 1997.

Clause 42**Assessment**

ITA

152

Section 152 of the Act contains rules relating to assessments and reassessments of tax, interest and penalties payable by a taxpayer and to determinations of amounts of tax deemed to have been paid by a taxpayer.

Subclause 42(1)

ITA

152(1)(b)

Subsection 152(1) of the Act lists certain refunds and deemed payments of tax that are to be determined by Revenue Canada in the course of assessing a taxpayer's tax return.

Paragraph 152(1)(b) refers to the specific provisions of the Act under which amounts are deemed to be paid on account of tax. The amendment to this paragraph adds a reference to subsection 122.51(2) which is the provision under which the new refundable medical expense supplement is granted. The amendment also deletes obsolete references.

This amendment generally applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Paragraph 152(1)(b) is also amended to add a reference to new subsection 125.5(3) of the Act, under which qualified corporations may be deemed to have paid an amount on account of federal income tax as a result of the film or video production services tax credit. For further detail, please see the commentary on that provision in notes to Division B of these amendments.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after October, 1997.

Subclause 42(2)

ITA

152(4.2)(d)

Subsection 152(4.2) of the Act gives Revenue Canada discretion to make a reassessment or a redetermination beyond the normal reassessment period when so requested by a taxpayer who is an individual or a testamentary trust in order to give the taxpayer a refund or to reduce taxes payable. The amendment to paragraph 152(4.2)(d) adds a reference to subsection 122.51(2) to enable Revenue Canada to make a redetermination of the new refundable medical expense supplement. The amendment also deletes obsolete references.

These amendments apply to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 43**Withholding of Tax**

ITA

153(1)

Subsection 153(1) of the Act authorizes regulations for the withholding of tax from the payments described in paragraphs 153(1)(a) to (r).

Paragraph 153(1)(s) is added to authorize the withholding of tax from amounts in respect of employment earnings supplements, which are dealt with in paragraph 56(1)(r) of the Act. This amendment applies to payments made after 1992.

Paragraph 153(1)(r) is added to authorize the withholding of tax from payments under registered education savings plans. This amendment applies to payments made after 1997.

Clause 44**Instalment Payments**

ITA

156.1(1)

Subsection 156.1(1) of the Act sets out definitions that are relevant for the purpose of determining whether relief from tax instalments is available under subsection 156.1(2) or (4) of the Act. The definition "net tax owing" is amended so that tax payable under new Part X.5 of the Act is treated the same as tax under Part I of the Act for this purpose. This amendment applies to 1998 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 45

Penalties

ITA

163(2)(c.2)

Subsections 163(2) of the Act imposes a penalty where a taxpayer, knowingly or in circumstances amounting to gross negligence, participates in or makes a false statement or omission in a return, form, certificate, statement or answer. The amendment to paragraph 163(2)(c.2) is consequential on the introduction of the refundable medical expense supplement. It also deletes references to section 126.1 of the Act, which have become obsolete.

This amendment applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 46

Appeals

ITA

172(3)

Subsection 172(3) of the Act provides a taxpayer with a right of appeal to the Federal Court of Appeal where the Minister of National Revenue takes a number of actions, including refusing to accept an education savings plan for registration under section 146.1 or revoking the registration of such a plan under subsection 146.1(13). The time limit for instituting the appeal is set out in subsection 180(1) of the Act.

Subsection 172(3) is amended so that the right of appeal in respect of a revocation arises because of the sending of a notice of intent to revoke under new subsection 146.1(12.1), rather than because of the revocation itself.

This amendment applies after 1997.

Clause 47**Appeal Period**

ITA

180(1)

Subsection 180(1) of the Act sets out the deadline for instituting an appeal to the Federal Court of Appeal after the Minister of National Revenue has taken an action that gives rise to a right of appeal under subsection 172(3). The deadline is 30 days after the date of such action, with provision for the extension of the deadline by the Court.

Subsection 180(1) is amended so that the same deadline also applies with respect to the right of appeal arising from a notice of intent to revoke the registration of a registered education savings plan.

This amendment applies after 1997.

Clause 48**Part VI Tax on Capital of Financial Institutions**

ITA

190.1

Part VI of the Act levies a tax on the taxable capital employed in Canada of financial institutions. In general terms, a financial institution's taxable capital employed in Canada is the amount of its long-term debt, equity and non-deductible reserves that are considered to be used in connection with its activities carried on in Canada.

ITA

190.1(1.2)

Subsection 190.1(1.2) of the Act imposes an additional temporary Part VI tax on the taxable capital employed in Canada of financial institutions, other than life insurance corporations. The additional tax is equal to 0.15 per cent of the corporation's taxable capital employed in Canada in excess of its "enhanced capital deduction" of \$400 million. Where the corporation is related to another financial

institution at the end of the year, the enhanced capital deduction must be shared by members of the related group.

The additional tax, which was introduced in the 1995 budget and extended in the 1996 budget, is scheduled to expire on October 31, 1997. This amendment extends the application of the additional tax until October 31, 1998. For taxation years that include October 31, 1998, the additional tax will be prorated on the basis of the number of days in the taxation year that are before November 1, 1998.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 27, 1995.

Clause 49

Cumulative Excess Amount in respect of RRSPs

ITA

204.2(1.1)(b)

Subsection 204.1(2.1) of the Act imposes a penalty tax in respect of excess contributions made after 1990 to registered retirement savings plans (RRSPs). The amount of tax payable in respect of any month is 1 per cent of an individual's cumulative excess amount at the end of that month.

Subsection 204.2(1.1) of the Act defines an individual's cumulative excess amount at the end of any month in a year to be the excess of the individual's undeducted RRSP premiums at that time over the amount determined by the formula in paragraph 204.2(1.1)(b). Generally, the amount determined by the formula is the amount of RRSP deduction room available to the individual for the year *plus* a margin of \$2,000.

The formula in paragraph 204.2(1.1)(b) is amended, for the 1998 and subsequent taxation years, to add an amount (variable R) which is the individual's total pension adjustment reversal for the year. (See the commentary on the amendments to the definition "RRSP deduction limit" in subsection 146(1) of the Act for further information.)

Clause 50**Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations**

ITA

204.8 to 204.87

Part X.3 of the Act imposes various taxes and penalties on labour-sponsored venture capital corporations (LSVCCs) registered under that Part. A tax credit is provided under section 127.4 of the Act in respect of the acquisition of shares issued by LSVCCs.

Part X.3 is retitled so that it now refers to all LSVCCs, rather than simply those registered under Part X.3. This change is made because of the introduction of new subsections 204.82(5), 204.83(2) and 204.85(2), which apply to LSVCCs not registered under Part X.3.

This amendment applies after February 18, 1997.

Clause 51**Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations – Definitions**

ITA

204.8

"eligible investment"

Section 204.8 of the Act defines terms for the purposes of Part X.3 of the Act.

An "eligible investment" of an LSVCC generally includes a share or debt issued by an eligible business entity where, immediately after the issue of the share or debt, the following three conditions are satisfied:

- the LSVCC's total investment in the eligible entity (and all corporations related to the entity) is not more than 10 per cent of the LSVCC's shareholders' equity and not more than \$10 million;
- the carrying value of the total assets of the eligible entity and all corporations related to it does not exceed \$50 million; and

- the number of employees of the eligible entity and all corporations related to it does not exceed 500.

The definition is amended so that the \$10 million limit is increased to \$15 million.

The definition is also amended so that the last two conditions are applied immediately before the issue of the share or debt by the eligible entity, rather than immediately after.

The definition is also amended so that a prescribed LSVCC that is related to the eligible entity is ignored for the purpose of the second condition. It is intended that section 6701 of the *Income Tax Regulations* will be amended to add a cross reference to the definition.

The definition is also amended so that only one-half of the number of employees normally working less than 20 hours per week is taken into account for the purpose of determining whether the 500 employee limit is satisfied.

These amendments apply to property acquired after February 18, 1997.

Clause 52

Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations – Conditions

ITA

204.81(1)(c)(ii)(C)

Subsection 204.81(1) of the Act permits Revenue Canada to register a corporation as an LSVCC under Part X.3 of the Act if its articles satisfy specified conditions and other requirements are met.

Clause 204.81(1)(c)(ii)(C) sets out the conditions that must be met for an LSVCC to issue additional classes of shares, apart from class A shares issued to individuals and class B shares issued to a labour body. Under this clause, an LSVCC may generally issue only additional classes of shares without voting rights and only if the Minister of Finance approves the shares.

Clause 204.81(1)(c)(ii)(C) is amended so that voting rights may be attached to additional classes of shares that can be issued by an LSVCC.

This amendment applies after 1996.

Clause 53

Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations – Recovery of Credit

ITA

204.82(2) to (2.2)

Subsection 204.82(2) of the Act imposes a tax on an LSVCC that was registered under Part X.3 where, at any time after the fifth taxation year of the LSVCC ending after it first issues Class A shares, it fails to meet a required level of eligible investment. This level, at any time in a particular taxation year, is 60 per cent of the lesser of the LSVCC's shareholders' equity at the end of the preceding taxation year and the LSVCC's shareholders' equity determined at the end of the LSVCC's current taxation year (in both cases determined without taking into account any unrealized gains or losses on the LSVCC's eligible investments). If there is an investment shortfall at any time in the month, the LSVCC is required to pay a tax in respect of the month equal to the greatest such shortfall in the month multiplied by 1/60 of the prescribed rate of interest in effect for the month. Investment shortfalls in 12 consecutive months result in larger taxes and penalties (representing a recovery of federal LSVCC tax credits) applying under subsections 204.82(3) and (4) of the Act.

Subsection 204.82 is amended so that the required investment level at any time in a taxation year is no more than 60 per cent of the amount of the shareholders' equity of the LSVCC as of the end of the second preceding taxation year, determined without taking into account any unrealized gains or losses on eligible investments of the LSVCC. This amendment applies to taxation years ending after 1994 and before March 1, 1997.

Subsection 204.82(2) is also being split into three subsections (subsections 204.82(2) to (2.2)), in order to reflect a number of policy changes. The liability for tax is established under subsection 204.82(2). The investment shortfall on which the tax is based is now calculated under subsections 204.82(2.1) and (2.2). In addition, there are five substantive changes being made to the rules that are currently contained in subsection 204.82(2).

The first and second changes are of a technical nature. Amended subsection 204.82(2) makes it clear that the tax under that subsection for a taxation year applies only in respect of months that end in the year. In addition, the investment shortfall for a month that straddles a taxation year is determined with reference to the greatest investment shortfall in the portion of the month that is in the year.

The third change is meant to accommodate LSVCCs that increase their level of small business investment during a taxation year, effectively imposing the required investment level on a more gradual basis. To the extent that an LSVCC's total average cost of eligible investments in a taxation year exceeds the LSVCC's total cost of eligible investments at the time the investment shortfall is being calculated, under new paragraph (b) of the description of variable B in subsection 204.82(2.1), the excess will reduce the LSVCC's shortfall at that time. The average total cost for a taxation year is determined solely with reference to costs at the beginning and at the end of the year. This amendment applies to taxation years that end after 1998.

The fourth change is of a tightening nature and is intended to ensure that the minimum general holding period for Class A shares corresponds with the length of time during which the capital raised by such shares is required to be used to acquire eligible investments. Under subsection 211.8(1) of the Act, the general holding period is effectively 8 years for shares acquired after March 5, 1996 and 5 years for shares acquired on or before that date. The change is reflected in paragraphs 204.82(2.2)(b) and (c), which are rules that apply for the purpose of computing an LSVCC's investment shortfall.

Under these paragraphs, an LSVCC's shareholders' equity at the end of a taxation year must now generally be determined without reference to redemptions of Class A shares that are expected to occur after the end of the year. However, there is an exception for each

redemption that occurs in the first 60 days of the following year, provided that tax under Part XII.5 of the Act became payable as a consequence of the redemption (or the redemption would have been exempt from Part XII.5 tax if it had occurred at the end of the earlier year.) These paragraphs apply for the purpose of computing investment shortfalls in taxation years that end after 1998, except that the percentage of expected redemptions that is ignored is 20 per cent for the 1999 taxation year, 40 per cent for the 2000 taxation year, 60 per cent for the 2001 taxation year and 80 per cent for the 2002 taxation year. This transitional rule allows LSVCCs time to make any necessary increases in their levels of eligible investments.

The last change is meant to encourage investments in smaller businesses, which for this purpose are defined as businesses which do not exceed a \$10 million asset limit (rather than the \$50 million limit otherwise applicable under the definition "eligible investment" in section 204.8). Under new paragraph 204.82(2.2)(d), the cost of each eligible investment in such a business is grossed-up by 50 per cent for the purpose of calculating an LSVCC's investment shortfall at any time, provided the investment was made after February 18, 1997.

Except as noted above, these amendments apply to taxation years that end after February 1997.

ITA

204.82(5)

Subsection 204.82(5) of the Act imposes a new tax under Part X.3 of the Act on LSVCCs that have been prescribed under the *Income Tax Regulations* for the purpose of the definition "approved share" in subsection 127.4(1) and that were not registered under Part X.3.

If such an LSVCC is liable to pay an amount to the government of a province as a consequence of a failure to acquire sufficient properties (i.e., small business properties) of a character described in the law of the province, the LSVCC is generally liable to pay a tax under Part X.3 for the taxation year in which that amount became payable equal to that amount. However, this new subsection does not require the matching of provincially-imposed interest on unpaid provincial amounts payable. Instead, because of section 204.87, interest on unpaid Part X.3 tax will be calculated in accordance with rules under Part I of the Act.

Subsection 204.82(5) also does not apply to any amount payable under or as a consequence of a prescribed provision of the law of the province. It is intended that Part LXVII of the Regulations will be amended to provide a list of prescribed provisions for this purpose. Section 25.1 of the Ontario Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations Act, which imposes special additional penalties on provincially-registered LSVCCs for the failure to meet provincial investment requirements in respect of certain small businesses, will be included in this list. At this time, no other prescribed provision is contemplated.

In accordance with new subsection 204.86(2), such an LSVCC must file a return under Part X.3 for the taxation year in which tax becomes payable under subsection 204.82(5). The tax is payable within 90 days after the end of the taxation year in which the liability arose.

This amendment applies to liabilities arising after February 18, 1997.

Clause 54

Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations – Refund of Tax and Penalty

ITA
204.83

Section 204.83 of the Act provides that Revenue Canada must refund 100 per cent of the tax payable by an LSVCC under subsection 204.82(3) and 80 per cent of the penalty payable by it under subsection 204.82(4) where, throughout any 12 month period beginning after the 12 month period in respect of which the tax became payable, it has maintained the required level of eligible investments.

Existing section 204.83 is renumbered as subsection 204.83(1), as a consequence of the introduction of new subsection 204.83(2).

Subsection 204.83(2) is introduced to provide a further refund mechanism, as a consequence of the introduction of subsection 204.82(5) which imposes Part X.3 tax on certain

provincially-registered LSVCCs. The refund is available to such an LSVCC where:

- the government of a province refunds, at any time, an amount to the LSVCC;
- the refund is of an amount that had been paid in satisfaction of a particular amount payable in a taxation year of the LSVCC; and
- tax was payable under subsection 204.82(5) by the LSVCC for a taxation year because the particular amount became payable.

In these circumstances, the LSVCC is, at that time, deemed to have paid an amount on account of its Part X.3 tax payable for that year equal to the amount of the refund.

This amendment applies after February 18, 1997.

Clause 55

Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations – Restrictions on Dissolution

ITA

204.85

Section 204.85 of the Act provides that a federally-registered LSVCC (including a revoked corporation) may not liquidate or dissolve without the written permission of the Minister of Finance, if the federally-registered LSVCC has issued Class A shares. The Minister of Finance also has the authority to impose terms and conditions upon dissolution of such corporations.

Existing section 204.85 is renumbered as subsection 204.85(1), as a consequence of the introduction of subsection 204.85(2).

Section 204.85 is also amended to provide that, after July 31, 1997, a federally-registered LSVCC may not be amalgamated or merged with another corporation without the written permission of the Minister of Finance.

New subsection 204.85(2) imposes a tax on LSVCCs that have been prescribed for the purpose of the definition "approved share" in subsection 127.4(1) but which are not federally-registered LSVCCs.

This tax is imposed where an amount is payable after February 18, 1997 to the government of a province by an LSVCC as a consequence of the amalgamation or merger of the LSVCC with another corporation, the winding-up or dissolution of the LSVCC or the LSVCC ceasing to be registered under the law of the province. The LSVCC is generally liable to pay a tax under Part X.3 of the Act for the taxation year in which the amount became payable to the province equal to that amount. However, this measure does not require the matching of provincially-imposed interest on unpaid provincial amounts payable. Instead, because of section 204.87, interest on unpaid Part X.3 tax will be calculated in accordance with rules under Part I of the Act. In addition, this measure does not apply to any amount payable under or as a consequence of any provision of the law of the province that is prescribed under Part LXVII of the *Income Tax Regulations*. At this time, no prescribed provision is contemplated.

In accordance with new subsection 204.86(2), an LSVCC must file a return under Part X.3 for the taxation year in which tax becomes payable under subsection 204.85(2). The tax is payable within 90 days after the end of the taxation year in which the liability arose.

Clause 56

Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations – Return and Payment of Tax

ITA
204.86

Section 204.86 of the Act provides that every federally-registered LSVCC (including revoked corporations) must file an annual return under Part X.3 of the Act.

Existing section 204.86 is renumbered as subsection 204.86(1), as a consequence of the introduction of new subsection 204.86(2).

The effect of new subsection 204.86(2) is described in the commentary on new subsections 204.82(5) and 204.85(2) of the Act.

These amendments apply to taxation years that end after February 18, 1997.

Clause 57

Tax in Respect of Overpayment to Registered Education Savings Plans

ITA

Part X.4

204.9

Part X.4 of the Act provides for a special tax to be paid by subscribers with respect to overcontributions made to registered education savings plans (RESPs).

Part X.4 is amended to reflect the increase in the annual contribution limit in respect of RESP beneficiaries for 1997 and subsequent years. It is also amended to allow the replacement after 1996 of a beneficiary under an RESP by a brother or sister of the beneficiary who is under 21 years of age, generally without penalty tax implications. Part X.4 is also amended to allow Revenue Canada to waive Part X.4 tax where appropriate. Finally, a number of technical changes have been made to improve the operation of this tax.

It should also be noted that, under new subsections 146.1(12.1) to (13), Revenue Canada may revoke the registration of an RESP where a subscriber under the plan is liable for Part X.4 tax because of overcontributions under the plan. However, it is expected that Revenue Canada would generally revoke the registration of a plan on this basis only where there has been a flagrant disregard of the contribution limits.

The following commentary explains the amendments to Part X.4 in greater detail.

Subclause 57(1)

ITA

204.9(1)

Definitions

Subsection 204.9(1) defines a number of expressions used in Part X.4.

An "excess amount" for a year in respect of a beneficiary under an RESP is the total amount on which tax is payable under Part X.4. An excess amount arises when the total of all contributions made into RESPs for a particular beneficiary either exceeds the annual limit of \$2,000 in any year, or causes the lifetime contribution limit of \$42,000 to be exceeded.

The definition "excess amount" is amended, for 1997 and subsequent years, to raise the \$2,000 annual limit to the "RESP annual limit". As defined in subsection 146.1(1) of the Act, the RESP annual limit for 1997 and subsequent years is \$4,000. The definition is further amended to refer to the new expression "RESP lifetime limit", rather than \$42,000.

The definition "RESP lifetime limit" is introduced to simplify the description of "excess amount". The lifetime limit is \$31,500 for 1990 to 1995, and \$42,000 for 1996 and subsequent years.

The definition "subscriber's gross cumulative excess" is introduced for the purpose of determining a subscriber's liability for Part X.4 tax. A "subscriber's gross cumulative excess" is the total of all amounts each of which is the "subscriber's share of the excess amount" for a particular year in respect of a beneficiary. The "subscriber's share of the excess amount" is essentially the subscriber's pro-rata share of any RESP overcontributions made in respect of a particular beneficiary. The new definition, which applies for determining Part X.4 tax for months after 1996, is added for technical clarity and does not reflect any change of policy to Part X.4.

Subclause 57(2)

ITA

204.9(4) and (5)

Designation of New Beneficiaries

Paragraph 204.9(4)(a) of the existing Act contains an anti-avoidance rule that applies when a beneficiary under an RESP is replaced by another. The rule provides that the contributions previously made into the plan for the former beneficiary are considered to have been made for the new beneficiary. This is intended to ensure that the contribution limits are not multiplied by having a number of plans for different beneficiaries and changing the beneficiary designation just prior to terminating the plans. This existing rule, subject to the amendment described below and changes made for technical clarity, has been maintained under amended subsection 204.9(4).

Amended subsection 204.9(4) also, after 1996, allows an individual under 21 years of age to replace a brother or sister as a beneficiary under an RESP, without penalty tax implications. The contributions that were previously made in respect of the former beneficiary are not taken into account in determining RESP overcontributions or unused limits with regard to the new beneficiary.

To ensure that amended subsection 204.9(4) does not result in excessive penalty tax, new paragraph 204.9(4)(c) deems the contributions that were made in respect of the former beneficiary to have been withdrawn at the time of the replacement. Therefore, to the extent that overcontributions were previously made in respect of the former beneficiary, the overcontributions are only taken into account in computing Part X.4 tax in respect of the new beneficiary.

These amendments apply to replacements of beneficiaries that occur after 1996.

Transfers between RESPs

The existing rules with respect to RESP transfers in paragraph 146.1(6.1)(a) and 204.9(4)(b) have been replaced by new subsection 204.9(5).

Subsection 204.9(5) continues, in modified form, the mechanism for allowing property to be transferred from one RESP to another.

Where there has been such a transfer, under paragraph 204.9(5)(a) the amount transferred is deemed not to have been contributed into the transferee plan except as provided by paragraph 204.9(5)(b) and (c).

Paragraph 204.9(5)(c) ensures that, in most situations, a transfer from one RESP to another will not have any adverse tax consequences.

Transfers after 1996 can be made without resulting in any penalty tax under Part X.4 in two cases:

- there is a common beneficiary under the transferor plan and the transferee plan; or
- a beneficiary under the transferor plan is a sibling of a beneficiary under the transferee plan, provided that the beneficiary under the transferee plan is under 21 years of age.

Except for the two cases described above, transfers can result in penalty tax because of the anti-avoidance rule in paragraph 204.9(5)(b). This rule, which is similar to the rule in paragraph 204.9(4)(a), is intended to ensure that RESP transfers are not used as a means of multiplying a beneficiary's contribution limits. It provides that the contributions that were previously made by a subscriber into the transferor plan are deemed to have been made by the subscriber in respect of each of the beneficiaries under the transferee plan at the time those earlier contributions were made. In other words, the contribution history in respect of each beneficiary under the transferor plan is, in effect, assumed by each beneficiary under the transferee plan.

In the two cases described above, paragraph 204.9(5)(d) provides that the amount transferred is deemed not to have been withdrawn from the transferor plan. This rule is intended to ensure that a distribution from an RESP by way of transfer to another RESP does not in itself reduce Part X.4 tax.

In addition, paragraph 204.9(5)(e) provides that each subscriber under the transferor plan is deemed to be a subscriber under the transferee plan. This rule is intended to prevent a subscriber from transferring overcontributions to an RESP that has a different subscriber as a means of circumventing Part X.4 tax. It ensures that the subscriber

under the transferor plan remains liable for any Part X.4 tax resulting from the overcontributions.

New subsection 204.9(5) applies to transfers that occur after 1996.

Clause 58

Tax Payable by Subscribers

ITA

204.91

Calculation of Part X.4 Tax

Under the existing rules in section 204.91 of the Act, the penalty tax is equal to 1 per cent per month on the subscriber's share of the excess amount in respect of a beneficiary to the extent that the share has not been withdrawn.

The method for determining the amount of tax payable in respect of RESP overcontributions is being modified for technical clarity. Under new subsection 204.91(1), the tax is equal to 1 per cent of the amount by which the total of all of the subscriber's gross cumulative excesses (determined at the end of the month) in respect of beneficiaries exceeds the total of such excesses that have been withdrawn from RESPs.

New subsection 204.91(1) applies in computing tax under Part X.4 for months after 1996.

Special Rules

New subsection 204.91(2) of the Act allows Revenue Canada to waive Part X.4 tax where it is just and equitable to do so, having regard to all factors (including a number of factors specifically mentioned in the subsection). This amendment applies from the time of the introduction of Part X.4 (after January 1990).

New subsection 204.91(3) applies where a spouse or former spouse of a subscriber under an RESP has, because of a division of property on marriage breakdown, acquired the subscriber's rights under the plan.

In such a case, for the purpose of determining Part X.4 tax for months after 1997 that are after the acquisition of such rights, all previous contributions made into the plan by the former subscriber are deemed to have been made by the subscriber's spouse or former spouse. The purpose of this rule is to ensure that the spouse who has control over the operation of an RESP is liable for Part X.4 tax in respect of the RESP arising after marriage breakdown.

New subsection 204.91(4) ensures that, after the death of a subscriber of an RESP, the estate of the subscriber becomes liable for any Part X.4 tax in respect of the RESP for months after the death. New subsection 204.91(4) applies for the purpose of determining Part X.4 tax for months after 1997.

Clause 59

Special Tax on Income Payments from Registered Education Savings Plans

ITA
Part X.5
204.94

New Part X.5 of the Act sets out a special 20-per-cent tax on "accumulated income payments" from RESPs. This tax can generally be reduced to the extent that the recipient of such a payment makes deductible RRSP contributions under subsection 146(5) or (5.1) of the Act for the year in which the payment is made. The purpose of this tax is to discourage the use of RESPs strictly for their tax deferral advantages, particularly in regard to individuals who already maximize the tax advantages for retirement savings that are associated with RRSPs.

Subsection 204.94(1) of the Act provides that the meanings given to terms in subsection 146.1(1) also apply for the purposes of new Part X.5. The key definition is "accumulated income payment", which is essentially any distribution from an RESP that is not an educational assistance payment or a refund of payments. The definition "subscriber", which is modified for the purposes of Part X.5 to exclude persons who are subscribers by virtue of

paragraph (c) of that definition, is also relevant. For further details on the definitions, see the commentary on amended section 146.1.

The base on which the 20-per-cent Part X.5 tax is charged for a person under subsection 204.94(2) is the sum of two amounts (designated as variables A and B), minus a third amount (designated as variable C).

Variable A is the total of all accumulated income payments made from an RESP under which the person is a subscriber (or, where there is no subscriber, a surviving spouse of a deceased subscriber), to the extent that the payments are included in computing the person's income for the year. For this purpose, subsection 204.94(1) provides that a "subscriber" does not include a person who becomes a subscriber under the plan after the death of a subscriber.

Variable B is the total of all accumulated income payments made from an RESP or a revoked plan, to the extent that the payments are included in computing the person's income for the year and are not included in the value of A.

Variable C is an offset. The maximum offset is equal to the lesser of the value of A and the amounts deducted under subsections 146(5) and (5.1) in computing the taxpayer's income for the year. In addition, there is a \$40,000 lifetime limit on the RRSP deductions that can be used to reduce the Part X.5 tax.

The effect of the formula is that only those individuals who received accumulated income payments that are included in the value of A can transfer the payments to an RRSP to minimize Part X.5 tax. This means that the RRSP transfer option is available only to:

- an original subscriber under the plan;
- a subscriber under the plan who is a spouse or former spouse of a former subscriber under the plan and who acquired the former subscriber's rights as a consequence of marriage breakdown; and
- a spouse or former spouse of a deceased subscriber, but only where there is no subscriber under the plan.

The example below illustrates the computation of Part X.5 tax.

EXAMPLE

The RESP under which Marie is an original subscriber permits accumulated income payments. Marie receives \$14,000 of such payments in January 1999, of which \$5,000 is directly transferred to an RRSP under which Marie is the annuitant. Marie claims a \$4,000 RRSP deduction under subsection 146(5) for the 1998 taxation year and a \$1,000 deduction for the 1999 taxation year.

Results:

- 1. The value of A is \$14,000. The value of C is \$1,000 (i.e., the \$4,000 deduction claimed for 1998 is irrelevant).*
- 2. Consequently, the tax under Part X.5 is \$2,600 ($20\% \times (14,000 - 1,000)$).*
- 3. In order to have reduced Part X.5 tax further, Marie should have refrained from deducting RRSP contributions for the 1998 taxation year.*

Subsection 204.94(3) provides that a person liable for Part X.5 tax must file a return on or before the person's tax return filing-due date for the year. Unpaid Part X.5 tax for a year must be remitted to Revenue Canada by that date. Under subsection 204.94(4), administrative rules in Part I of the Act also apply for the purposes of Part X.5.

These amendments apply to 1998 and subsequent taxation years.

Clauses 60 and 61

Tax on Qualifying Environmental Trusts

ITA

Part XII.4

211.6

Part XII.4 of the Act imposes a special tax on mining reclamation trusts, as defined under subsection 248(1).

Part XII.4 is amended so that each reference to a "mining reclamation trust" is replaced by a broader reference to a "qualifying environmental trust". This amendment is in consequence of the extension of the rules for mining reclamation trusts reflected by the new definition "qualifying environmental trust" in subsection 248(1). For more details, see the commentary on that definition.

Part XII.4 is also amended so that the deadlines referred to in subsection 211.6(3) and (4) of the Act for filing the Part XII.4 tax return for a taxation year and paying Part XII.4 tax for the year are now referred to as the trust's "filing-due date" and "balance-due day" for the year, respectively. (Each such deadline for a taxation year is 90 days after the end of the year.) This amendment does not reflect any change in policy.

These amendments apply to the 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 62

Non-Resident Withholding Tax

ITA

212(1)(r)

Paragraph 212(1)(r) of the Act provides for non-resident withholding tax under Part XIII of the Act with respect to payments received from registered education savings plan, to the extent that those payments are required to be included in computing income under section 146.1 of the Act.

Paragraph 212(1)(r) is amended to ensure that amounts included in computing the non-resident person's taxable income or taxable income earned in Canada are not subject to Part XIII withholding tax.

This amendment applies to amounts paid or credited after February 28, 1979.

Clause 63

Non-Residents – Deemed Payments

ITA

214(3)(j)

Under subsection 214(3) of the Act, certain amounts that would, if a non-resident person were resident in Canada, be required to be included in the person's income are treated, for the purpose of the non-resident withholding tax, as payments to the person.

Paragraph 214(3)(j) applies with respect to amounts that are required to be included in computing income of a subscriber under a registered education savings plan by virtue of subsection 146.1(14).

Paragraph 214(3)(j) is being repealed, effective after 1997, consequential on the repeal of subsection 146.1(14).

Clause 64

CPP/QPP Lump Sum Payments

ITA

217(3)(b)(ii)

Part XIII of the Act imposes a 25-per-cent tax on certain Canadian-source amounts paid to a person not resident in Canada, including payments from pension and other deferred income plans. Section 217 provides an election whereby such payments are not taxed at the 25-per-cent rate under Part XIII but rather at the ordinary rates under Part I of the Act. This amendment provides that, in computing a person's income for the purpose of this election, the full amount of any CPP/QPP lump sum payment is to be included, i.e., that the special exclusion and tax calculation provided for such payments received by Canadian residents do not apply.

This amendment applies to 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 65**Taxpayer Information**

ITA

241(3.2)

Section 241 of the Act prohibits the communication or use by government officials of information obtained in administering the income tax system, except as authorized by that section. New subsection 241(3.2) permits Revenue Canada to release specified information relating to a charity that was at any time registered under the Act. This information includes the charity's governing documents, the names of its directors and other information relating to the registration of the charity and, if applicable, the revocation of its registration. This information may be released following enactment of this amendment.

Clause 66**Definitions**

ITA

248(1)

Subsection 248(1) of the Act defines a number of terms that apply for purposes of the Act.

"cost amount"

Subsection 248(1) of the Act defines "cost amount". The cost amount of an interest of a beneficiary under a mining reclamation trust is considered to be nil.

The definition is amended so that the reference to a "mining reclamation trust" is replaced by a broader reference to a "qualifying environmental trust". This amendment is in consequence of the extension of the rules for mining reclamation trusts reflected by the new definition "qualifying environmental trust" in this subsection. For more details, see the commentary on that definition.

This amendment applies after 1995.

"private foundation"

"public foundation"

The definitions of "private foundation" and "public foundation", which relate to the rules in the Act on charitable organizations, are provided in subsection 149.1(1). Subsection 248(1) is amended to incorporate those definitions for all purposes of the Act. These amendments apply after 1996.

"qualifying environmental trust"

"mining reclamation trust"

Subsection 248(1) of the Act defines the expression "mining reclamation trust". It is generally a trust maintained for the sole purpose of funding the reclamation of a mine in the province in which the trust is resident. The expression is used in paragraphs 12(1)(z.1) and (z.2), 20(1)(ss) and (tt) and 75(3)(c.1), sections 107.3 and 127.41, Part XII.4 and subsection 250(7), all of which affect the taxation of mining reclamation trusts and their beneficiaries.

The definition "mining reclamation trust" is being repealed, with effect after 1997. All "mining reclamation trusts" will now instead become "qualifying environmental trusts". The existing rules for mining reclamation trusts now apply to qualifying environmental trusts.

The sole purpose of a "qualifying environmental trust" must now be for funding the reclamation of a site in Canada that had been used primarily for, or for any combination of, the operation of a mine, the extraction of clay, peat, sand, shale or aggregates (including dimension stone and gravel) or the deposit of waste. There is no longer any restriction in the definition (as there was under paragraph (b) of the definition "mining reclamation trust") that would prevent such funding being used in connection with the reclamation of a clay pit, peat deposit, gravel pit, peat bog, sand pit or stone quarry.

The broader aspects of the definition "qualifying environmental trust" (as compared with the definition "mining reclamation trust") apply to

a trust where the first contribution to the trust was made after 1995, no distributions from the trust were made before February 19, 1997 and no interest in the trust was disposed of before February 19, 1997. However, a trust may elect under paragraph (i) of the definition never to have been a "qualifying environmental trust" if, before 1998 or April of the year following the year in which the first contribution to the trust was made, the trust files an election to this effect with Revenue Canada. Such an election also results in a trust losing any status that it might otherwise have as a mining reclamation trust. Revenue Canada has authority to reassess any taxpayer before 2000 in order to give effect to this election.

The introduction of the definition "qualifying environmental trust" applies after 1991, although the broader aspects of the definition will result in a deduction only for taxation years that end after February 18, 1997. For further detail, see the commentary on amended paragraph 20(1)(ss) of the Act under which the deduction for contributions to qualifying environmental trusts is provided.

"total pension adjustment reversal"

Subsection 248(1) of the Act is amended to add, after 1996, the definition "total pension adjustment reversal". This expression is defined to have the meaning assigned by regulation. (See the commentary on the amendments to the definition "RRSP deduction limit" in subsection 146(1) of the Act for further information.)

Clause 67

Residence of a Qualifying Environmental Trust

ITA
250(7)

Subsection 250(7) of the Act applies for the purposes of determining the province in which certain trusts reside. It applies where a trust resident in Canada would be a "mining reclamation trust", as defined by subsection 248(1), if it were resident in the province in which the mine to which the trust relates is situated. Where this is the case, the trust is considered to be resident in that province and not in any other province.

Subsection 250(7) is amended so that the reference to a "mining reclamation trust" is replaced by a broader reference to a "qualifying environmental trust". Similarly, reference to a "mine" is replaced by a broader reference to a "site". These amendments are in consequence of the extension of the rules for mining reclamation trusts reflected by the new definition "qualifying environmental trust" in subsection 248(1). For more details, see the commentary on that definition.

This amendment applies after 1995.

DIVISION B

OTHER AMENDMENTS

Clause 68

Group Disability Benefits – Insolvent Insurer

ITA
6(17)

New subsection 6(17) of the Act defines certain expressions for the purposes of that subsection and new subsection 6(18) of the Act.

"disability policy"

A "disability policy" is a group disability insurance policy that provides periodic payments to individuals in respect of lost employment income.

"employer"

The meaning of the term "employer" is expanded to include a former employer of an individual.

"top-up disability payment"

A "top-up disability payment" is a payment which an employer makes because of the insolvency of an insurer, where the payment is one of the following types.

The first type of top-up payment is a payment to an insurer so that periodic payments under a disability policy are not reduced because of the insolvency, or are reduced by a lesser amount than would otherwise be the case. Payments of this type may be made to the insolvent insurer, or to another insurer that has assumed the obligations of the insolvent insurer under the policy.

The other type of top-up payment is a payment made by the employer directly to an individual to replace all or part of the periodic payments that, because of the insolvency, are no longer being made to the individual under a disability policy. There must be an arrangement which requires the individual to reimburse the employer to the extent that the individual later recovers the periodic payments that the employer's payments were intended to replace.

For the purpose of this definition, if a disability policy is replaced by another insurance policy, the new policy is considered to be the same policy as the disability policy.

ITA

6(18)

New subsection 6(18) contains rules that apply where an employer makes a top-up disability payment (as defined in subsection 6(17)) in respect of an individual.

Paragraph 6(18)(a) provides that a top-up disability payment is considered not to be a benefit for the purpose of paragraph 6(1)(a) of the Act. As a result, the payment is not included in the individual's income under that paragraph.

Paragraph 6(18)(b) provides that a top-up disability payment is considered not to be an employer contribution to the disability insurance plan of which the disability policy is or was a part. This provision applies for the purpose of paragraph 6(1)(f) of the Act, which includes periodic payments in an individual's income if they are received under a disability insurance plan to which the individual's employer has contributed. Thus, a top-up disability payment made in respect of a disability insurance plan that had been funded solely by employee contributions will not cause the benefits paid under the plan to become taxable.

Paragraph 6(18)(c) provides that a top-up disability payment made directly to an individual is considered to be an amount payable to the individual pursuant to the disability insurance plan. This provision, which applies for the purpose of paragraph 6(1)(f), is relevant where the employer contributed to the disability insurance plan.

Paragraphs 6(18)(a) and (c) result in the top-up payment being taxable under paragraph 6(1)(f), rather than paragraph 6(1)(a), thus enabling contributions made by the individual to be taken into account in determining the amount the individual is required to include in income in respect of the payment.

New subsections 6(17) and (18) apply to top-up disability payments that are made after August 10, 1994.

Clause 69

Income from Office or Employment – Deductions

ITA

8(1)

Subsection 8(1) of the Act specifies the amounts that a taxpayer may deduct in computing income from an office or employment.

Subclause 69(1)

ITA

8(1)(i)(vii)

Paragraph 8(1)(i) of the Act permits an employee to deduct certain dues and other expenses incurred by the employee in the performance of employment duties. The amendment to this paragraph allows an employee to deduct dues that the employee is required to pay to a professions board, such as *L'Office de professions du Québec*.

This amendment applies to the 1996 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 69(2)**Salary Reimbursement**

ITA

8(1)(n)

Paragraph 8(1)(n) of the Act provides a deduction to an individual who repays an amount received from an employer for a period throughout which the individual did not perform the duties of an office or employment. This paragraph is amended so that it does not apply where the individual makes a repayment under an arrangement described in subparagraph (b)(ii) of the definition of "top-up disability payment" in new subsection 6(17). A deduction in respect of such repayments is provided by new paragraph 8(1)(n.1). This amendment applies with respect to top-up disability payment arrangements that are entered into after August 10, 1994.

Subclause 69(3)**Reimbursement of Disability Payments**

ITA

8(1)(n.1)

New paragraph 8(1)(n.1) provides a deduction to an individual who reimburses a top-up disability payment.⁷ For purposes of this paragraph, a top-up disability payment (as defined in new subsection 6(17)) is a payment made to the individual by an employer or former employer to replace periodic disability payments that are not made to the individual because of the insolvency of an insurer, where the individual is required to reimburse the payment to the extent that he or she ultimately receives an amount from an insurer in respect of the disability payments.

The deduction under paragraph 8(1)(n.1) is limited to the amount included in the individual's income under paragraph 6(1)(f) in respect of the payment received from the insurer. In the case of a plan funded solely by employee contributions, the payment from the insurer will not be taxable, and so there will be no deduction for the reimbursement. If employer contributions have been made to the plan, the reimbursement payment will normally be fully deductible.

However, the deduction could be less than the amount of the reimbursement where the individual has contributed to the plan and these contributions reduce the amount of the payment from the insurer that is taxed.

The deduction under paragraph 8(1)(n.1) is available in the year in which the reimbursement payment is made, with one exception. Where the reimbursement payment is made within 60 days after the end of the year in which the individual receives the amount from the insurer, the payment is deductible in the year in which the amount is received rather than in the year in which the payment is made.

This amendment applies to reimbursement payments made after August 10, 1994.

Subclauses 69(4) and (5)

Dues not Deductible

ITA
8(5)

Subsection 8(5) of the Act denies an employee a deduction for annual dues when the dues have been in fact levied for certain purposes. The amendments to this subsection and paragraph 8(5)(c) are consequential to the amendment to paragraph 8(1)(i) which permits the deduction of dues required to be paid to a professional board. They also ensure the deductibility of such dues paid by an employee where they are not paid to the board itself, but rather to the professional organization of which the employee is a member.

These amendments apply to the 1996 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 70**Valuation of Inventory**

ITA

10

Section 10 of the Act sets out rules for the valuation of inventory for the purpose of computing income.

Subclause 70(1)

ITA

10(1), (1.01) and (1.1)

Subsection 10(1) of the Act is amended to provide that the inventory valuation methods it describes are available only for the purpose of computing income from businesses which are not adventures or concerns in the nature of trade. Former subsection 10(1) applied for the purpose of computing income from any business.

Subsection 10(1) is also amended to clarify that, in valuing property at the lower of cost and fair market value, the reference to cost is to the original cost of the property. Similarly, subsection 10(1) is amended to clarify that the reference therein to fair market value is to fair market value at the end of the taxation year. Businesses which have valued their inventory at an amount lower than either the original cost or the current fair market value will, therefore, be required to revalue the inventory at the lower of fair market value at the end of the taxation year and original cost.

New subsection 10(1.01) of the Act provides that property described in an inventory of a business that is an adventure or concern in the nature of trade shall be valued at its cost to the taxpayer.

Subsection 10(1.1) is amended consequential on the introduction of subsections 10(1.01) and (10) to clarify that the deemed cost provisions of subsection 10(1.1) apply to an adventure or concern in the nature trade as well as to a business carried on by the taxpayer.

These amendments apply to taxation years that end after December 20, 1995. In respect of adventures or concerns in the

nature of trade, these amendments also apply to taxation years that ended before December 21, 1995 with the following exceptions:

- (a) where the filing-due date of the taxpayer for the taxation year is after December 20, 1995; or
- (b) where the taxpayer claimed a loss for the year in respect of the property using the valuation method allowed under subsection 10(1) in an income tax return, a notice of objection or a notice of appeal, filed before December 21, 1995.

In addition, in respect of adventures or concerns in the nature of trade, these amendments apply to fiscal periods of a partnership that ended before December 21, 1995 with the following exceptions:

- (a) where the filing-due dates of all the members of the partnership for their taxation years which include the end of the partnership's fiscal period are after December 20, 1995; or
- (b) where the partnership has computed a loss for the fiscal period in respect of the property using the valuation method allowed under subsection 10(1), which computation is reflected in a tax return, a notice of objection or a notice of appeal filed by a member of the partnership before December 21, 1995.

Subclause 70(2)

Methods of Valuation to be the Same

ITA 10(2.1)

Subsection 10(2.1) is amended consequential on the introduction of new subsection (1.01) to specify that subsection (2.1) does not apply to property described in the inventory of a business that is an adventure or concern in the nature of trade.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after December 20, 1995. In respect of adventures or concerns in the nature of trade, this amendment also applies to taxation years that ended before December 21, 1995 with the following exceptions:

(a) where the filing-due date of the taxpayer for the taxation year is after December 20, 1995; or

(b) where the taxpayer claimed a loss for the year in respect of the property using the valuation method allowed under subsection 10(1) in an income tax return, a notice of objection or a notice of appeal, filed before December 21, 1995.

In addition, in respect of adventures or concerns in the nature of trade, this amendment applies to fiscal periods of a partnership that ended before December 21, 1995 with the following exceptions:

(a) where the filing-due dates of all the members of the partnership for their taxation years which include the end of the partnership's fiscal period are after December 20, 1995; or

(b) where the partnership has computed a loss for the fiscal period in respect of the property using the valuation method allowed under subsection 10(1), which computation is reflected in a tax return, a notice of objection or a notice of appeal filed by a member of the partnership before December 21, 1995.

Subclause 70(3)

ITA

10(9) to (11)

New subsection 10(9) of the Act provides a transitional rule in respect of property, described in an inventory of a business that is an adventure or concern in the nature of trade, that was "written-down" by a taxpayer under subsection 10(1) for a taxation year for which that valuation method was available. In those circumstances, the cost of the property to the taxpayer after that time is deemed to be the value last assigned by the taxpayer under subsection 10(1). For taxation years to which these amendments apply, the taxpayer may then add any amounts includible under subsection (1.1).

New subsection 10(10) of the Act provides that, at the end of a corporation's last taxation year before a change in control, property described in an inventory of a business that is an adventure or concern in the nature of trade shall be valued at the lower of its original cost and its fair market value at the end of that year. After

that time, that lower amount is deemed to be the cost at which the property was acquired by the taxpayer.

New subsection 10(11) deems a corporation's business that is an adventure or concern in the nature of trade to be a business carried on by the taxpayer for the purposes of the "stop-loss" rules in subsections 88(1.1) and 111(5). This will cause losses in this situation to be subject to the usual restrictions in place for the recognition of non-capital losses after an acquisition of control.

These amendments apply to taxation years that end after December 20, 1995. In respect of adventures or concerns in the nature of trade, these amendments also apply to taxation years that ended before December 21, 1995 with the following exceptions:

- (a) where the filing-due date of the taxpayer for the taxation year is after December 20, 1995; or

- (b) where the taxpayer claimed a loss for the year in respect of the property using the valuation method allowed under subsection 10(1) in an income tax return, a notice of objection or a notice of appeal, filed before December 21, 1995.

In addition, in respect of adventures or concerns in the nature of trade, these amendments apply to fiscal periods of a partnership that ended before December 21, 1995 with the following exceptions:

- (a) where the filing-due dates of all the members of the partnership for their taxation years which include the end of the partnership's fiscal period are after December 20, 1995; or

- (b) where the partnership has computed a loss for the fiscal period in respect of the property using the valuation method allowed under subsection 10(1), which computation is reflected in a tax return, a notice of objection or a notice of appeal filed by a member of the partnership before December 21, 1995.

Clause 71**Income from Business or Property – Inclusions**

ITA

12

Section 12 of the Act provides for the inclusion of various amounts in computing the income of a taxpayer for a taxation year from a business or property.

Subclause 71(1)**Interest**

ITA

12(1)(c)

Paragraph 12(1)(c) of the Act requires that any interest received or receivable by a taxpayer in a taxation year be included in computing the taxpayer's income for the year. This paragraph is amended as a consequence of the introduction of new subsection 12(4.1) of the Act. New subsection 12(4.1) provides that paragraph 12(1)(c) and subsections 12(3) and (4) do not apply to require the inclusion in income of interest on certain impaired loans. New paragraph 12(1)(c), which will be subject to subsection 12(3) and new subsection 12(4.1), applies to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have the reserve provisions in new paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act apply to those earlier years.

Subclause 71(2)**Proceeds of Disposition of Right to Receive Production**

ITA

12(1)(g.1)

Proposed paragraph 12(1)(g.1) of the Act requires proceeds of disposition of a right to receive production to which new subsection 18.1(6) of the Act applies to be included in calculating the

income of the vendor. This amendment applies to dispositions that occur after November 17, 1996.

Subclause 71(3)

Inducement, Reimbursement, etc.

ITA

12(1)(x)

Paragraph 12(1)(x) provides that certain inducements, reimbursements, contributions, allowances and assistance received by a taxpayer in the course of earning income from a business or property will be included in income to the extent that they have not otherwise reduced the cost of a property or the amount of an outlay or expense. This amendment adds a reference to amounts refunded as well as the condition that the amount received will only be included in income to the extent that it has not resulted in an assessment that reflected a reduction in the cost of a property or the amount of an outlay or expense. This amendment applies to amounts received after 1990.

Subclause 71(4)

Interest Income

ITA

12(3),(4),(4.1)

Subsection 12(3) of the Act provides that, notwithstanding paragraph 12(1)(c) of the Act, corporations, partnerships and certain trusts must use the accrual method for computing interest income in respect of certain debt obligations. This subsection is amended as a consequence of the introduction of proposed new subsection 12(4.1) of the Act. New subsection 12(4.1) provides that paragraph 12(1)(c) and subsections 12(3) and (4) do not apply to require the inclusion in income of interest on certain impaired loans. New subsection 12(3), which will be subject to new subsection 12(4.1), applies to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have the reserve provisions in new paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act apply to those earlier years.

Subsection 12(4) of the Act requires that a taxpayer (other than one to which subsection 12(3) applies) who holds an interest in an investment contract on the anniversary day of the contract to include in income for the taxation year that includes that day an amount as interest in respect of the contract. This subsection is amended as a consequence of the introduction of new subsection 12(4.1).

Subsection 12(4) will be subject to new subsection 12(4.1).

Subsection 12(4.1) provides that paragraph 12(1)(c) and subsections 12(3) and (4) do not apply to require the inclusion in income of interest on certain impaired loans. New subsection 12(4) applies to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have the reserve provisions in new paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act apply to those earlier years.

New subsection 12(4.1) of the Act provides that new paragraph 12(1)(c) and new subsections 12(3) and (4) of the Act do not apply to a taxpayer in respect of a debt obligation for that portion of a taxpayer's taxation year in which the obligation is impaired and an amount in respect thereof is deductible by the taxpayer under new subparagraph 20(1)(l)(ii) of the Act for the year. Interest is therefore not to be included in a taxpayer's income under new paragraph 12(1)(c) and new subsections 12(3) and (4) for that portion of the taxation year in which the debt obligation is impaired. This is consistent with the new accounting rules which provide that recognition of interest income in accordance with the terms of the original debt obligation ceases on the impairment of the obligation. New subsection 12(4.1) applies to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have the reserve provisions in new paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act apply to those earlier years.

Clause 72**Accrual Taxation of Life Insurance Policies - Riders**

ITA

12.2(10)

Subsection 12.2(10) of the existing Act provides that a rider added after 1989 to a life insurance policy last acquired by a taxpayer before 1990 is to be treated as a separate policy. This rule prevents a taxpayer from obtaining life insurance coverage after 1989 that is not subject to annual accrual reporting under subsection 12.2(1) by adding additional coverage to an existing policy.

Subsection 12.2(10) is amended so that it does not apply to a rider added after 1989 to an exempt policy last acquired after December 1, 1982. The exclusion makes the treatment of such riders consistent with the treatment of riders added to exempt policies acquired after 1989. In both cases, if the rider causes the exempt policy to lose its exempt status, the policy will become subject to annual accrual reporting.

Clause 73**Recaptured Depreciation**

ITA

13

Section 13 of the Act provides rules relating to depreciable property. Generally, these rules apply for the purposes of sections 13 and 20 of the Act and the capital cost allowance regulations.

Subclause 73(1)

ITA
13(4)

Subsection 13(4) of the Act allows a taxpayer who incurs recapture on the disposition of certain property to defer tax on the recapture to the extent that the taxpayer reinvests the proceeds of disposition in a replacement property within a certain period of time.

This amendment to subsection 13(4) is consequential on the amendment of subsection 13(4.1) of the Act. Generally, the condition in subsection 13(4) requiring a taxpayer to acquire a property as a replacement for the taxpayer's former property is being moved to subsection 13(4.1). For additional details, see the commentary on the amendment to subsection 13(4.1).

This amendment applies to dispositions of former properties occurring after the 1993 taxation year.

Subclause 73(2)

ITA
13(4.1)

Subsection 13(4.1) of the Act describes the conditions under which a depreciable property acquired by a taxpayer will be a replacement property for the purposes of subsection 13(4) of the Act.

Subsection 13(4.1) is amended in two ways. First, new paragraph 13(4.1)(a) provides that a particular depreciable property of a prescribed class of a taxpayer will not be considered to be a replacement property unless it is reasonable to conclude that the property was acquired by the taxpayer to replace the former property.

Second, former paragraph 13(4.1)(a), which becomes new paragraph 13(4.1)(a.1), is clarified to refer to the acquired property being "used by the taxpayer or a person related to the taxpayer" for the same or a similar use to which the taxpayer or a person related to the taxpayer put the former property. A property acquired by a taxpayer is not necessarily denied replacement property treatment simply because it is used by a related person rather than by the

taxpayer. This may occur, for example, where a taxpayer rents the acquired property to a related person who uses it in the same or similar business. For additional details, see the commentary on the amendments to subsections 14(6) and (7) and subsections 44(1) and (5) of the Act.

These amendments apply to dispositions of former properties occurring after the 1993 taxation year.

Subclause 73(3)

ITA

13(7)(f)

Subsection 13(7) of the Act sets out rules relating to the capital cost of depreciable property. Paragraph 13(7)(f) applies where a corporation is treated as having disposed of and reacquired depreciable property either under paragraph 111(4)(e) (on an acquisition of control of the corporation) or paragraph 149(10)(b) of the Act (where the corporation becomes or ceases to be exempt from tax under Part I of the Act). Paragraph 13(7)(f) limits any resulting increase in the capital cost of the property to $\frac{3}{4}$ of the amount by which the corporation's deemed proceeds of disposition exceed the property's capital cost at the time of the disposition.

As part of a series of amendments relating to the tax treatment of corporations whose tax status changes, the reference in subsection 13(7) to paragraph 149(10)(b) is deleted after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 73(4)

Disposition of Building

ITA

13(21.1)

Subsection 13(21.1) of the Act sets out rules that in certain cases adjust the proceeds of disposition of land and a building. The subsection is amended to clarify that it operates before new subsection 13(21.2), which is another rule that may affect a taxpayer's proceeds of disposition of a building. Specifically, in

measuring a taxpayer's proceeds of disposition of a building of a prescribed class in order to decide whether subsection 13(21.1) applies, those proceeds are to be determined without reference to subsection 13(21.2), as well as without reference to 13(21.1) itself. Similarly, subsection 13(21.2) is to be ignored in computing the proceeds of disposition of the building for the purposes of the adjustments in paragraphs 13(21.1)(a) and (b).

It is important to note that these changes simply establish an ordering as between subsections 13(21.1) and (21.2); they do not bar 13(21.2) from applying at all. If, after subsection 13(21.1) has been applied to a disposition, there would otherwise remain a terminal loss, and the disposition is one to which subsection 13(21.2) applies, that provision may defer the disposing taxpayer's recognition of the remaining loss.

This amendment applies to dispositions after April 26, 1995, with certain exceptions. These exceptions are described in the notes to new subsection 13(21.2).

Losses on Certain Transfers

ITA

13(21.2)

New subsection 13(21.2) of the Act applies on the transfer, by a corporation, trust or partnership, of a depreciable property whose tax cost is greater than the amount that would otherwise be the transferor's proceeds from the transfer. Where these conditions exist, and the transferor or a person "affiliated" with the transferor holds or has a right to acquire the property 30 days after the disposition, no loss may be recognized on the transfer. Instead, such a loss is deferred until the earliest of the following events:

- a subsequent disposition of the property to a person that is neither the transferor nor a person affiliated with the transferor (provided that neither the transferor nor an affiliated person acquires or has a right to acquire the property within 30 days after that later disposition);
- a change in the property's use from an income-earning to a non-income-earning purpose;

- a "deemed disposition" of the property under section 128.1 (change of residence) or subsection 149(10) (change of taxable status);
- where the transferor is a corporation, an acquisition of control of the transferor; or
- where the transferor is a corporation, a winding-up of the transferor (other than a winding-up under subsection 88(1) of the Act).

The tax cost of a depreciable property is, for the purposes of this rule, treated as being the proportion of the undepreciated capital cost of the class to which the property belongs that the value of that property is of the value of all properties in the class. The amount by which that tax cost exceeds the amount that would otherwise be the transferor's proceeds of disposition of the transferred property's value is treated as the capital cost of a property, of the same class as that from which the property came, acquired by the transferor before the taxation year in which the transfer took place. This new property will be treated as being owned by the transferor until the earliest of the events described above. As a result, the transferor will be permitted to claim capital cost allowance (CCA) after the transfer on the difference between the transferred property's tax cost and the transferor's proceeds of disposition otherwise determined. As well, any portion of the difference not claimed as CCA may be eligible for recognition as a terminal loss when any of the events described above occurs, provided the transferor has no other properties of the same class.

New subsection 13(21.2) replaces subsection 85(5.1) of the Act, which denied the recognition of a loss on the transfer of a depreciable property to a corporation controlled by the transferor or that controlled the transferor. However, new subsection 13(21.2) differs from subsection 85(5.1) in two material respects. First, new subsection 13(21.2) does not apply to transfers by individuals other than trusts, but can, as a result of its adoption of the definition of "affiliated persons" in new section 251.1 of the Act (see the commentary on that section for a fuller description), apply to depreciable property transfers to individuals, corporations and partnerships in cases where subsection 85(4) would not have applied. Second, the new rule does not pass the excess of tax cost over a property's value on to the transferee but instead retains it in the

transferor's hands to be amortized and (to the extent of any unamortized portion) deducted as a terminal loss.

As noted, new subsection 13(21.2) applies to transferors that are partnerships. New paragraph 13(21.2)(f) clarifies the result where a transferor partnership ceases to exist after a disposition but before any of the events that put an end to its deemed ownership of the notional depreciable property have occurred. Where a partnership would otherwise cease to exist after a disposition to which new subsection 13(21.2) applies, the partnership is treated as not having ceased to exist, and each person who was a member of the partnership before it would otherwise cease to exist is treated as having remained a member of the partnership. This deemed continuation of the partnership (and of the membership of each partner) continues until the time that is immediately after the first of the events that end the partnership's deemed ownership of the notional depreciable property.

Finally, new subsection 13(21.2) provides, in paragraph (g), that the "subsequent owner" of the transferred property – that is, the transferor or a person affiliated with the transferor – is treated for the purposes of measuring any potential recapture with respect to the transferred property as having the same capital cost of the property as the it had to the transferor, and as having deducted as capital cost allowance in previous years the amount by which the capital cost of the transferred property exceeds the property's value at the time of disposition.

New subsection 13(21.2) applies to dispositions of property that take place after April 26, 1995, with three exceptions. The first two of these are found in clause 247, and generally exclude transactions in progress before April 27, 1995. Readers may refer to the notes to clause 247 for more detail.

The third exception is that where a property is disposed of after April 26, 1995, and before June 20, 1996 the transferor may elect to treat the notional depreciable property created on the transfer as a property of a separate class that is identical to the class of the property disposed of. This election, which preserves the effect of the 1995 draft version of subsection 13(21.2), must be made in writing before the end of the third month after the month in which this Act is assented to.

Subclause 73(5)

Acquisition of Control

ITA

13(24) and (25)

Subsection 13(24) of the Act applies where a corporation or a partnership of which a corporation is a majority interest partner has acquired a depreciable property within the 12-month period ending immediately before control of the corporation is acquired, and the property was not used or acquired for use in a business carried on before that period. Under this rule, the capital cost of the property will not be included in computing undepreciated capital cost after the acquisition of control and, for the purposes of the investment tax credit and refundable investment tax credit, the property will not be considered to have been acquired until after the acquisition of control.

This subsection is amended as a consequence of the introduction of the concept of "affiliated persons" in new section 251.1 of the Act. Subsection 13(24) formerly contained an exception from its application where the property in question was owned during the 12-month period described above by the corporation whose control was acquired by a partnership, of which the corporation was a majority interest partner, or by a person or persons related to the corporation. As amended, this exception will apply where the property was owned by a person that was affiliated with the corporation, within the meaning that would be assigned by new section 251.1 if that section were read without reference to the extended definition of "controlled" in subsection 251.1(2).

Amended subsection 13(24) of the Act applies to acquisitions of control that occur after April 26, 1995.

Early Change of Control

Where a corporation referred to in subsection 13(24) of the Act was formed shortly before it underwent an acquisition of control, the exception provided in that subsection for transfers among related persons may not apply. Specifically, the acquired property will not be able to meet the test of having been owned by the corporation or by a related person throughout the period that starts immediately before the twelve month period before the acquisition of control and that ends when the corporation acquires the property.

Subsection 13(25) of the Act is a rule that ensures the appropriate result under subsection 13(24) in such a case. Subsection 13(25) treats a newly-formed corporation as having been in existence from the time immediately before the twelve month period to the time immediately after it was formed, and as having been related during that time to the persons to whom it was related from its formation until the acquisition of control.

Subsection 13(25) is amended, as a consequence of the amendment of subsection 13(24), to use the new test of affiliation rather than the test of being related. This amendment applies to acquisitions of control that occur after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 73(6)

Subsection 13(27) of the Act, in conjunction with subsections 13(29) to (32) of the Act establishes the time at which property (other than a building) is considered to have become available for use by a taxpayer for the purposes of determining, under subsection 13(26) of the Act, the taxation year in which capital cost allowance may first be claimed.

Paragraph 13(27)(d) of the Act is amended to clarify the circumstances in which property which is capable of producing a commercially saleable product or service is considered to be first

available for use. Such property must be delivered (or where not of a type generally considered to be deliverable – for example, self-constructed property – made available) to the taxpayer or to some other person who will use the property for the benefit of the taxpayer. Further, the property must be capable, either alone or in combination with other property in the possession of the person to whom the property is delivered, of being used, by or for the benefit of the taxpayer or the other person, to produce a commercially saleable product or to perform a commercially saleable service.

This amendment applies to property acquired after 1989.

Clause 74

Eligible Capital Property

ITA

14

Section 14 of the Act provides rules concerning the tax treatment of expenditures and receipts of a taxpayer in respect of eligible capital properties. These rules operate on a "pooling basis". Annual deductions, which are calculated as a percentage of this pool, may be claimed under paragraph 20(1)(b).

Subclause 74(1)

ITA

14(1)(a)(v)

Paragraph 14(1)(a)(v) of the Act includes in the business income of a taxpayer what could be considered to be the taxable portion of gains arising on the disposition of eligible capital property in the year. The postamble to that paragraph also provides that, for the purposes of section 110.6 and paragraph 3(b) of the Act as it applies for that section, the portion of those gains attributable to dispositions of qualified farm properties will be considered to be a taxable capital gain of the taxpayer from the disposition in the year of qualified farm property. Paragraph 14(1)(a)(v) is amended, applicable to fiscal periods ending after February 22, 1994, otherwise than solely because of an election under subsection 25(1) of the Act, to eliminate the

postamble of the provision as a consequence of the introduction of new subsection 14(1.1) of the Act.

Subclause 74(2)

Deemed Taxable Capital Gain

ITA

14(1.1)

New subsection 14(1.1) of the Act, which applies for fiscal periods ending after February 22, 1994, otherwise than solely because of an election under subsection 25(1) of the Act, will treat, for the purposes of section 110.6 and paragraph 3(b) of the Act as it applies for the purposes of that section, business income of a taxpayer for a year arising under paragraph 14(1)(a)(v) of the Act in respect of the sale of eligible capital property as a taxable capital gain from a disposition in the year of qualified farm property to the extent of the lesser of two amounts. The first amount is the amount included in the taxpayer's business income for the year under paragraph 14(1)(a)(v). The second amount is the excess of the taxable amount of the taxpayer's cumulative net gains from the disposition in the year or a preceding taxation year commencing after 1987 of qualified farm property that is eligible capital property in respect of the business over the amount of such taxable net gains that have already received the taxable capital gains treatment in previous years either under this new subsection or paragraph 14(1)(a) of the Act as it read in respect of fiscal periods ending before February 23, 1994. Net gains are measured as the excess of proceeds from such dispositions over the total of the costs of the properties disposed of and selling costs associated with such dispositions. Such taxable capital gains from the disposition of qualified farm property arising under new subsection 14(1.1) will be amounts in respect of which a taxpayer may be eligible to claim the capital gains deduction under subsection 110.6(2) of the Act.

Subclause 74(3)**Exchange of Property**

ITA
14(6)

Subsection 14(6) of the Act provides a replacement property rule for eligible capital property. Under this rule, the recognition of a negative balance in the cumulative eligible capital account of a taxpayer at the end of a taxation year, arising as a consequence of a disposition, may be deferred where the taxpayer acquires a replacement eligible capital property before the end of the taxation year following the year of disposition.

This amendment to subsection 14(6) is consequential on the amendment of subsection 14(7) of the Act. Generally, the condition in subsection 14(6) requiring a taxpayer to acquire a property as a replacement for the taxpayer's former property is transferred to subsection 14(7). For additional details see the commentary on the amendments to that subsection.

This amendment applies to dispositions of former properties occurring after the 1993 taxation year.

Subclause 74(4)

ITA
14(7)

Subsection 14(7) of the Act describes the conditions under which an eligible capital property acquired by a taxpayer will be a replacement property for the purposes of subsection 14(6) of the Act.

Subsection 14(7) is amended in two ways. First, new paragraph 14(7)(a) of the Act provides that a particular eligible capital property of a taxpayer will not be considered to be a replacement property unless it is reasonable to conclude that the property was acquired by the taxpayer to replace the former property. Second, former paragraph 14(7)(a) becomes new paragraph 14(7)(a.1) of the Act. For additional details see the commentary on

the amendments to subsections 13(4) and (4.1) and 44(1) and (5) of the Act.

This amendment applies to dispositions of former properties occurring after the 1993 taxation year.

Subclause 74(5)

Loss on Certain Transfers

ITA

14(12) and (13)

New subsection 14(12) of the Act applies where a corporation, trust or partnership has disposed of eligible capital property and would, but for this new rule, have been entitled as a consequence of the disposition to claim a deduction under subsection 24(1) of the Act for any undeducted amounts remaining in its cumulative eligible capital pool in respect of that business. (In general terms, subsection 24(1) would ordinarily permit such a deduction where the taxpayer has ceased to carry on the business and no longer owns any eligible capital property of value with respect to that business.) Where (1) these conditions exist, (2) the transferor or a person "affiliated" with the transferor acquires an identical property or the transferred property itself (either of which is termed the "substituted property") within the period beginning 30 days before and ending 30 days after the disposition, and (3) the transferor or an affiliated person owns the property at the end of that period, no deduction may be recognized on the transfer. Instead, such a deduction is deferred until the earliest of the following events:

- a subsequent disposition of the property to a person that is neither the transferor nor a person affiliated with the transferor (provided that for 30 days after that subsequent disposition neither the transferor nor an affiliated person owns either the substituted property or an identical property acquired after the beginning of the period described above);
- a change whereby the property no longer constitutes eligible capital property of a business of the transferor or an affiliated person;

- a "deemed disposition" of the property under section 128.1 (change of residence) or subsection 149(10) (change of taxable status) of the Act;
- in the case of a corporation, an acquisition of the corporation's control; or
- where the transferor is a corporation, a winding-up of the transferor (other than a winding-up under subsection 88(1) of the Act).

If subsection 14(12) applies, the transferor will be treated as continuing to own eligible capital property of the business in respect of which the transferred property was used. This will enable the transferor to continue to claim annual cumulative eligible capital amounts under paragraph 20(1)(b) of the Act in respect of the remaining eligible capital property pool, and to claim a loss for any portion of the pool that remains undeducted when any of the events described above occurs.

New subsection 14(12) replaces subsection 85(4) of the Act, insofar as subsection 85(4) applied to transfers of eligible capital property. Subsection 85(4) operated to the same effect in denying the recognition of a loss on the transfer of eligible capital property to persons such as a corporation controlled by the transferor. However, new subsection 14(12) differs from subsection 85(4) in two material respects. First, it does not apply to transfers by individuals other than trusts, but can, as a result of its adoption of the definition of "affiliated persons" in new section 251.1 of the Act (see the commentary on that section for a fuller description), apply to eligible capital property transfers to individuals, corporations and partnerships in cases where subsection 85(4) would not have applied. Second, the new rule does not add the denied deduction to the cost of any shares received by the transferor in exchange for the property but, instead, retains it in the transferor's hands to be amortized and (to the extent of any unamortized portion) deducted under subsection 24(1) of the Act.

New subsection 14(13) of the Act provides two special rules for the purposes of the loss-deferral rule in new subsection 14(12). First, new paragraph 14(13)(a) of the Act sets out that a right to acquire a property (other than a right that is security for a debt or similar

obligation) is treated as a property that is identical to the property. For example, if a corporation, partnership or trust disposes of an eligible capital property, and within the relevant period an affiliated person of the transferor acquires and holds an option to acquire either that property or an identical one, new subsection 14(12) will apply.

Second, new paragraph 14(13)(b) of the Act clarifies the result that obtains where a transferor partnership ceases to exist after a disposition but before any of the events that would trigger its recognition of the deferred loss. Where a partnership would otherwise cease to exist after a disposition to which new subsection 14(12) applies, the partnership is treated as not having ceased to exist, and each person who was a member of the partnership before it would otherwise cease to exist is treated as having remained a member of the partnership. This deemed continuation of the partnership (and of the membership of each partner) continues until the time that is immediately after the first of the events that trigger the partnership's loss.

New subsections 14(12) and (13) apply to dispositions of property that take place after April 26, 1995, subject to certain exceptions. These are found in clause 247 of this Act and generally exclude transactions in progress before April 27, 1995. Readers may refer to the notes to clause 247 for more detail.

Clause 75

Shareholder Benefits

ITA

15

Section 15 of the Act requires the inclusion in income of certain benefits received or enjoyed by a shareholder of a corporation.

Subclause 75(1)

Shareholder Debt

ITA
15(2)

Subsection 15(2) of the Act requires that certain shareholder indebtedness be included in the income of the debtor in the year in which the indebtedness arose. Included in such indebtedness are loans from a corporation to its shareholders, loans to persons connected (non-arm's length) with the shareholders, as well as loans from a partnership to a shareholder of one of its corporate members. Paragraphs 15(2)(a) and (b) of the Act provide exceptions to this income inclusion rule for indebtedness arising in specific circumstances.

Subsection 15(2) is amended to clarify the rules that apply where loans are made to taxpayers who are both shareholders and employees of a corporation. This is accomplished by restructuring the subsection so that the basic rule for the taxation of shareholder loans is contained in amended subsection 15(2), while the exceptions to this basic rule are provided in new subsections 15(2.2) to (2.6) of the Act.

This amendment applies to loans made and indebtedness arising in the 1990 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 75(2)

Where s. 15(2) Not to Apply

ITA
15(2.2) to (2.6)

New subsection 15(2.2) of the Act excludes loans between non-resident persons from the application of subsection 15(2) of the Act. This new subsection is a restatement of subsection 15(8) of the Act, which is being repealed.

New subsection 15(2.3) of the Act restates former subparagraph 15(2)(a)(i) of the Act which relates to loans made in the ordinary course of business.

New subsection 15(2.4) of the Act provides exceptions to the rule in subsection 15(2) in respect of certain loans made to shareholders who are also employees. Subject to new paragraphs 15(2.4)(e) and (f) of the Act, new paragraph 15(2.4)(a) of the Act provides an exception for loans or indebtedness in respect of an employee who is not a specified employee of the lender or creditor, while new paragraphs 15(2.4)(b) and (c) of the Act (which restate former subparagraphs 15(2)(a)(ii) and (iii) of the Act) provide exemptions related to home and share acquisition loans. New paragraph 15(2.4)(d), which is broader in scope than former subparagraph 15(2)(a)(iv) of the Act, provides an exemption related to motor vehicle acquisition loans.

New paragraph 15(2.4)(e) of the Act deals with loans made to and debts incurred by individuals who are both employees and shareholders. It provides that for a loan or indebtedness described in new paragraphs 15(2.4)(a) to (d) to be exempt from inclusion in income under subsection 15(2), the loan or indebtedness must be received or incurred because of the employee's employment and not because of any person's shareholding.

New paragraph 15(2.4)(f) of the Act restates the former postamble to paragraph 15(2)(a). Paragraph 15(2.4)(f) provides that, for a loan or indebtedness described in new paragraph 15(2.4)(a) to (d) to be exempt from inclusion in income under subsection 15(2), bona fide arrangements must have been made for repayment of the loan or indebtedness.

New subsection 15(2.4) ensures that the exceptions formerly contained in subsection 15(2) (and now found in new paragraphs 15(2.4)(b), (c) and (d)), as well as the exception in new paragraph 15(2.4)(a), only apply where it is reasonable to conclude that the loan was made or the indebtedness arose because of the employee's employment and where there are bona fide arrangements for repayment.

New subsection 15(2.5) of the Act provides an exception to the income inclusion rule in subsection 15(2) for certain loans made by a private corporation to a trust where the corporation is the settlor and sole beneficiary of the trust, and the sole purpose of the trust is to facilitate the purchase and sale of the shares of the corporation, or a related corporation, from, or to, the employees (other than specified

employees) of the corporation or the related corporation. The purchase and sale of the shares must take place at fair market value at the time of the transaction.

New subsection 15(2.6) of the Act, which provides that subsection 15(2) does generally not apply to a loan or indebtedness repaid within one year of its issue, is a restatement of former paragraph 15(2)(b) of the Act.

New subsections 15(2) to (2.6) generally apply to loans made or indebtedness arising in the 1990 and subsequent taxation years.

Employee of Partnership

ITA
15(2.7)

New subsection 15(2.7) of the Act treats certain employees of partnerships as specified employees for the purpose of section 15 of the Act. If an individual is an employee of a partnership and is also a specified shareholder of a corporation or a group of corporations that is entitled to a 10-per-cent or greater share of the income or loss of the partnership, the individual is deemed to be a specified employee of the partnership.

New subsections 15(2) to (2.7) of the Act generally apply to loans made or indebtedness arising in the 1990 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 75(3)

ITA
15(8)

Subsection 15(8) of the Act is repealed, applicable to loans made or indebtedness arising in the 1990 and subsequent taxation years, as its provisions are contained in new subsection 15(2.2) of the Act.

Subclause 75(4)**Deemed Benefit to Shareholder by Corporation**

ITA

15(9)

Subsection 15(9) of the Act provides that where an amount in respect of a loan or debt is deemed by section 80.4 of the Act to be a benefit received by a person or partnership in a taxation year, the amount of the loan or debt is deemed for the purposes of subsection 15(1) of the Act to be a benefit conferred in the year on a shareholder. The words "of the loan or debt" were erroneously substituted for the word "thereof" in the English version of the Act by the Statute Revision Commission when the Commission revised the Act.

This amendment, therefore, clarifies that it is only the portion of the amount in respect of the loan or debt that is deemed to be a benefit under section 80.4 that is also deemed to be a benefit for the purposes of subsection 15(1) as opposed to the full amount of the loan or debt.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after November 1991, as these are the taxation years to which the amendment made in the Fifth Supplement of the Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985 applies.

Clauses 76 and 77**Small Business Development Bonds**

ITA

15.1 and 15.2

Sections 15.1 and 15.2 of the Act set out rules defining and governing the treatment of small business development bonds (SBDBs) and small business bonds (SBBs). SBDBs and SBBs are debt obligations on which any interest payable is not deductible to the issuer but is instead treated as a taxable dividend to the recipient.

The amendments to subsections 15.1(3) and 15.2(3) of the Act, which apply after April 26, 1995, are consequential on the adoption in subsection 248(1) of the Act of a definition of the term "majority interest partner". The definition of that term was formerly found in subsection 97(3.1) of the Act and adopted by reference in sections 15.1 and 15.2. The new definition in subsection 248(1) applies for the purposes of the Act and thus allows the definition of that term in subsection 15.1(3) and 15.2(3) to be repealed.

Clause 78

Blended Payments

ITA

16

Section 16 of the Act deals with the treatment of blended payments which are partly of a capital nature and partly of an interest nature.

Subclause 78(1)

Indexed Debt Obligations

ITA

16(6)

Subsection 16(6) of the Act sets out the tax treatment of the index adjustment on indexed debt obligations both for the holders and issuers of such obligations. This subsection is amended as a consequence of the introduction of new subsection 16(7) of the Act. New subsection 16(6), which will be subject to new subsection 16(7), applies to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have the reserve provisions in new paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act apply to those years.

Subclause 78(2)**Impaired Indexed Debt Obligations**

ITA

16(7)

New subsection 16(7) of the Act provides that paragraph 16(6)(a) of the Act does not apply to a taxpayer in respect of an indexed debt obligation for that portion of a taxation year in which the obligation of a taxpayer is impaired if an amount in respect thereof is deductible under subparagraph 20(1)(l)(ii) of the Act by the taxpayer for the year. Interest is therefore not to be included in the income of the taxpayer under subsection 16(6) for that portion of the taxation year in which the indexed debt obligation is impaired. This is consistent with the new accounting rules which provide that recognition of interest income in accordance with the terms of the original debt obligation ceases on the impairment of the obligation. New subsection 16(7) applies to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have the reserve provisions in new paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act apply to those years.

Clause 79**Income from Business or Property - Disallowed Deductions**

Section 18 of the Act prohibits the deduction of certain outlays and expenses in computing a taxpayer's income from a business or property.

Subclause 79(1)**Penalties, Bonuses and Rate-Reduction Payments**

ITA

18(9.1)

Subsection 18(9.1) of the Act applies where a penalty or bonus is paid in respect of the repayment of all or part of a debt obligation before its maturity. The subsection provides, in certain

circumstances, that the penalty or bonus is deemed to have been paid and received as interest, to the extent that it does not exceed the future interest that would, but for the repayment, have been payable on the obligation. Subsection 18(9.1) also applies with respect to certain interest rate reduction payments.

Subsection 18(9.1) is amended to provide that it is subject to new subsection 142.4(10) of the Act. That subsection provides that a penalty or bonus received by a financial institution in respect of the early repayment of all or part of the principal amount of a specified debt obligation is considered to be received by the institution as proceeds of disposition.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 22, 1994.

Subclause 79(2)

ITA
18(13) to (16)

Existing subsection 18(13) of the Act denies the recognition of superficial losses sustained by a taxpayer whose ordinary business includes the lending of money. A superficial loss under subsection 18(13) is a loss realized by a taxpayer on the sale or transfer of a property (other than a capital property) such as a share or a bond where the same or identical property (referred to as "substituted property") is acquired by the taxpayer or a non-arm's length person or partnership during the period beginning 30 days before and ending 30 days after the disposition, and is held by the taxpayer or the person or partnership at the end of that period. Currently, any superficial loss with respect to the disposition is added in computing the cost to the owner of the substituted property. This rule is similar to the superficial loss rule in paragraph 54 of the Act that applies for the purposes of computing capital gains and losses.

With the addition of new subsection 18(14) of the Act, the structure of subsection 18(13) is modified. Subsections 18(13) and (14), respectively, now set out the conditions under which certain losses of money lenders and adventurers in trade are deferred. New subsection 18(15) of the Act describes the loss deferral itself.

While these amendments to subsection 18(13) maintain the provision's original objective of denying the recognition of superficial losses, they do make two material changes. First, any loss that would otherwise be deductible with respect to a property is no longer added to the cost of that property to its subsequent owner. Instead, that loss is preserved in the transferor's hands and will be deductible by the transferor upon the first occurrence of any of the following events:

- a subsequent disposition of the property to a person that is neither the transferor nor a person affiliated with the transferor (provided that for 30 days after that subsequent disposition neither the transferor nor an affiliated person owns either the substituted property or an identical property acquired after the beginning of the period described above);
- a "deemed disposition" of the property under section 128.1 (change of residence) or subsection 149(10) (change of taxable status) of the Act;
- in the case of a corporation, an acquisition of the corporation's control; or
- where the transferor is a corporation, a winding-up of the transferor (other than a winding-up under subsection 88(1) of the Act).

Second, subsection 18(13) no longer sets out its own description of the group of persons and partnerships whose connection with a taxpayer would render any loss on the transfer of property by the taxpayer to a member of that group a superficial loss. As amended, the subsection will apply where the taxpayer is "affiliated" with the transferee – using the tests set out in new section 251.1 of the Act. (See the commentary to section 251.1 for further information.)

The closing words of subsection 18(15) clarify the result that obtains where a transferor partnership ceases to exist after a disposition that is subject to subsection 18(15), but before any of the events that would trigger recognition of the deferred loss. Where a partnership would otherwise cease to exist after a disposition to which subsection 18(15) applies, the partnership is treated as not having ceased to exist, and each person who was a member of the partnership before it would otherwise cease to exist is treated as

having remained a member of the partnership. This deemed continuation of the partnership (and of the membership of each partner) continues until the time that is immediately after the first of the events that trigger the partnership's loss.

New subsection 18(16) of the Act sets out that a right to acquire a property (other than a right that is security for a debt or similar obligation) is treated for the purposes of subsections 18(13) to (15) as a property that is identical to the property.

Amended subsection 18(13) applies to dispositions that take place after April 26, 1995, subject to three exceptions. Two of these are found in clause 247 of this Act, and generally exclude transactions in progress before April 27, 1995. Readers may refer to the notes to clause 247 for more detail. The third exception is that amended subsection 18(13) does not apply to a disposition that occurred before July 1995, where subsection 142.6(7) of the Act does not apply but would apply if the disposition had occurred after June 1995. This conforms this amendment to the coming-into-force of subsection 142.6(7).

New subsection 18(14) applies to dispositions of property that occur after June 20, 1996 other than a disposition that occurs before 1997 to a person or partnership that was obliged on June 20, 1996 to acquire the property pursuant to the terms of an agreement in writing made on or before that day. For the purposes of this subsection, a person or partnership shall be considered not to be obliged to acquire property where the person or partnership can be excused from the obligation if there is a change to the Act or if there is an adverse assessment under the Act.

New subsections 18(15) and (16) apply to dispositions that occur after April 26, 1995.

Clause 80**Matchable Expenditures**

ITA

18.1

Proposed section 18.1 of the Act restricts the deductibility of an otherwise deductible matchable expenditure incurred in respect of a right to receive production by prorating the deductibility of the amount of the expenditure over the economic life of the right. This section does not create an entitlement to deduct an amount in respect of an expenditure, unless the expenditure is otherwise deductible under existing jurisprudence. The "Backgrounder" accompanying Department of Finance News Release 96-082 dated November 18, 1996 provides general details about the tax policy concerns that lead to section 18.1 being proposed by the government. Generally, these policy objectives concern the use of royalty-type arrangements to effect tax-assisted financing by structuring the arrangements as tax shelters or as debt substitutes. The detailed rules in section 18.1 are discussed below. Generally, section 18.1 applies after November 17, 1996.

Subclause 80(1)

ITA

18.1(1)

Subsection 18.1(1) of the Act provides the definitions of the expressions "matchable expenditure", "right to receive production", "tax benefit", "tax shelter" and "taxpayer" for the purposes of section 18.1 of the Act.

ITA

18.1(2) to (4)

Subsection 18.1(2) of the Act provides that matchable expenditures are deductible only to the extent provided by subsection 18.1(3) of the Act.

Subsection 18.1(3) provides that a matchable expenditure is deductible in computing a taxpayer's income for a taxation year to

the extent of the amount that is determined under subsection 18.1(4) of the Act. However, subsection 18.1(4) does not apply to provide a deduction in computing income for a taxation year unless the taxpayer's matchable expenditure would otherwise have been deductible in that or another taxation year.

Subsection 18.1(4) provides rules for determining the amount of a taxpayer's matchable expenditure that may be deducted under subsection 18.1(3) if that provision applies. That amount is determined as the least of three amounts.

Generally, the first of those amounts is the expenditure pro-rated over the term of the right to receive production to which the expenditure relates, except that in no event is the term used to be less than 5 years. Added to this amount, however, are amounts that would have been deductible in preceding years under this computation but for the second constraint. The second constraint is the amount of income included in computing the taxpayer's income in respect of the right for the year. Added to this amount, however, is income for previous years against which amounts could not be deducted because of the first constraint. The third constraint is the amount that would otherwise have been deductible in computing the taxpayer's income up to and including the current taxation year in respect of the taxpayer's right to receive production minus the amounts deductible under subsection 18.1(3) in computing the taxpayer's income for preceding taxation years. Two examples illustrating the application of these constraints follow the explanatory notes to proposed subsections 18.1(8) to (12) of the Act.

Special Rules

ITA

18.1(5)

Subsection 18.1(5) of the Act provides four special rules that apply for the purposes of section 18.1 of the Act. First, if a taxpayer's matchable expenditure is actually made before the related right to receive production is acquired, the expenditure will be considered to have been made on the day that the right is acquired. Second, if a taxpayer has one or more rights to renew a right to receive production for one or more additional terms, the term of the right is to be treated as terminating at the latest possible time that such an

additional term could terminate if all rights to renew the right were exercised. Third, where a taxpayer has two or more rights to receive production that can reasonably be considered to be related to each other, the rights are treated as one right. Fourth, if the term of a taxpayer's right to receive production is for an indeterminate period, the right is considered to terminate 20 years after it is acquired.

ITA

18.1(6) to (7)

Subsection 18.1(6) of the Act provides that a taxpayer's proceeds of disposition of a right to receive production are to be included in computing the taxpayer's income.

Subsection 18.1(7) of the Act provides that, upon disposition or expiry, a taxpayer may claim a terminal deduction in respect of a right to receive production to which a matchable expenditure relates. However, this terminal deduction is not available where subsection 18.1(8) or (9) of the Act applies.

ITA

18.1(8) to (12)

Subsection 18.1(8) of the Act defers a taxpayer's terminal deduction from the expiry or disposition of a right to receive production in certain cases involving non-arm's length parties. In such cases, a taxpayer's terminal deduction is governed by subsection 18.1(10) of the Act.

Subsection 18.1(9) of the Act describes a special arm's length case in which a taxpayer's terminal deduction otherwise available under subsection 18.1(7) of the Act in respect of a disposed or expired right to receive production is deferred. If applicable, an affected taxpayer's deductions are to be computed under subsection 18.1(10). In particular, subsection 18.1(9) applies where, during the 30-day period that begins at the time of disposition or expiry, a taxpayer that had a direct or indirect interest in the right has a direct or indirect interest in any other right to receive production, which other interest is a tax shelter or a tax shelter investment (as defined by section 143.2 of the Act). For example, this condition precludes Partnership 1 from claiming a terminal deduction in respect of its right to receive production if another partnership (i.e., Partnership 2) that has (or had)

an interest in Partnership 1 has an interest, directly or indirectly, in any other right to receive production and the other interest is a tax shelter or a tax shelter investment (e.g., Partnership 3 holds a right and Partnership 2 has (or had) an interest in Partnership 1 and has a partnership interest in Partnership 3 that is a "tax shelter investment").

Paragraph 18.1(10)(a) of the Act provides the rule for deducting matchable expenditures during the period to which subsection 18.1(8) or (9) applies. During that period, paragraph 18.1(10)(a) limits a taxpayer's deduction in respect of a matchable expenditure to an amount that cannot exceed the least of the three amounts described in subsection 18.1(4) of the Act.

Paragraph 18.1(10)(b) of the Act provides for a terminal deduction for a matchable expenditure in respect of a disposed or expired right to receive production at the earliest of certain subsequent times. These times are

- the time at which the right would, if owned by the taxpayer, be deemed by section 128.1 (change of residence) or subsection 149(10) (change of taxable status) of the Act to have been disposed of by the taxpayer;
- the time that is immediately before control of the taxpayer is acquired by a person or group of persons, if the taxpayer is a corporation;
- the time at which winding-up of the taxpayer begins (other than a winding-up to which subsection 88(1) of the Act applies), if the taxpayer is a corporation;
- where subsection 18.1(8) applies, the time at which a 30-day period begins throughout which neither the taxpayer nor an affiliated or non-arm's length person owns
 - the substituted property (referred to in subsection 18.1(8)), or
 - a property that is identical to the substituted property and that was acquired no earlier than 30 days before the period begins; or

- where subsection 18.1(9) applies, the time at which a 30-day period begins throughout which no taxpayer who had a direct or indirect interest in the right has a direct or indirect interest in another right to receive production, which other interest is a tax shelter or a tax shelter investment (as defined by section 143.2 of the Act).

Subsection 18.1(11) of the Act clarifies the result that obtains if a right to receive production expires or is disposed of by a partnership that subsequently ceases to exist. Where a partnership would otherwise cease to exist after a disposition or expiry of a right to which subsection 18.1(10) applies, the partnership is treated as not having ceased to exist, and each taxpayer who was a member of the partnership at the time of the disposition or expiry is treated as having remained a member of the partnership. This deemed continuation of the partnership (and of the membership of each partner) continues until the time that is immediately after the first of the events that trigger the partnership's terminal deduction in respect of the matchable expenditure.

Subsection 18.1(12) of the Act provides that, for the purpose of the substituted property rule in subsection 18.1(8) and (10), a "right" to acquire a right to receive production is identical to the right to receive production. This rule does not apply to a "right", as security only, derived from a mortgage, agreement of sale or similar obligation.

EXAMPLE 1: TAXPAYER HOLDS RIGHT UNTIL EXPIRY

- *Taxpayer A incurs \$1,000 of matchable expenditures that relate to a right to receive production from Taxpayer B's business over a 6-year period (i.e., 25 per cent of the annual gross sales from the sale of a particular product).*
- *The \$1,000 was expended for the purpose of earning income. Taxpayer A has a reasonable expectation of profit from the right to receive production, and the amount is otherwise deductible. The deductibility of the matchable expenditure is, therefore, provided for by subsection 18.1(3) of the Act (as determined under subsection 18.1(4)).*

- *Taxpayer A receives the following gross revenue payments from Taxpayer B:*

Year 1: \$100

Year 2: \$200

Year 3: \$300

Year 4: \$200

Year 5: \$100

Year 6: \$500

- *Taxpayer A's right to receive production expires in year 6 (i.e., subsection 18.1(7) applies in that year).*

Calculation of Taxpayer A's Subsection 18.1(3) Deduction:

Year 1: Taxpayer A may deduct \$100 pursuant to subsections 18.1(3) and (4), being the least of:

(a): the total of

- the lesser of
\$200 ($1/5 \times \$1,000$)
\$167 ($\$1,000/6$)
- Nil
\$167

(b): the total of

- \$100 (receipts included in income)
- Nil
\$100

(c): \$200 ($\$200 - \text{Nil}$)¹

¹ Assuming a 5-year matching period under general principles.

Year 2: Taxpayer A may deduct \$200 which is the least of:

(a): the total of

- the lesser of
 $\$200 (1/5 \times \$1,000)$
 $\$167 (\$1,000/6)$
- $\frac{\$67}{\$234}$ (year 1: $\$167(a) - \$100(b)$)

(b): the total of

- \$200 (receipts included in income)
- $\frac{\text{Nil}}{\$200}$

(c): \$300 (\$400 - \$100)

Year 3: Taxpayer A may deduct \$201 which is the least of:

(a): the total of

- the lesser of
 $\$200 (1/5 \times \$1,000)$
 $\$167 (\$1,000/6)$
- $\frac{\$34}{\$201}$ (year 2: $\$234(a) - \$200(b)$)

(b): the total of

- \$300 (receipts included in income)
- $\frac{\text{Nil}}{\$300}$

(c): \$300 (\$600 - \$300)

Year 4: Taxpayer A may deduct \$167 which is the least of:

(a): the total of

- the lesser of
 $\$200 (1/5 \times \$1,000)$
 $\$167 (\$1,000/6)$
- Nil
 $\$167$

(b): the total of

- \$200 (receipts included in income)
- \$ 99 (year 3: \$300(b) - \$201(a))
 $\$299$

(c): \$299 (\$800 - \$501)

Year 5: Taxpayer A may deduct \$167 which is the least of:

(a): the total of

- the lesser of
 $\$200 (1/5 \times \$1,000)$
 $\$167 (\$1,000/6)$
- Nil
 $\$167$

(b): the total of

- \$100 (receipts included in income)
- \$132 (year 4: \$299(b) - \$167(a))
 $\$232$

(c): \$332 (\$1,000 - \$668)

Year 6: Taxpayer A may deduct \$165 because subsection 18.1(7) applies. The amount otherwise determined under subsection 18.1(4) would have been the least of:

(a): the total of

- the lesser of
\$200 ($1/5 \times \$1,000$)
\$167 ($\$1,000/6$)
- Nil
\$167

(b): the total of

- \$500 (receipts included in income)
- \$ 65 (year 5: \$232(b) - \$167(a))
\$565

(c): \$165 ($\$1,000 - \835)

SUMMARY

Year	Income	Deductible Portion of Matchable Expenditure	Net Income (loss)
1	\$100	\$100	Nil
2	\$200	\$200	Nil
3	\$300	\$201	\$99
4	\$200	\$167	\$33
5	\$100	\$167	(\$67)
6	\$500	\$165	\$335
Total		\$1,000	

EXAMPLE 2: TAXPAYER DISPOSES OF RIGHT TO AFFILIATED PERSON

- Taxpayer A incurs \$1,000 of matchable expenditures that relate to a right to receive production from Taxpayer B's business

over a 6-year period (i.e., 25 per cent of the annual gross sales from the sale of a particular product).

- *The \$1,000 amount was expended for the purpose of earning income, Taxpayer A has a reasonable expectation of profit from the right to receive production and the amount is otherwise deductible (subject to matching) under previously existing jurisprudence. The deductibility of the matchable expenditure is, therefore, provided for by subsection 18.1(3) (as determined under subsection 18.1(4)).*
- *For years 1 to 4, Taxpayer A receives the following gross revenue payments from Taxpayer B:*

Year 1: \$100

Year 2: \$200

Year 3: \$300

Year 4: \$200

- *In year 4, and after receiving the \$200 from Taxpayer B, Taxpayer A disposes of the right to receive production for nil proceeds to affiliated person C (assume that the transfer of the right occurred at fair market value and that the attribution rules do not apply to any potential receipts that affiliated person C may receive from the right).*
- *Affiliated person C's acquired right to receive production expires at the end of year 6.*

Calculation of Taxpayer A's Subsection 18.1(3) Deduction:

Years 1

- to 3: See Example 1 above (i.e., Year 1 = \$100; Year 2 = \$200; and Year 3 = \$201).

Year 4: Taxpayer A may deduct \$167 which is the least of:

(a): the total of

- the lesser of
 $\$200 (1/5 \times \$1,000)$
 $\$167 (\$1,000/6)$
- $\frac{\text{Nil}}{\$167}$

(b): the total of

- \$200 (receipts included in income)
- $\frac{\$99}{\$299}$ (year 3: $\$300(b) - \$201(a)$)

(c): \$499 ($\$1,000 - \501)

Year 5: Taxpayer A may deduct \$132 which is the least of:

(a): the total of

- the lesser of
 $\$200 (1/5 \times \$1,000)$
 $\$167 (\$1,000/6)$
- $\frac{\text{Nil}}{\$167}$

(b): the total of

- Nil (receipts included in income)
- $\frac{\$132}{\$132}$ (year 4: $\$299(b) - \$167(a)$)

(c): \$332 ($\$1,000 - \668)

Year 6: Taxpayer A may deduct \$200 because paragraph 18.1(10)(b) applies to deem the amount determined under subsection 18.1(4)(c) to be the relevant amount for the year notwithstanding that the amount otherwise determined under proposed paragraph 18.1(4)(b) would have been the least amount of:

(a): the total of

- the lesser of
\$200 ($1/5 \times \$1,000$)
\$167 ($\$1,000/6$)
- \$ 45 (Year 5: \$167(a) - \$132(b))
\$212

(b): the total of

- Nil
- Nil
Nil

(c): \$200 ($\$1,000 - \800)

SUMMARY

Year	Income	Deductible Portion of Matchable Expenditure	Net Income (loss)
1	\$100	\$100	Nil
2	\$200	\$200	Nil
3	\$300	\$201	\$99
4	\$200	\$167	\$33
5	Nil	\$132	(\$132)
6	Nil	\$200	(\$200)
Total		\$1,000	

Application of section 143.2

ITA

18.1(13)

Subsection 18.1(13) of the Act provides that a matchable expenditure is considered to be a tax shelter investment for the purpose of applying the limited-recourse debt rules in proposed section 143.2 of the Act. For this purpose, however, the limited-recourse debt rules are to be read without reference to the "at-risk adjustment" reductions.

Debt Obligations

ITA

18.1(14)

Subsection 18.1(14) of the Act provides that a right to receive production is considered to be a debt obligation to which the accrual rules in Part LXX of the *Income Tax Regulations* apply if the rate of return on the right is reasonably certain. In such cases, no amount may be deducted under subsection 18.1(3) of the Act in respect of any matchable expenditure that relates to the right.

Non-applicability of section 18.1

ITA

18.1(15)

Subsection 18.1(15) of the Act describes those matchable expenditures in respect of a right to receive production that are not subject to the new matchable expenditure rules in section 18.1. This rule applies only if no portion of a taxpayer's expenditure can reasonably be considered to have been paid to another taxpayer to acquire the right from the other taxpayer. In addition, the taxpayer's expenditure must be such that either

- the expenditure does not relate to a tax shelter and none of the main purposes for making the expenditure is that the taxpayer obtain a tax benefit, or

- before the end of the taxation year in which the expenditure is made, the total income inclusions of the taxpayer from the right to receive production to which the expenditure relates exceed 80 per cent of the expenditure.

For example, a taxpayer that manages another person's property in return for a fee that is computed in whole or in part with reference to the value of the property being managed (i.e., the right to receive the fee is a right to receive production) may incur matchable expenditures in respect of the right. Nevertheless, the matchable expenditure rules will not apply to the taxpayer's expenditures in respect of the right where the conditions in subsection 18.1(15) apply. This would be the case, for example, where

- no portion of the expenditure in respect of the right can reasonably be considered to have been paid by the taxpayer/manager to acquire the right from the other person, and
- the taxpayer/manager's expenditure in respect of the right does not relate to a tax shelter or a tax shelter investment (as defined by section 143.2 of the Act) and none of the main purposes for making the expenditure is that the taxpayer, or a person with whom the taxpayer does not deal at arm's length, obtain a tax benefit.

Clause 81

Income from Business or Property – Deductions

ITA

20

Section 20 of the Act provides rules relating to the deductibility of certain outlays, expenses and other amounts in computing a taxpayer's income for a taxation year from business or property.

Subclause 81(1)**Expenses Re: Financing**

ITA

20(1)(e)

Paragraph 20(1)(e) of the Act provides for the deduction over a five-year period of expenses incurred in issuing securities, borrowing money and rescheduling or restructuring debt obligations. These expenses include commissions, fees and other amounts payable to agents and salespersons, but do not include amounts described in paragraph 18(9.1)(c) or (d) of the Act which are deductible under paragraph 20(1)(c) of the Act.

Paragraph 20(1)(e) is amended, applicable to expenses incurred after 1987, to remove the reference to amounts described in paragraph 18(9.1)(c) or (d). This reference is not necessary because paragraph 20(1)(e) provides a deduction only for amounts not otherwise deductible in computing income from a business or property under the Act.

Subclauses 81(2) to (4)**Reserve for Doubtful Debts**

ITA

20(1)(l)

Paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act permits any taxpayer to claim a reserve in respect of doubtful debts and a taxpayer who is an insurer or whose ordinary business includes the lending of money to claim a reserve in respect of doubtful loans and lending assets. A taxpayer whose ordinary business does not include the lending of money but does include the purchasing of debt obligations issued by arm's length persons is unable to claim a doubtful debt reserve. Instead such a taxpayer can use the inventory accounting rules to obtain a current deduction in respect of a debt obligation that has become doubtful and fallen in value.

The maximum reserve a taxpayer can claim under existing paragraph 20(1)(l) in respect of a loan or lending asset is equal to the

sum of two amounts. The first amount is a prescribed reserve amount under clause 20(1)(l)(ii)(A) of the Act in respect of certain loans and lending assets and the second amount is the amount determined under clause 20(1)(l)(ii)(B) of the Act in respect of other doubtful loans and lending assets. The amount under 20(1)(l)(ii)(B) is the lesser of two amounts one of which is the reserve reported in the taxpayer's financial statements. For this purpose, the financial statement reserve is increased by the amount of interest included under subsection 12(3) of the Act in the taxpayer's income for tax purposes to the extent that the interest has reduced the financial statement reserve.

In June 1996, two amendments to paragraph 20(1)(l) were proposed. They were included in former Bill C-69. The first amendment extends the application of the paragraph to taxpayers whose ordinary business is the purchasing of debt. Under the new mark-to-market rules, a taxpayer is a financial institution if the taxpayer's ordinary business is the purchasing of debt obligations. As a financial institution, the taxpayer is deemed not to hold as a property in inventory any debt obligation that is a specified debt obligation. To replace an affected taxpayer's lost inventory accounting deduction the amendment to paragraph 20(1)(l) broadens the paragraph's application to provide such taxpayer's with a current deduction in respect of specified debt obligations that have become doubtful and fallen in value. This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 22, 1994.

The second amendment is to sub-subclause 20(1)(l)(ii)(B)(II)2 of the Act. This provision specifies the amount to be added to the financial statement reserve and is amended so that it also applies with respect to amounts included in a taxpayer's income under paragraph 142.3(1)(a) of the Act. This amendment is consequential on the introduction of the new rules for debt obligations held by financial institutions. It applies to taxation years that end after February 22, 1994.

The following proposed amendments to paragraph 20(1)(l) reflect the 1995 accounting changes announced by the Canadian Institute of Chartered Accountants, and adopted by the Superintendent of Financial Institutions, in dealing with the recognition and measurement of impaired loans. These changes are effective for taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation

years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have proposed new paragraph 20(1)(l) apply to those years. If the taxpayer so elects, the election must be filed with Revenue Canada by the end of the third month after the month in which these amendments to paragraph 20(1)(l) become law.

Subparagraph 20(1)(l)(i) of the Act provides that a taxpayer may deduct a reasonable amount as a reserve in respect of doubtful debts that have been included in income for the year or a previous taxation year. This subparagraph is amended to exclude from doubtful debts those debts to which subparagraph 20(1)(l)(ii) applies.

New subparagraph 20(1)(l)(ii) of the Act provides that the maximum reserve a financial institution or a taxpayer whose ordinary business includes the lending of money may claim in a year is the total of the amounts in clauses (C) and (D) of that paragraph.

The amount determined under new clause 20(1)(l)(ii)(C) is the percentage (not exceeding 100 per cent) that the taxpayer may claim of the prescribed reserve amount set out in section 8000 of the *Income Tax Regulations*. The reserve described in paragraph 8000(a) of the Regulations applies in respect of a loan to a designated country. A designated country is determined by the Superintendent of Financial Institutions and is set out in the Guidelines issued by the Office of the Superintendent. After October 1995, the Superintendent ceased to designate any new countries. Consequently, paragraph 8000(a) will now be relevant only in respect of loans made before November 1995 to countries designated before that time. The reserve described in paragraph 8000(b) of the Regulations applies in respect of loans that can be grouped according to type, such as, credit card debt and consumer mortgages, and in respect of which a reserve reduction factor can be applied. The amortized cost of the loans is multiplied by the reserve reduction factor which is referred to as the "historical loss experience". Section 8004 of the Regulations defines "historical loss experience". Paragraph 8000(b) and section 8004 of the Regulations are proposed to be repealed effective for taxation years that end after September 1997, and also for taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have new paragraph 20(1)(l) apply to those years. The impaired loans previously subject to the "historical loss experience" calculation will now be included with all other loans in the reserve amount determined under clause 20(1)(l)(ii)(D) of the Act.

The amount determined under new clause 20(1)(l)(ii)(D) is the reserve determined for impaired loans, lending assets or specified debt obligations (the "loans") of the taxpayer for a taxation year. Loans exclude direct financing leases as set out in new subparagraph 6209(b)(iii) and new section 9004 of the Regulations. Loans also exclude securities prescribed by new subparagraphs 6209(b)(i) and (ii) of the Regulations released in June 1995. The amount determined under new clause (D) is the specified percentage of the lesser of the amount determined under new subclause (I) and (II). Specified percentage is a new term which is defined in new subsection 20(2.4) of the Act. The specified percentage for a taxation year for the purposes of clause (D) is the lesser of 100 per cent and the percentage of the prescribed reserve amount of the taxpayer for the year claimed by the taxpayer under clause (C) for the year. In other words, the taxpayer will be required to claim the same percentage under clause (C) and (D) for a particular taxation year except in the case in which the taxpayer does not have a prescribed reserve amount for that year.

New subclause 20(1)(l)(ii)(D)(I) of the Act provides that the reserve amount must be a reasonable amount based on the amortized cost of the loans to the taxpayer at the end of a taxation year. This provision is amended to clarify that the reserve so determined cannot include a sectoral reserve. "Sectoral reserve" is a new term which is defined in new subsection 20(2.3) of the Act.

New subclause 20(1)(l)(D)(II) of the Act provides that the amount determined thereunder is to be determined by the formula $0.9M-N$. M is the reserve for the loans for the year determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. N is the total of the specified reserve adjustment for the loans for the year and all previous taxation years which is defined in new subsection 20(30) of the Act. This amendment also clarifies that for tax purposes the reserve cannot include any portion of a sectoral reserve as is defined in new subsection 20(2.3).

Subclause 81(5)

ITA

20(1)(l.1)(ii)

Paragraph 20(1)(l.1) of the Act provides a deduction for a reserve in respect of credit risk losses under guarantees of a taxpayer that are expected to arise after the end of a year. The deduction is the amount of the reserve reported in the taxpayer's financial statement multiplied by one minus the "prescribed recovery rate". The prescribed recovery rate is set out in section 8001 of the *Income Tax Regulations*. Section 8001 is repealed and paragraph 20(1)(l.1) is amended to refer to this percentage rather than the prescribed recovery rate. New paragraph 20(1)(l.1) applies to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have the reserve provisions in new paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act apply to those years.

Subclause 81(6)**Reserve for Bad Debts**

ITA

20(1)(p)

Paragraph 20(1)(p) of the Act permits a taxpayer that is an insurer or whose ordinary business includes the lending of money to deduct an amount in respect of loans or lending assets established by the taxpayer to have become uncollectible in the year.

A taxpayer whose ordinary business is not the lending of money but the purchasing of debt obligations issued by arm's length persons cannot claim a bad debt reserve. Instead, such a taxpayer can use the inventory accounting rules to obtain a current deduction in respect of a debt obligation that has become uncollectible.

Under the new mark-to-market rules, a taxpayer is a financial institution if the taxpayer's ordinary business is the purchasing of debt obligations. As a financial institution, the taxpayer is deemed not to hold as a property in inventory any debt obligation that is a specified debt obligation. To replace an affected taxpayer's lost

inventory accounting deduction, the amendment to paragraph 20(1)(p) broadens the paragraph's application to provide such taxpayers with a current deduction in respect of uncollectible specified debt obligations. The amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 22, 1994.

Subclause 81(7)

ITA

20(2.3) and (2.4)

New subsection 20(2.3) of the Act sets out the meaning of the term "sectoral reserve" for the purpose of new clause 20(1)(l)(ii)(D) of the Act. A sectoral reserve is a reserve in respect of properties that are impaired loans, lending assets or specified debt obligations that is determined on an identifiable sector basis, such as, a geographic or industrial sector basis rather than on a property-by-property basis. This is relevant for the purposes of determining the amount of the reserve deduction under new paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act. This new definition applies to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have the reserve provisions in new paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act apply to those years.

New subsection 20(2.4) of the Act sets out the meaning of the term "specified percentage" for the purpose of new clause 20(1)(l)(ii)(D). The specified percentage for a taxation year is the lesser of 100 per cent and the percentage of the prescribed reserve amount of the taxpayer for the year claimed by the taxpayer under new clause 20(1)(l)(ii)(C) of the Act for the year. In other words, the taxpayer will be required to claim the same percentage under clause (C) and (D) for a particular taxation year except in the case where the taxpayer does not have a prescribed reserve amount for that year. This new definition applies to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have the reserve provisions in new paragraph 20(1)(l) apply to those years.

Subclause 81(8)**Specified Reserve Adjustment**

ITA

20(30)

New subsection 20(30) of the Act provides for the calculation of a taxpayer's "specified reserve adjustment" in respect of a loan for the purposes of the description of N in subclause 20(1)(l)(ii)(D)(II) of the Act. This adjustment is made on a loan-by-loan basis and is 10 per cent of the interest income reported on the impaired loan for the year or reflected in the charge or credit for loan impairment. The specified reserve adjustment in respect of a loan for a year is the amount determined by the formula $0.1(A \times B \times C / 365)$. A is the carrying amount of the loan for the year determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. B is the effective rate of interest on the loan for that year determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. C is the number of days in the year on which the loan was impaired. New subsection 20(30) applies to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have the reserve provisions in new paragraph 20(1)(l) apply to those years.

Clause 82**Crown Corporations**

ITA

27(1)

Section 27 of the Act provides special rules for the application of Part I of the Act to federal Crown corporations.

Section 27 allows the Governor in Council to impose income tax on a federal Crown corporation by prescribing the corporation in the *Income Tax Regulations*. Where the prescribed corporation is a Crown agent, subsection 27(1) of the Act treats any income it earns or loss it incurs as its own income or loss, rather than Her Majesty's. This provision is amended in two respects. First, the rule is

broadened to apply to all federal Crown corporations, not only those that have been prescribed. This does not impose tax on a corporation that has not been prescribed, but it does ensure that such a corporation's income or loss is appropriately measured when, for example, it ceases to be exempt from tax and is subject to the rules in subsection 149(10) of the Act.

The second change to subsection 27(1) provides that not only business and property income, but also the ownership of property itself, is attributed to the corporation. New paragraph 27(1)(b) of the Act specifies that Part I applies as though any property, obligation or debt of any kind held, administered, entered into or incurred by a prescribed federal Crown corporation as a Crown agent were instead a property, obligation or debt of the corporation itself. This ensures, for example, that capital gains and losses realized in respect of Crown property it administers are included in computing a Crown corporation's income.

For most purposes, this amendment applies to taxation years that begin after April 26, 1995. There are, however, certain exceptions. Amendments to Parts I.3, IV.1, VI and VI.1 of the Act provide that section 27 applies to those Parts. For those purposes, the amendment applies as of the dates those parts themselves took effect.

Clause 83

Farming or Fishing Business

ITA
28(1)

Section 28 of the Act provides rules concerning the computation of income for farmers and fishermen who use the cash method of accounting for income tax purposes.

Paragraph 28(1)(d) of the Act is amended to eliminate the reference in the paragraph to subsection 80(17) of the Act, strictly as a consequence of the repeal of that subsection.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Paragraph 28(1)(e) of the Act is amended to provide that payments (other than for inventory) that reduce cash-basis income of a farming or fishing business for a year do not include prepaid expenses relating to a taxation year of the business that is two or more taxation years after the year of payment.

New paragraph 28(1)(e.1) of the Act provides a deduction in a taxpayer's taxation year for amounts paid in a previous taxation year by the taxpayer where the amounts would be deductible in computing income for the current taxation year from the taxpayer's business of farming or fishing if that income were not computed in accordance with the cash method. To be deductible by a taxpayer, the amount is required to have been paid by the taxpayer in a preceding taxation year in the course of carrying on the business of farming or fishing and cannot be deductible in computing the income of the business for any other taxation year.

Amended paragraph 28(1)(e) and new paragraph 28(1)(e.1) apply to amounts paid after April 26, 1995 except amounts paid pursuant to written agreements made by the payer on or before April 26, 1995.

Clause 84

Death of Partner or Proprietor

ITA

34.1(9)

Section 34.1 of the Act provides for an adjustment to business income when an individual has a non-calendar year end (i.e., according to the "alternative fiscal period method"). New subsection 34.1(9) of the Act provides that, where an individual dies after that fiscal period, with the result that a second fiscal period ends in the taxation year, a similar adjustment of income in respect of the second fiscal period must be added to the business income for the year of death (to be reported in the income tax return filed pursuant to subsection 150(1) of the Act), if the individual's legal representative so elects or has elected otherwise to file a separate return of income under subsection 150(4) of the Act. In this way, the income for the year of death will reflect both the addition under subsection 34.1(9) and the deduction under subsection 34.1(3) of the

Act, where the taxpayer's legal representative elects to include the income from the second fiscal period in a separate return. A consequential amendment to subsection 150(4) will require the late individual's legal representative to deduct the amount included under subsection 34.1(9) in respect of the individual on the separate return filed in respect of the second period that ended in the year pursuant to subsection 150(4).

Subsection 34.1(9) is applicable to 1996 and subsequent taxation years, except that for the 1996 and 1997 taxation years a representative that files a subsection 150(4) return has the option of not adding an amount to income under subsection 34.1(9) and likewise deducting it from income on the subsection 150(4) return.

Clause 85

Reserve for December 31, 1995 Income - Death of Partner or Proprietor

ITA
34.2(8)

Section 34.2 of the Act provides for a 10-year transitional inclusion in respect of "December 31, 1995 income" when a taxpayer had a fiscal period ending in 1995 other than on December 31, 1995. New subsection 34.2(8) of the Act allows the legal representative of an individual who dies in a year to claim, in the return of income for the year of death, the reserve that would otherwise have been available pursuant to subsection 34.2(4) of the Act. An amendment to subsection 150(4) of the Act will require that the amount deducted under subsection 34.2(8) be reported as income on the separate return required under subsection 150(4).

Subsection (8) is applicable to 1996 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 86**Scientific Research and Experimental Development**

ITA

37

Section 37 of the Act sets out the rules for the deduction of expenditures incurred by a taxpayer on scientific research and experimental development (SR&ED) performed both inside and outside Canada.

Subclause 86(1)

ITA

37(1)

Subsection 37(1) of the Act provides that a taxpayer may deduct from the taxpayer's business income in respect of a taxation year certain amounts expended for SR&ED. Subparagraph 37(1)(a)(iii) of the Act allows the deduction of payments made by the taxpayer to a corporation resident in Canada and exempt from tax because of paragraph 149(1)(j) of the Act where certain conditions are met. That subparagraph applies only where the taxpayer is a corporation. However, an amendment was made to the French version of that provision when the statute that introduced that provision into the Act (that is, S.C. 1991, c. 49) was revised by the Statute Revision Commission in chapter 7 of the Statutes of Canada, 1994 (Schedule II). The expression "société de personnes" was then erroneously substituted for the word "corporation". This amendment substitutes the word "société" for the expression "société de personnes".

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after November 1991, as these are the taxation years to which the amendment made to subparagraph 37(1)(a)(iii) in the Fifth Supplement of the Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985 applies.

Subclause 86(2)**Time for Election**

ITA

37(10)

Subsection 37(10) of the Act requires that an election made by a taxpayer under clause 37(8)(a)(ii)(B) of the Act in respect of SR&ED incurred in a taxation year be filed when the taxpayer first files a prescribed form under subsection 37(11) of the Act for that year. The coming-into-force of this requirement is amended to refer, instead, to the time at which the taxpayer first files a prescribed form for a taxation year under subsection 37(1) of the Act (rather than subsection 37(11)) for the period during which the filing requirement referred to under current subsection 37(11) was incorporated into subsection 37(1). That period commenced February 21, 1994 and ended with the last taxation year of a taxpayer beginning before 1995.

Subclause 86(3)

ITA

37(13)(b)

Subsection 37(13) of the Act deems certain work that would not otherwise be considered to be SR&ED to be SR&ED for the purposes of sections 37, 127 and 127.1 of the Act.

Subsection 37(13) is amended consequential on the introduction of the definition "scientific research and experimental development" in subsection 248(1) of the Act.

This amendment applies to taxation years that begin after 1995.

Clause 87**Scientific Research and Experimental Development - Additional Allowance**

ITA

37.1 to 37.3

Section 37.1 of the Act provides an additional deduction for expenditures in respect of scientific research and experimental development carried on in Canada by a corporation. This has generally not been available since 1983. Subsection 37.1(3) of the Act, however, continues to require the recapture of this allowance for current dispositions of "research property" notwithstanding the research property may not have earned the additional allowance. Section 37.1, as well as sections 37.2 and 37.3, which are application sections in respect of section 37.1, are repealed for the 1995 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 88**Exempt Capital Gains Balance in Respect of Flow-Through Entity**

ITA

39.1(1)

The exempt capital gains balance of an individual for a taxation year in respect of a flow-through entity represents the unclaimed balance of the capital gains that were included in computing the individual's income as a result of elections made under subsection 110.6(19) of the Act in respect of the individual's interest in, or shares of the capital stock of, the entity.

An individual's exempt capital gains balance in respect of a flow-through entity for a taxation year is reduced by amounts claimed in previous years under subsections 39.1(2) to (6) of the Act to reduce capital gains otherwise determined on dispositions of interests in, or shares of the capital stock of, the entity or taxable capital gains or capital gains flowed out to the individual by the entity.

The definition "exempt capital gains balance" is amended, applicable to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years, to provide that an individual's exempt capital gains balance in respect of a flow-through entity for a taxation year is also reduced by amounts included in the description of the new variable "F" included in the formula in this definition. This amendment is relevant in respect of flow-through entities that are trusts described in paragraphs (g) to (j) of the definition of "flow-through entity" in subsection 39.1(1) of the Act. These trusts are:

- certain trusts governed by employees profit sharing plans,
- certain trusts created to hold shares of the capital stock of corporations for the benefit of their employees,
- certain trusts established for the benefit of creditors to secure certain debt obligations, and
- certain voting trusts where the purpose of the trust is to provide for the exercise of voting rights attached to shares held by the trust.

As a result of this amendment, where the flow-through entity is a trust described in paragraphs (g) to (j) of the definition of "flow-through entity" and the trust distributed property in a previous year to the individual in satisfaction of all or a portion of the individual's interests in the trust, the variable "F" will reduce the individual's exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust for the year by the total of all amounts included in the cost of the property to the individual because of elections by the individual under new subsection 107(2.2) or new paragraph 144(7.1)(c) of the Act. (For further information, reference may be made to the commentary on new subsection 107(2.2) and new paragraph 144(7.1)(c)).

Clause 89**Capital Gains and Losses - General Rules**

ITA

40

Section 40 of the Act provides rules for determining an individual's capital gain or capital loss for a taxation year arising from the disposition of property.

Subclause 89(1)

ITA

40(2)(e)

Paragraph 40(2)(e) of the Act provides that a corporation's loss with respect to property disposed of by it to a person that controls the corporation, or to another corporation controlled by the same person that controls the first corporation, is nil. The circumstances to which paragraph 40(2)(e) may have previously applied will be covered by new subsection 40(3.3) of the Act. Paragraph 40(2)(e) is therefore repealed with the coming-into-force of new subsection 40(3.3).

Subclause 89(2)

ITA

40(2)(h)(i)

Paragraph 40(2)(h) of the Act provides for certain adjustments to a taxpayer's loss otherwise determined from the disposition of shares of the capital stock of a corporation that was controlled by the taxpayer at any time in the taxpayer's taxation year in which the disposition occurred. The amendment to this paragraph simply clarifies that a corporation's loss from the disposition of a controlled corporation's shares is subject to adjustment to take account of previous dispositions of property by the controlled corporation to any other corporation, including the shareholder corporation. The coming-into-force of this amendment is the same as that of new subsections 40(3.3) to (3.6) of the Act.

Subclause 89(3)**Deemed Gain for Certain Partners**

ITA

40(3.1)

Subsection 40(3.1) of the Act provides that a member of a partnership is considered to have realized a gain equal to the "negative adjusted cost base" of the members' interest at the end of the fiscal period if the member is a limited partner or was since becoming a partner, a "specified member of the partnership". The English version of this provision is restructured so as to clarify any ambiguity in its application. Generally, this amendment applies after February 21, 1994.

Subclause 89(4)**Specified Member of a Partnership**

ITA

40(3.131)

New subsection 40(3.131) of the Act provides an anti-avoidance rule that applies where one of the main reasons that a member of a partnership was not a specified member of the partnership since becoming a member of the partnership is to avoid the application of the "negative" adjusted cost base rule in subsection 40(3.1) of the Act.

In such cases, the member will be considered, for the purpose of subsection 40(3.1), to have been a specified member of the partnership at all times since becoming a member of the partnership. This subsection applies after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 89(5)

ITA

40(3.14)(b)

Subsection 40(3.14) of the Act provides an extended definition of "limited partner" for the purpose of determining whether a member's interest in a partnership is subject to the negative adjusted cost base rule in subsection 40(3.1) of the Act.

Paragraph 40(3.14)(b) of the Act is clarified to ensure that it applies where a member of a partnership, or a person not dealing at arm's length with the member, is entitled to receive certain amounts or obtain certain benefits referred to in paragraph 96(2.2)(d) of the Act, either immediately or in the future and either absolutely or contingently. This amendment applies to fiscal periods that end after November 1994.

Subclause 89(6)**Loss on Certain Transfers**

ITA

40(3.3) and (3.4)

New subsections 40(3.3) and (3.4) of the Act set out rules that defer losses on certain dispositions of non-depreciable capital property. Under new subsection 40(3.3), these rules apply where (1) a corporation, trust or partnership has disposed of a non-depreciable capital property, (2) the transferor or a person "affiliated" with the transferor acquires the transferred property or an identical property (either of which is termed the "substituted property") during the period that begins 30 days before and ends 30 days after the disposition, and (3) at the end of that period, the transferor or an affiliated person owns the substituted property.

Where these conditions are met, new subsection 40(3.4) provides that no loss may be recognized on the transfer. Instead, any loss is deferred until the earliest of the following events:

- a subsequent disposition of the property to a person that is neither the transferor nor a person affiliated with the transferor (provided

that for 30 days after that later disposition neither the transferor nor an affiliated person owns the substituted property or an identical property acquired after the beginning of the 61-day period described above);

- a deemed disposition of the property under section 128.1 of the Act (change of residence) or subsection 149(10) of the Act (change of taxable status);
- in the case of a corporation, an acquisition of the corporation's control;
- where the substituted property is a debt or a share, a deemed disposition under section 50 of the Act; or
- where the transferor is a corporation, a winding-up of the transferor (other than a winding-up to which subsection 88(1) of the Act applies).

The closing words of new subsection 40(3.4) clarify the result where a transferor partnership ceases to exist after a disposition, but before any of the events that would trigger recognition of the deferred loss. Where a partnership would otherwise cease to exist after a disposition to which subsection 40(3.4) applies, the partnership is treated for the purposes of paragraph 40(3.4)(b) of the Act as not having ceased to exist, and each person who was a member of the partnership at the time of the disposition is treated as having remained a member of the partnership. This deemed continuation of the partnership (and of the membership of each partner) continues until the time that is immediately after the first of the events that trigger the partnership's loss.

New subsections 40(3.3) and (3.4) replace subsection 85(4) of the Act, insofar as subsection 85(4) applied to transfers of non-depreciable capital property. Subsection 85(4) operated to the same effect in denying the recognition of a loss on the transfer of such property to persons such as a corporation controlled by the transferor or a person that controlled the transferor. However, these new subsections differ from subsection 85(4) in two material respects. First, they do not apply to transfers by individuals other than trusts, but can, as a result of the adoption of the definition of "affiliated persons" in new section 251.1 of the Act (see the commentary on that

section for a fuller description), have application to transfers of non-depreciable capital property transferred to individuals, corporations and partnerships in cases where subsection 85(4) would not have applied.

Second, the denied loss is not added to either to the cost of any shares held by the transferor in the transferee after the disposition, or to the cost to the transferee of the transferred property. Instead, the loss is preserved in the transferor's hands to be deducted as a loss from the transferred property when it is no longer owned by an affiliated person, when it is deemed to have been disposed of under other provisions of the Act, or when control of a corporate transferor is acquired. (An exception arises in the case of shares of a corporation's capital stock that are disposed of to that corporation. See new subsection 40(3.6) of the Act.)

New subsection 40(3.3) and (3.4) apply to dispositions of property that take place after April 26, 1995, subject to certain exceptions. These are found in clause 247, and generally exclude transactions in progress before April 27, 1995. Readers should refer to the notes to clause 247 of this bill for more detail.

Deemed Identical Property

ITA 40(3.5)

New subsection 40(3.5) of the Act sets out four special rules that apply for the purposes of the loss deferral rule in new subsection 40(3.4) of the Act.

First, paragraph 40(3.5)(a) of the Act provides that a right to acquire a property (other than a right that is security for a debt or similar obligation) is treated as being identical to the property.

Second, paragraph 40(3.5)(b) of the Act treats a share that is acquired in exchange for another share under any of sections 51, 85.1, 86 or 87 of the Act as identical to that other share.

Third, paragraph 40(3.5)(c) of the Act clarifies the result where the property that gives rise to a deferred loss under new subsection 40(3.4) of the Act is a share of a corporation that is

subsequently merged with one or more other corporations (except where the preceding paragraph already applies to the share) or is wound up into its parent corporation. In such a case, the surviving corporation – that is, the corporation formed on the merger or the parent corporation – is treated as continuing to own the share as long as that surviving corporation is affiliated with the transferor.

Loss on Shares

ITA

40(3.6)

Although new subsection 40(3.4) of the Act applies to most dispositions of non-depreciable capital property to affiliated persons, new subsection 40(3.6) of the Act applies special rules where the property is a share of the capital stock of a corporation and is disposed of to that corporation. Provided that the corporation acquiring its own shares is affiliated with the shareholder immediately after the acquisition, any loss that would otherwise arise with respect to the transaction is denied and the amount of that loss is instead added by paragraph 40(3.6)(b) of the Act to the adjusted cost base to the shareholder of other shares owned by it in the acquiring company.

New subsection 40(3.6) applies to dispositions that take place after April 26, 1995, subject to certain exceptions. These are found in clause 247 of this bill, and generally exclude transactions in progress before April 27, 1995. Readers should refer to the notes to clause 247 for more detail.

Subclause 89(7)

Additions to Taxable Canadian Property

ITA

40(9)

As a result of changes to the definition of "taxable Canadian property" in paragraph 115(1)(b) of the Act, certain properties acquired before April 26, 1995 will have become taxable Canadian properties on that date. New subsection 40(9) of the Act sets out a rule for computing a taxpayer's gain or loss on such a property. The rule prorates the amount of the gain or loss determined without

reference to the subsection, according to the number of months the taxpayer held the property before May 1995.

New subsection 40(9) applies after April 26, 1995.

Clause 90

Exchanges of Property

ITA

44

Section 44 of the Act allows a taxpayer to defer the recognition of a capital gain on property under certain conditions.

Subclause 90(1)

ITA

44(1)

Subsection 44(1) of the Act allows a taxpayer who realizes a capital gain on the disposition of certain property to defer the gain to the extent that the taxpayer reinvests the proceeds of disposition in a replacement property within a certain period of time.

This amendment to subsection 44(1) is consequential on the amendments to subsection 44(5) of the Act. Generally, the condition in subsection 44(1) requiring a taxpayer to acquire a property as a replacement for the taxpayer's former property, is transferred to subsection 44(5). For additional details see the commentary on the amendments to subsection 44(5).

This amendment applies to dispositions of former properties that occur after the 1993 taxation year.

Subclause 90(2)

ITA

44(5)

Subsection 44(5) of the Act describes the conditions under which a capital property acquired by a taxpayer will be a replacement property for the purposes of subsection 44(1) of the Act.

Subsection 44(5) is amended in two ways. First, new paragraph 44(5)(a) of the Act provides that a particular property will not be considered to be a replacement property unless it is reasonable to conclude that the property was acquired by the taxpayer to replace the former property.

Second, former paragraph 44(5)(a), which is new paragraph 44(5)(a.1) of the Act, is clarified to refer to the acquired property being "used by the taxpayer or a person related to the taxpayer" for the same or a similar use to which the taxpayer or a person related to the taxpayer put the former property. A property acquired by a taxpayer is not necessarily denied replacement property treatment simply because it is used by a related person rather than by the taxpayer. This can occur, for example, where a taxpayer rents the acquired property to a related person who uses it in the same or similar business. For additional details, see the commentary on the amendments to subsections 13(4) and (4.1) and subsections 14(6) and (7) of the Act.

These amendments apply to dispositions of former properties occurring after the 1993 taxation year.

Clause 91

Gain when Small Business Corporation Becomes Public

ITA

48.1(1)(a)(ii)

Section 48.1 of the Act allows the owner of qualified small business corporation shares to use the capital gains exemption under subsection 110.6(2.1) of the Act in respect of those shares when the

corporation becomes a public corporation because its shares are listed on a prescribed stock exchange in Canada. Such a shareholder may elect to be treated as having disposed of the shares immediately before the change in the corporation's status, in order to realize all or any part of any latent capital gain on the shares. The shareholder is then treated as having reacquired the shares at a cost equal to their deemed proceeds of disposition.

Subsection 48.1(1) is amended as a consequence of a change in the definition of "Canadian-controlled private corporation" (CCPC) in subsection 125(7) of the Act. In order to be a small business corporation as defined in subsection 248(1) of the Act, a corporation must, among other things, be a CCPC. Since the revised CCPC definition will deny CCPC status not only to any corporation any of the shares of which are listed on a Canadian exchange, but also one with shares listed on a foreign exchange, such a corporation will no longer qualify as a small business corporation, and its shares will no longer be eligible for the capital gains exemption. The amended version of subparagraph 48.1(1)(a)(ii) of the Act ensures that the election under section 48.1 is available in such a case.

Not only will shareholders of corporations that are newly listed on prescribed Canadian or foreign exchanges be able to make the election, but also those whose corporations were already listed on foreign exchanges on January 1, 1996, when the revised CCPC definition takes effect. If a corporation's shares were listed on that date, and the corporation was a small business corporation on December 31, 1995, an election under section 48.1 will be treated as having been made in a timely manner provided it is made before the end of the third month following the month in which this amendment receives Royal Assent.

Clause 92

Convertible Property

ITA

51(1)

Section 51 of the Act generally permits a tax-deferred transfer of property where a taxpayer exchanges capital property that is a share or a convertible bond, debenture or note of a corporation for capital property that is another share of the capital stock of the corporation. This subsection is amended to ensure that the exchange is made with the corporation and not with another shareholder of the corporation. This amendment applies to exchanges that occur after June 20, 1996 other than exchanges that occur before 1997 pursuant to agreements in writing made on or before June 20, 1996.

Clause 93

Cost of Shares to Subsidiary

ITA

52(7)

Section 52 of the Act sets out rules for determining the cost of certain property for the purposes of measuring any gain or loss on its disposition. Subsection 52(7) of the Act applies where a corporation disposes of Canadian branch property to its subsidiary wholly-owned corporation under special rules provided in Part XIV of the Act. This provision is amended, as a consequence of changes to Part XIV, to update its reference to subsection 219(1) of the Act and to extend to dispositions other than those to subsidiary wholly-owned corporations. For more information on the transfers to which subsection 52(7) applies, readers should consult the notes to amended subsection 219(1).

This amendment applies to taxation years that begin after 1995.

Clause 94**Adjustments to Cost Base**

ITA

53

Section 53 of the Act sets out rules for determining the adjusted cost base of capital property for the purposes of calculating any capital gain or loss on its disposition.

Subclauses 94(1) and (2)

ITA

53(1)(f.1), (f.11) and (f.2)

Paragraph 53(1)(f.1) of the Act provides for an increase in computing the adjusted cost base to a taxable Canadian corporation of property transferred to the corporation, equal to the capital loss denied to the transferor because of paragraphs 40(2)(e) or (e.1) or subsection 85(4) of the Act. Paragraph 53(1)(f.11) of the Act provides that a capital loss denied under paragraph 40(2)(e.1) on the transfer of a property is, to the extent that it is not reflected under paragraph 53(1)(f.1), similarly added to the adjusted cost base to the transferee of the property. Paragraph 53(1)(f.2) of the Act simply records within subsection 53(1) the adjusted cost base addition provided under paragraph 85(4)(b) of the Act – that is, where subsection 85(4) applies to deny a loss on a disposition of property to a corporation and instead adds the amount of the loss to the cost to the transferor of shares in the corporation.

The amendments to these paragraphs limit the application of references to paragraphs 40(2)(e) and subsection 85(4) to cases in which the property in question was acquired before 1996, reflecting the repeal of those provisions with respect to property acquired after 1995. In addition, paragraph 53(1)(f.2) is amended to add a reference to new paragraph 40(3.6)(b) of the Act, which is described above in commentary relating to amendments to section 40 of the Act.

Subclause 94(3)

ITA

53(1)(r)

New paragraph 53(1)(r) of the Act is added consequential on the elimination of the \$100,000 lifetime capital gains exemption for gains that are realized after February 22, 1994 and the introduction of the mechanism in subsection 110.6(19) of the Act for recognizing gains accrued to the end of that day. Where an individual recognizes a capital gain accrued to that time on an interest in, or a share of the capital stock of, a flow-through entity (as defined in subsection 39.1(1) of the Act), the amount of the gain is credited to a special account referred to as the individual's exempt capital gains balance in respect of the entity. Claims may be made against this account to reduce gains that are flowed out to the individual by the entity for taxation years that end before 2005 and gains realized on dispositions of interests in or shares of the entity for those years.

New paragraph 53(1)(r) increases an individual's adjusted cost base of each interest in, or share of the capital stock of, a flow-through entity described in any of paragraphs (a) to (f) of the flow-through entity definition by a pro rata portion of the amount of the individual's unused exempt capital gains balance in respect of the entity where the individual disposes of all interests in and shares of the capital stock of the entity. For the purpose of determining the unused portion of the individual's exempt capital gains balance in respect of the entity, the balance for the year is reduced by the total of the total of all reductions in the year in capital gains because of the balance and 4/3 of the total of all reductions in the year in taxable capital gains or business income because of the balance that arise because of dispositions by the individual or because of dispositions by the entity that are flowed out to the individual.

New paragraph 53(1)(r) will benefit individuals in circumstances in which interests in or shares of a flow-through entity have declined in value since February 22, 1994. New paragraph 53(1)(r) is available only in respect of dispositions before 2005. After 2004, paragraph 53(1)(p) of the Act increases the adjusted cost base of the individual's remaining interests in, or shares of the capital stock of, a flow-through entity by the unused portion of the individual's exempt capital gains balance in respect of the entity at that time.

New subsection 53(1)(r) applies to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 94(4)

ITA

53(2)(c)(i)(C)

Subparagraph 53(2)(c)(i) of the Act reduces a taxpayer's adjusted cost base of a partnership interest by the taxpayer's share of losses of the partnership that are not included in the taxpayer's limited partnership losses. Clause 53(2)(c)(i)(C) of the Act provides that any loss of the partnership is to be determined without reference to subsections 112(3.1) and (4.2) of the Act. Under those subsections, a taxpayer's share of a partnership loss from the disposition of corporate shares can be reduced by certain dividends received by the taxpayer on the shares. Clause 53(2)(c)(i)(C) is amended in two respects.

First, the reference to subsection 112(4.2) is changed to a reference to subsection 112(4.2) as it read in its application to dispositions of property before April 27, 1995. This modification is necessary because, effective for dispositions of property after April 26, 1995, amended subsection 112(4.2) does not apply to partnership losses.

Second, the clause is amended consequential upon the amendment to subsection 100(4) of the Act which provides that a loss from the disposition of an interest in the partnership may be reduced where the interest is held by another partnership. Amended clause 53(2)(c)(i)(C) provides that in computing a taxpayer's adjusted cost base of an interest in the partnership which disposed of the interest in the other partnership, the loss arising from the disposition is to be determined without reference to the loss reduction under subsection 100(4). Therefore, the full amount of any loss arising from the disposition of an interest in a partnership is taken into account in computing the adjusted cost base of a partnership interest under subparagraph 53(2)(c)(i).

This amendment applies after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 94(5)

ITA

53(2)(c)(i.3)

Subparagraph 53(2)(c)(i.3) of the Act provides for a decrease in the adjusted cost base of a taxpayer's interest in a partnership to the extent of any limited-recourse indebtedness of the taxpayer that can reasonably be considered to have been used to acquire the partnership interest. This paragraph is amended to exclude from its application partnership interests that are tax shelter investments, consequential on the introduction of new section 143.2 of the Act. New section 143.2 provides for the reduction of the amount of certain expenditures of a taxpayer to the extent that a "limited-recourse amount" can reasonably be considered to relate to the expenditure (e.g., in respect of a taxpayer's tax shelter investment). For further details, reference may be made to the commentary on new section 143.2.

Generally, this amendment applies to indebtedness of a taxpayer arising after September 26, 1994.

Subclause 94(6)**Recomputation of Adjusted Cost Base on Transfers and Deemed Dispositions**

ITA

53(4)

Subsection 53(4) of the Act provides rules that affect the computation of the adjusted cost base to a taxpayer of any "specified property" (as defined in section 54 of the Act). The rules in subsection 53(4) apply where the proceeds of disposition of a specified property are determined under any one of a number of provisions in the Act set out in the subsection. Where this is the case and the adjusted cost base of the specified property was reduced under paragraph 53(2)(g.1) of the Act as a consequence of a forgiveness of debt, subsection 53(4) generally provides for the adjusted cost base to continue to be reduced under that paragraph. The only significance of this subsection is with respect to the potential future application of section 80.03 of the Act which, in certain cases, recaptures reductions previously taken under paragraph 53(2)(g.1) in computing the

adjusted cost base of specified property on a future disposition of such property.

Subsection 53(4) is amended to eliminate the reference in the subsection to paragraph 85.1(1)(a) of the Act, which covers share-for-share exchanges. This means that reductions made under paragraph 53(2)(g.1) in computing the adjusted cost base to a transferor of shares exchanged under paragraph 85.1(1)(a) will no longer be of any relevance. The change recognizes that section 85.1 of the Act involves arm's length transactions and that a transferee may not be able to obtain information with respect to adjustments under paragraph 53(2)(g.1).

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Subclause 94(7)

Recomputation of Adjusted Cost Base on Other Transfer

ITA
53(5)

Subsection 53(5) of the Act applies where specified property is disposed of by a person or a partnership (referred to below as the "vendor") to another person or partnership (referred to below as the "transferee") with whom the vendor does not deal at arm's length, or with whom the vendor would not deal at arm's length if the assumptions set out in paragraph 80(2)(j) of the Act were made. Where this is the case, and subsection 53(4) of the Act does not apply to the disposition, there is deducted under subsection 53(5) in computing the adjusted cost base to the transferee, the amount, if any, by which

- the total amounts previously deducted under paragraph 53(2)(g.1) of the Act in computing the adjusted cost base to the vendor of that property

exceeds

- the capital gain from the disposition of that property, determined without reference to subsection 100(2) of the Act and any reserves claimed by the vendor.

Any amount deducted under subsection 53(5) in computing the adjusted cost base of a property is also added at the same time under this subsection in computing that adjusted cost base.

Subsection 53(5) is amended to provide that, for the purpose of that subsection, a right referred in paragraph 251(5)(b) of the Act that is a right of the transferee to acquire the specified property from the vendor or a right of the transferee to acquire other property as part of a transaction or event or series of transactions and events that includes the disposition of the specified property will not create a non-arm's length relationship between the vendor and the transferee.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Clause 95

Capital Gains and Losses - Definitions

ITA

54

"superficial loss"

Section 54 of the Act contains various definitions that apply for the purposes of subdivision C – Taxable Capital Gains and Allowable Capital Losses. One of the definitions found in section 54 is that of "superficial loss". Pursuant to paragraph 40(2)(g) of the Act, a taxpayer's loss from the disposition of property, to the extent that it is a superficial loss, is considered to be nil.

The amendments to this definition delete the description, within the definition itself, of the group of persons and partnerships whose connection with a taxpayer would render any loss on the transfer of property by the taxpayer to a member of that group a superficial loss. As amended, the definition will apply where the taxpayer is

"affiliated" with the transferee – using the tests set out in new section 251.1 of the Act. (See the commentary on section 251.1 for further information.)

The amendments also add the following to the list of exclusions from the superficial loss definition:

- a disposition by a corporation whose control is acquired within the following 30 days;
- a disposition by a person who becomes or ceases to be exempt from tax under Part I of the Act within the following 30 days; and
- any disposition to which new subsection 40(3.4) of the Act applies (see the commentary on that subsection for further details), or to which subsection 69(5) of the Act applies.

The acquisition of a right to acquire property may give rise to a superficial loss. The amendments to the definition provide that a right to acquire a property (other than a right that is security for a debt or similar obligation) is treated for this purpose as a property that is identical to the property.

Finally, the reference to subsection 85(4) of the Act is removed from the definition to reflect the fact that the subsection is being repealed.

These amendments apply to dispositions of property that take place after April 26, 1995, subject to certain exemptions. These are found in clause 247 of this bill, and generally exclude transactions in progress before April 27, 1995. Readers may refer to the notes to clause 247 for more detail.

Clause 96

Avoidance

ITA

55

Section 55 of the Act deals with certain tax avoidance transactions.

Subclause 96(1)

ITA

55(1)

"permitted redemption"

Subsection 55(1) of the Act contains definitions that are relevant for the purpose of section 55 of the Act. The definition "permitted redemption" is relevant in determining whether paragraph 55(3)(b) of the Act will apply to protect a dividend received in the course of a divisive corporate reorganization from the application of subsection 55(2) of the Act.

Paragraph (a) of the definition "permitted redemption" is amended, effective for dividends received after February 21, 1994, to include the dividend resulting from a redemption or purchase for cancellation by the distributing corporation of all shares of its capital stock owned, immediately before the distribution, by a transferee corporation in relation to the distributing corporation.

Paragraph (b) of the definition "permitted redemption" is amended, effective for dividends received after February 21, 1994, to include not only the dividend resulting from a redemption or purchase for cancellation of shares of the capital stock of a transferee corporation held by a distributing corporation, but also the dividend resulting from a redemption or purchase for cancellation of shares of the capital stock of a corporation that immediately after the redemption or purchase is a wholly owned subsidiary of the transferee corporation. This change is intended to allow for the indirect distribution of property to a transferee corporation via a transfer to its subsidiary which, after the transfer and as part of the reorganization, is wound up into the transferee corporation.

Subclause 96(2)

ITA

55(1)

"safe-income determination time"

A new term "safe-income determination time" which is relevant for the purposes of new subsection 55(2) and paragraph 55(5)(a) of the Act is added to subsection 55(1) of the Act effective for dividends

received after June 20, 1996. The safe-income determination time for a transaction or event or a series of transactions or events means the time that is the earlier of the time that is immediately before the payment of a dividend as part of the transaction, event or series and the time that is immediately after the earliest disposition or increase in interest described in any of new subparagraphs 55(3)(a)(i) to (v) of the Act.

Subclause 96(3)

Deemed Proceeds or Capital Gain

ITA 55(2)

Subsection 55(2) of the Act is an anti-avoidance provision directed against arrangements designed to use the inter-corporate dividend exemption to unduly reduce a capital gain on a sale of shares. It treats the dividend in these situations either as proceeds from the sale of the shares or as a capital gain and not as a dividend received by the corporation.

Subsection 55(2) does not apply where the gain that has been reduced can be attributed to the share's portion of the income ("safe income") earned or realized by any corporation after 1971 and before the transaction or event or the commencement of the series of transactions or events that results in a disposition of property, or an increase in corporate interest, referred to in paragraph 55(3)(a) of the Act. Safe income is protected from the application of subsection 55(2) because this income has been subject to corporate income tax and should therefore be allowed to be paid as a tax-free dividend to other Canadian corporations.

Subsection 55(2) of the Act is amended, applicable to dividends received after June 20, 1996 to provide a new later cut-off point for the period (currently at the time of the transaction or the commencement of the series) for determining safe-income. The new cut-off point is referred to as the "safe-income determination time" for the transaction or event or the series of transactions or events and is defined in subsection 55(1) of the Act. Reference may be made to the commentary on subsection 55(1) for further information on the

meaning of "safe-income determination time". Subsection 55(2) is also amended to add a reference to subsection 112(2) of the Act.

New subsection 55(2) of the Act provides that safe income of a corporation will be determined as income earned or realized by a corporation after 1971 and before the "safe-income determination time" as defined in subsection 55(1). Safe income now includes the income arising up to the earlier of the time that is immediately after the earliest disposition or increase in interest described in any of subparagraphs 55(3)(a)(i) to (v) and the time that is immediately before the earliest time that a dividend is paid as part of the transaction, event or series. New subsection 55(2) applies to dividends received after June 20, 1996.

Subclause 96(4)

Application

ITA

55(3)(a),(3.01)(a) to (e)

Subsection 55(3) of the Act sets out circumstances in which subsection 55(2) of the Act does not apply to dividends.

Paragraph 55(3)(a) of the Act provides an exemption from the application of subsection 55(2) for dividends received in certain related-party transactions. In particular, paragraph 55(3)(a) exempts dividends received as part of a series of transactions or events that does not result in a disposition of property to, or a significant increase in interest in any corporation of, any person who is not related to the corporation that received the dividend.

Paragraph 55(3)(a) is amended to allow for, amongst other things, certain dispositions of money as well as of property for proceeds equal to the fair market value at the time of disposition. Therefore a deemed dividend arising on a redemption of shares received on a transfer of property under section 85 of the Act to a related corporation for sale outside the related group may now be exempted from the application of subsection 55(2) as may a disposition of money on the payment of dividends.

In particular, subsection 55(2) will not apply to dividends received by a corporation (the "dividend recipient") if as part of a transaction or

event or a series of transactions or events in which the dividend was received there was not at any particular time

- a disposition of property to a person or partnership who was an unrelated person immediately before the particular time other than a disposition of
 - (1) money for the payment of dividends or the reduction of paid-up capital of shares, and
 - (2) property for proceeds that are not less than its fair market value at the time of disposition;
- a increase in the total direct interest in any corporation of one or more persons or partnerships who were unrelated persons immediately before the particular time unless the increase resulted from a disposition of shares of a corporation for proceeds of disposition that are not less than the fair market value of those shares at the time of the increase;
- a disposition to a person or partnership who was an unrelated person immediately before the particular time of shares of the corporation that paid the dividend (the "dividend payer") or property more than 10 per cent of the fair market value of which was at any time during the series derived from the shares of the dividend payer;
- after the time the dividend was received, a disposition to a person or partnership who was an unrelated person immediately before the particular time of shares of the dividend recipient or property more than 10 per cent of the fair market value of which at any time during the series is derived from shares of the dividend recipient; and
- a significant increase in the total of all direct interests in the dividend payer of one or more persons or partnerships who were unrelated persons.

New paragraph 55(3.01)(a) of the Act sets out the meaning of "unrelated person" for the purpose of new paragraph 55(3)(a). An "unrelated person" means a person (other than the dividend recipient) to whom the dividend recipient is not related or a partnership any

member of which (other than the dividend recipient) is not related to the dividend recipient.

As well, new subsection 55(3.01) of the Act sets out for the purposes of new paragraph 55(3)(a) the consequences of an amalgamation of corporations or a winding-up of a subsidiary corporation to which subsection 88(1) of the Act applies. New paragraph 55(3.01)(b) of the Act provides that the corporation formed on an amalgamation is treated as a continuation of its predecessors. New paragraph 55(3.01)(c) of the Act provides that when there is a winding-up of a subsidiary corporation into its parent to which subsection 88(1) of the Act applies, the parent is treated as a continuation of the subsidiary.

New paragraph 55(3.01)(d) of the Act provides that the proceeds of disposition, for the purposes of applying the tests in new paragraph 55(3)(a), will be determined without reference to "paragraph 55(2)(a)" in paragraph (j) of the definition of "proceeds of disposition" in section 54 of the Act.

New paragraph 55(3.01)(e) of the Act sets out for the purpose of paragraph 55(3)(a) of the Act the circumstances in which a non-resident will be treated as having disposed of property for proceeds that are less than its fair market value. This will be the case where the gain or loss from the disposition (at fair market value) is recognized for purposes of taxation neither in Canada nor in the non-resident's home country.

The following examples illustrate the application of new paragraph 55(3)(a):

EXAMPLE 1 ... ARM'S LENGTH ASSET SALE

A corporation (Buyerco) wishes to acquire from an unrelated corporation (Sellco) a particular asset (the target asset). Sellco transfers, on a tax-deferred basis under section 85 of the Act, the target asset to Buyerco. In consideration for the transferred asset Buyerco issues to Sellco preferred shares with an adjusted cost base to Sellco equal to the tax cost of the transferred asset immediately before the transfer. The paid-up capital of the preferred shares does not exceed their adjusted cost base to Sellco which is the adjusted cost base of the transferred property and the

redemption amount of the preferred shares is equal to the fair market value of the transferred property. Such preferred shares with a high redemption value and low paid-up capital are commonly referred to as "High/Low Shares".

Result: Buyerco and Sellco are not related and the disposition of the target asset was not for proceeds of disposition equal to the fair market value at the time of disposition. The test in subparagraph 55(3)(a)(i) is not met. The dividends arising on the redemption by Buyerco of the High/Low Shares are therefore not eligible for the exemption in paragraph 55(3)(a).

EXAMPLE 2 ... IN-HOUSE LOSS UTILIZATION

A corporation (Parentco) has two wholly-owned subsidiary corporations (Profitco) and (Lossco). Profitco owns, amongst other things, all the shares of a subsidiary corporation (Target) which it wishes to sell to an unrelated person. The fair market value of the shares of Target exceeds their adjusted cost base to Profitco and therefore Parentco wants the gain which will arise on the disposition of those shares to be realized in Lossco rather than Profitco. Profitco transfers, on a tax-deferred basis under section 85 of the Act, the Target shares to Lossco in consideration for High/Low Shares of Lossco. Lossco then sells the shares of Target to the unrelated person for proceeds of disposition equal to the fair market value of the shares. The High/Low shares of Lossco are then redeemed.

Result: All five of the tests in new paragraph 55(3)(a) are met and therefore the dividends arising on the redemption by Lossco of the High/Low shares are not subject to subsection 55(2).

EXAMPLE 3 ... A REDEMPTION OF A MINORITY SHAREHOLDER INTEREST

A corporation (ACo) and an unrelated corporation (BCo) own 60 per cent and 40 per cent respectively of a third corporation (XCo). XCo redeems its shares held by BCo.

Result: Any dividends arising on the redemption by XCo of its shares held by BCo are not eligible for the exemption in paragraph 55(3)(a).

- *The redemption of the XCo shares held by BCo is a disposition of property to an unrelated person for proceeds of disposition less than fair market value at the time of disposition. The test in new subparagraph 55(3)(a)(i) is not met;*
- *There is a significant increase in ACo's (unrelated person's) total direct interest in XCo (the dividend payer) as a result of a disposition (redemption) of the shares of XCo for proceeds of disposition less than fair market value. The test in new subparagraph 55(3)(a)(ii) is not met;*
- *There is a disposition of the shares of XCo to XCo which is a person unrelated to BCo (the dividend recipient). The test in new subparagraph 55(3)(a)(iii) is not met; and*
- *There is a significant increase in the total direct interest in XCo by ACo, a person unrelated to BCo. The test in new subparagraph 55(3)(a)(v) is not met.*

EXAMPLE 4 ... A REDEMPTION OF A MAJORITY SHAREHOLDER INTEREST

A corporation (ACo) and an unrelated corporation (BCo) own 40 per cent and 60 per cent respectively of the shares of a third corporation (XCo). XCo redeems its shares held by BCo.

Result: Any dividends arising on the redemption by XCo of its shares held by BCo are not eligible for the exemption in paragraph 55(3)(a).

- *There is a significant increase in ACo's (an unrelated person's) direct interest in XCo (the dividend payer) as a result of a disposition of the shares of XCo for proceeds of disposition less than fair market value. The test in new subparagraph 55(3)(a)(ii) is not met; and*
- *There is a significant increase in the total direct interest in XCo by ACo which is a person unrelated to BCo. The test in new subparagraph 55(3)(a)(v) is not met.*

EXAMPLE 5 ... A CORPORATE REORGANIZATION AND ARM'S LENGTH ASSET SALE

A corporation (BuyerCo) owns all the shares of another corporation (SubCo). BuyerCo acquires all the shares of a third corporation (Target) for fair market value. Target owns all the shares of two corporations - T1Subco and T2Subco. Target transfers, on a tax-deferred basis under section 85 of the Act, all the shares of T2Subco to SubCo in consideration for High/Low Shares of SubCo. SubCo subsequently redeems the High/Low Shares. Target sells the shares of T1Subco to a third party for proceeds of disposition equal to fair market value at the time of the disposition.

Result: The dividends arising on the redemption by SubCo of its shares held by Target are not subject to subsection 55(2). The tests in new paragraph 55(3)(a) are met.

EXAMPLE 6 ... A TRANSFER OF ASSETS WITHIN A GROUP OF RELATED CORPORATIONS

The shares of a corporation (ACo) are owned 49 per cent by XCo and 51 per cent by MCo. ACo owns all the shares of SubCo. The shares of another corporation BCo are owned 49 per cent by YCo and 51 per cent by MCo. ACo transfers, on a tax-deferred basis under section 85 of the Act, all the shares of SubCo to BCo in consideration for High/Low Shares of BCo. BCo redeems its shares held by ACo.

Result: The dividends arising on the redemption by BCo of its shares held by ACo are not subject to subsection 55(2). This was not a disposition of property to an unrelated party; therefore, the test in new subparagraph 55(3)(a)(i) is met. YCo has increased its indirect interest in SubCo but not its direct interest in SubCo; therefore the test in new subparagraph 55(3)(a)(ii) is met. The tests in new subparagraphs 55(3)(a)(iii), (iv) and (v) are also met.

EXAMPLE 7 ... INTERNAL CORPORATE REORGANIZATION

MCo is a public corporation that is widely held. MCo owns all the shares of two other corporations YCo and XCo. On July 15, 1996, MCo incorporates Topco and transfers, on a tax-deferred

basis under section 85, all the shares of XCo to Topco in consideration for High/Low Shares of Topco. Each share of MCo held by the public is exchanged for a corresponding share of Topco. Topco is now the parent of MCo. Topco redeems the High/Low Shares.

Result: The dividends arising on the redemption by Topco of its shares held by MCo are subject to subsection 55(2). There is a significant increase in the total direct interest of the former shareholders of MCo in Topco, the dividend payer. The tests in new subparagraphs 55(3)(a)(ii) and (v) are not met.

Subject to specified grandfathering set out in (i) and (ii) below, new paragraph 55(3)(a) and new subsection 55(3.01) apply to dividends received by a corporation after February 21, 1994. Grandfathering is provided for dividends received in the following circumstances:

(i) dividends received before June 20, 1996 or under an arrangement substantially advanced, as evidenced in writing, before June 20, 1996 provided item (ii) below does not apply;

and

(ii) dividends received on shares issued before June 20, 1996 provided the corporation elects in writing before the end of the fourth month after the month in which new paragraph 55(3)(a) and new subsection 55(3.01) become law or in its tax return for the year in which the dividend was received.

Where the circumstances in item (i) exist, new subparagraphs 55(3)(a)(ii) and (v) will be read as:

"(ii) a significant increase (other than as a consequence of a disposition of shares of the capital stock of a corporation for proceeds of disposition that are not less than their fair market value) in the interest in any corporation of one or more persons who were unrelated persons immediately before the particular time,"

and

"(v) a significant increase in the interest in the dividend payer of one or more persons who were unrelated persons immediately before the particular time; or"

Where the circumstances in item (ii) exist, the Act will be read without reference to new subsection 55(3.01) and paragraph 55(3)(a) will be read as:

"(a) unless the dividend was received as part of a transaction or event or series of transactions or events that resulted in

(i) a disposition of any property to a person with whom the dividend recipient was dealing at arm's length, or

(ii) a significant increase in the interest in any corporation of any person with whom the dividend recipient was dealing at arm's length; or"

As well, where the circumstances in item (ii) exist, subsection 55(4) and paragraph 55(5)(e) will be read as follows:

1. Subsection 55(4) will be read as it read for dividends before February 22, 1994, and
2. Paragraph 55(5)(e) will provide that in determining whether two or more persons deal with each other at arm's length
 - a brother and a sister will be treated as dealing with each other at arm's length and not related to each other, and
 - persons who are otherwise related to each other solely because of a right referred to in paragraph 251(5)(b) of the Act will be treated as not related to each other.

Subclause 96(6)

ITA

55(3.1)(c)

A dividend received by a corporation to which subsection 55(2) of the Act would, but for the butterfly reorganization exemption in paragraph 55(3)(b) of the Act, apply will be denied the protection of

paragraph 55(3)(b) under subsection 55(3.1) of the Act where the conditions set out in any of paragraphs 55(3.1)(a) to (d) exist.

Paragraph 55(3.1)(c) of the Act denies the protection of paragraph 55(3)(b) for a dividend received by a transferee corporation where, as part of the series of transactions or events that include the receipt of the dividend, certain described property with a fair market value greater than 10 per cent of the fair market value, at the time of distribution, of the property received by the transferee corporation on the distribution of property as part of the butterfly reorganization, becomes property of a partnership or of a person who is not related to the transferee. The described property is composed of the following three types:

1. property received by the transferee on the distribution;
2. property more than 10 per cent of the fair market value of which is attributable to distributed property; and
3. property to which more than 10 per cent of the fair market value of the distributed property can be attributed.

Clause 55(3.1)(c)(ii)(B) of the Act is amended to clarify that the 10 per cent fair market value test for the second type of property is to be determined by reference to distributed property other than money and indebtedness that is not convertible into other property. The amendment also ensures that the second type of property includes property the value of which is attributable to property described in the third type. New clause 55(3.1)(c)(ii)(B) of the Act applies to dividends received after April 26, 1995 except that the clause will be read without reference to clause (C) for acquisitions of property before June 20, 1996 or at any time pursuant to a written agreement made before June 20, 1996.

Clause 55(3.1)(c)(ii)(C) is amended applicable to dividends received after April 26, 1995 to alter the description of the third type of property. The third type of property will be composed of property to which the fair market value of the distributed property can be wholly or partly attributed.

Subclause 96(7)

ITA

55(3.1)(d)

A dividend received by a corporation to which subsection 55(2) of the Act would, but for the butterfly reorganization exemption in paragraph 55(3)(b) of the Act, apply will be denied the protection of paragraph 55(3)(b) under subsection 55(3.1) of the Act where the conditions set out in any of paragraphs 55(3.1)(a) to (d) exist.

Paragraph 55(3.1)(d) of the Act denies the protection of paragraph 55(3)(b) for a dividend received by the distributing corporation where, as part of the series of transactions or events that include the receipt of the dividend, certain described property with a fair market value greater than 10 per cent of the fair market value, at the time of distribution, of the property owned by it immediately before the distribution and not disposed of by it on the distribution, is acquired by a partnership or a person who is not related to the distributing corporation.

The described property is composed of the following three types:

1. property retained by the distributing corporation immediately after the distribution;
2. property more than 10 per cent of the fair market value of which is attributable to property retained by the distributing corporation; and
3. property to which more than 10 per cent of the fair market value of the property retained can be attributed.

Clause 55(3.1)(d)(ii)(B) of the Act is amended to clarify that the 10-per-cent fair market value test for the second type of property is to be determined by reference to retained property other than money and indebtedness that is not convertible into other property. The amendment also ensures that the second type of property includes property the value of which is attributable to property described in the third type. Clause 55(3.1)(d)(ii)(B) is also amended to ensure that the wording is consistent with the wording in clause 55(3.1)(c)(ii)(B) of the Act. New clause 55(3.1)(d)(ii)(B) of the Act applies to

dividends received after April 26, 1995 except that the clause will be read without reference to clause (C) for acquisitions of property before June 20, 1996 or at any time pursuant to a written agreement made before June 20, 1996.

Clause 55(3.1)(d)(ii)(C) of the Act is amended applicable to dividends received after April 26, 1995 to make the wording consistent with the wording in clause 55(3.1)(c)(ii)(C) of the Act.

Subclause 96(8)

ITA
55(3.2)

Subsection 55(3.2) of the Act sets out a number of interpretative rules for the purpose of paragraph 55(3.1)(b) of the Act. New paragraph 55(3.2)(h) of the Act provides that each corporation that is a shareholder and specified shareholder of a distributing corporation at any time during the course of a series of transactions or events, a part of which includes a distribution, will be treated as a transferee corporation in relation to the distributing corporation. New paragraph 55(3.2)(h) applies to dividends received after June 20, 1996 other than dividends received in the course of a reorganization that was carried out pursuant to a series of transactions or events substantially advanced, as evidenced in writing, before June 21, 1996 or that was required on June 20, 1996 to be carried out pursuant to a written agreement made before June 21, 1996. For this purpose, a reorganization is considered not to be required to be carried out where the parties to the agreement can be relieved of the requirement if there is a change to the Act.

EXAMPLE

The shares of a Canadian corporation (ZCo) are owned 50 per cent by XCo and 50 per cent by YCo. XCo is owned 50 per cent by ACo and 50 per cent by BCo. A third corporation, PCo, acquires the shares of XCo from ACo and BCo. During the course of a butterfly reorganization, ZCo distributes 50 per cent of its property to YCo. After the reorganization, XCo owns all the shares of ZCo the distributing corporation.

This reorganization does not qualify for the butterfly exemption in paragraph 55(3)(b) because of the application of subparagraph 55(3.1)(b)(ii) and new paragraph 55(3.2)(h). Under new paragraph 55(3.2)(h), XCo is a transferee corporation in relation to the distributing corporation, ZCo. Control of XCo was acquired by PCo during the course of the series of transactions which included the distribution of ZCo's property to YCo.

Subclause 96(9)

Interpretation of "Specified Shareholder" Changed

ITA

55(3.3)

New subsection 55(3.3) of the Act provides that for the purposes of subparagraph 55(3.1)(b)(i) and paragraph 55(3.2)(h) of the Act, the definition of "specified shareholder" in subsection 248(1) of the Act is to be read as including a reference to "or of any other corporation that is related to the corporation and that has a significant direct or indirect interest in any issued shares of any class of the capital stock of the corporation" rather than the reference to "or of any corporation that is related to the corporation". New subsection 55(3.3) ensures that in determining whether a person is a specified shareholder of a particular corporation for the purposes of subparagraph 55(3.1)(b)(i) and paragraph 55(3.2)(h), only shareholdings "above" the particular corporation and not "below" it are to be considered. In other words, in determining a person's specified shareholder status in a particular corporation, you consider the person's shareholdings in related corporations that have a significant direct or indirect interest in the particular corporation.

New subsection 55(3.3) applies to dividends received after 1996.

Subclause 96(10)

ITA

55(5)(a)

Subsection 55(5) of the Act sets out application provisions for the purposes of section 55 of the Act. Paragraph 55(5)(a) of the Act provides that the portion of the capital gain that is attributable to

income expected to be earned or realized by a corporation after the receipt of a dividend referred to in subsection 55(2) of the Act, shall be deemed to be a portion of a capital gain attributable to anything other than income. Paragraph 55(5)(a) is amended for dividends received after June 20, 1996 as a consequence of the changes to subsection 55(2) of the Act and the introduction of the new term "safe-income determination time" in subsection 55(1) of the Act. Amended paragraph 55(5)(a) provides that the portion of the capital gain that is attributable to income expected to be earned or realized by a corporation after the safe-income determination time will be considered to be a portion of a capital gain attributable to anything other than income.

Subclause 96(11)

ITA

55(5)(c)

Paragraph 55(5)(c) of the Act provides that the income earned or realized by a corporation for the period in which it was a private corporation is its income otherwise determined for the period without deducting amounts under section 37.1 or paragraph 20(1)(gg) of the *Income Tax Act*, chapter 148 of the Revised Statutes of Canada, 1952. Paragraph 55(5)(c) is amended, effective for the 1995 and subsequent taxation years as a consequence of the repeal of section 37.1 of the Act.

Clause 97

Amounts Included in Income

ITA

56(1)

Section 56 of the Act lists certain types of income that are required to be included in computing the income of a taxpayer from sources other than property, business and employment.

Subparagraph 56(1)(a)(iv) of the Act is amended to add a reference to the *Unemployment Insurance Act* (to ensure that amounts received

under that Act remain taxable) and to the relevant parts of the new *Employment Insurance Act* under which comparable benefits are paid.

Paragraph 56(1)(b) of the Act contains a formula to determine whether certain child support amounts are to be included in the income of the recipient. The variable B of the formula represents the child support amounts receivable under agreements or orders after their commencement days. This amendment ensures that amounts receivable on the commencement day of an agreement or order will also be included in the formula.

Subparagraph 56(1)(l)(ii) of the Act is amended to add a reference to the Canada Employment and Immigration Commission and the *Unemployment Insurance Act*, in recognition of the fact that a reimbursement of costs could be in relation to the procedure under that act.

New paragraph 56(1)(r) of the Act requires that certain amounts received as earnings supplements under government-sponsored projects or as financial assistance under programs established by the Canada Employment Insurance Commission or under similar programs established by other government entities or organizations pursuant to agreements with the Commission to be included in computing the recipient's income.

Paragraph 56(1)(u) of the Act is also amended to clarify that it does not apply to payments required to be included in income under another provision of the Act.

The amendments to subparagraphs 56(1)(a)(iv) and 56(1)(l)(ii) are deemed to have come into force on June 30, 1996. The amendment to paragraph 56(1)(b) applies to amounts received after 1996. New subparagraphs 56(1)(r)(ii) and (iii) come into force on June 30, 1996, while subparagraph 56(1)(r)(ii) applies to the 1993 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 98

Support Payments

ITA

56.1(1)

Section 56.1 of the Act treats certain support payments made to third parties for the benefit of an individual who is a spouse, former spouse, or a parent of a payer's child as having been received by the individual so that the payments are included in the individual's income. This amendment corrects an error in the French version of the preamble to that section.

This amendment applies to amounts received after 1996.

Clause 99

Other Deductions

ITA

60

Section 60 provides for a variety of deductions in computing income, many of which relate to certain income inclusions required under section 56.

Subclause 99(1)

ITA

60(b)

Paragraph 60(b) of the Act contains a formula to determine whether certain child support may be deducted in computing the payer's income. The variable B of the formula represents the child support amounts payable under agreements or orders after their commencement days. This amendment ensures that amounts payable on the commencement day of an agreement or order will also be included in the formula.

This amendment applies to amounts paid after 1996.

Subclause 99(2)**Transfer of Refund of Premium under RRSP**

ITA

60(1)

An individual is generally required to include in income any amount received out of a deferred income plan, such as a registered retirement savings plan (RRSP) or registered retirement income fund (RRIF). However, if the amount received is an amount described in subparagraph 60(1)(v) of the Act, the individual can claim an offsetting deduction under paragraph 60(1) of the Act up to the lesser of the amount received and the total of any qualifying payments made by the individual. A qualifying payment is a payment made into an RRSP or a RRIF or a payment made to acquire an annuity contract described in subparagraph 60(1)(ii) of the Act.

Three types of annuity contract are described in subparagraph 60(1)(ii). Each one has either a term or guaranteed period that is determined by reference to the age of the taxpayer making the qualifying payment or of the taxpayer's spouse. Subparagraph 60(1)(ii) is amended to clarify that the relevant age in each case is the age in whole years of the relevant person at the time that the annuity is acquired.

Subparagraph 60(1)(ii) is also amended to clarify the length of the guaranteed period in the case of a life annuity described in clause 60(1)(ii)(A) of the Act. Where an annuitant is married, the length of this period cannot exceed 90 years minus the lesser of the age of the annuitant and the age of the annuitant's spouse.

These amendments, which apply to 1989 and subsequent taxation years, make the wording of subparagraph 60(1)(ii) consistent with the wording of new paragraph (c.1) of the definition "qualified investment" in subsection 146(1) of the Act.

Subclauses 99(4),(5) and (7)

ITA

60(n), (o) and (v.1)

Paragraphs 60(n), (o) and (v.1) of the Act are amended to ensure that repayments made under the former *Unemployment Insurance Act* continue to be deductible. This amendment is deemed to have come into force on June 30, 1996.

Subclause 99(6)

RCA Distributions and Dispositions

ITA

60(t) and (u)

Paragraph 60(t) of the Act provides a deduction to offset amounts that a taxpayer is required to include in income under paragraph 56(1)(x) or (z) or subsection 70(2) of the Act in respect of payments from a retirement compensation arrangement (RCA). In general, the deduction is limited to the amount of the taxpayer's undeducted contributions to the RCA plus any amounts paid or received by the taxpayer to acquire or dispose of an interest in the RCA.

Paragraph 60(t) is amended to deal with the transfer of an amount in respect of a taxpayer from one RCA (the "transferor plan") to another RCA (the "transferee plan") under subsection 207.6(7) of the Act. That subsection eliminates any requirement for the taxpayer to include the transferred amount in income under paragraph 56(1)(x) or (z). It also denies the taxpayer any deduction that might otherwise be available under paragraph 8(1)(m.2) of the Act in connection with the payment to the transferee plan or under paragraph 60(t) or (u) in connection with the payment from the transferor plan. (See the commentary under subsection 207.6(7) for further details.)

Paragraph 60(t) is amended so that, when there is a transfer in respect of a taxpayer under subsection 207.6(7), the amount that can be deducted under that paragraph in connection with payments ultimately received from the transferee plan is increased by the portion of the transfer that would have been deductible if the transferred amount had

been paid to the taxpayer. Similarly, the amount that the taxpayer can deduct in connection with payments subsequently received from the transferor plan (in the event the taxpayer retains an interest in the plan) is reduced by the same amount. This allows the relief provided under that paragraph to be carried forward to the transferee plan. Paragraph 60(*t*) is also amended to disregard any other RCA contributions made by way of a transfer under subsection 207.6(7) in determining the amount that can be deducted under that paragraph in connection with the plan.

Paragraph 60(*u*) of the Act provides a deduction to offset amounts that a taxpayer is required to include in income under paragraph 56(1)(*y*) of the Act on disposing of an interest in an RCA. In general, the deduction is limited to the amount of the taxpayer's undeducted contributions plus amounts paid to acquire the interest in the RCA less amounts deducted under paragraph 60(*t*) in connection with the RCA. The amendments to paragraph 60(*u*) are identical to the amendments to paragraph 60(*t*).

These amendments apply to the 1996 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 100

Support Payments

ITA 60.1

Section 60.1 of the Act treats certain support payments to third parties for the benefit of an individual who is a spouse, former spouse or a parent of a payer's child as having been received by that person so that the payments are deductible from the income of the payer. This amendment corrects an error in the French version of the preamble to that section.

This amendment applies to amounts received after 1996.

Clause 101

Deduction for Insolvency

ITA

61.3(1) and (2)

Subsections 61.3(1) and (2) of the Act provide deductions for corporations with respect to amounts included in income under subsection 80(13) of the Act because of the application of the debt forgiveness rules.

Subsections 61.3(1) and (2) are amended to eliminate the reference in the subsections to subsection 80(17) of the Act, strictly as a consequence of the repeal of that subsection.

These amendments apply to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Clause 102

Moving Expenses

ITA

62(3)(f)

Section 62 of the Act provides a deduction for the qualifying moving expenses of an individual who moves to a new residence in Canada in order to take up employment or start a business. Subsection 62(3) of the Act defines moving expenses to include, among other items, taxes imposed on the transfer or registration of title to a new residence where an individual sells an old residence as a result of the move.

This amendment to paragraph 62(3)(f) of the Act, which applies to moving expenses incurred after 1990, clarifies that the deduction in respect of taxes, fees and duties imposed on the transfer or registration of title to a new residence does not include any value-added tax, such as the goods and services tax, imposed on the purchase of that residence.

Clause 103**Child Care Expenses**

ITA

63(3)

Section 63 of the Act provides rules concerning the deductibility of child care expenses in computing an individual's income. Subsection 63(3) of the Act contains the definition "earned income". In any year, an individual is not allowed to deduct child care expenses that exceed two-thirds of earned income for that year.

This amendment to the definition "earned income" adds to that income base amounts included in income under new paragraph 56(1)(r) of the Act. These amounts represent certain employment earnings supplements received under federal government projects.

This amendment applies to 1993 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 104**Exploration and Development Expenses**

ITA

66

Section 66 of the Act provides rules with respect to Canadian and foreign exploration and development expenses.

Subclauses 104(1) and (2)

ITA

66(4)(b)

Subsection 66(4) of the Act sets out the deduction that may be claimed for foreign exploration expenses. The deduction that may be claimed for a taxation year is a minimum of 10 per cent of the undeducted balance of such expenses at the end of the year, but a higher amount (up to the undeducted balance) may be claimed to the

extent of the taxpayer's specified foreign-source resource income. For this purpose, the closing words of paragraph 66(4)(b) of the Act provide that the foreign resource income is determined without reference to deductions under subsections 66(1), (3) and (4), section 65 and subsections 66.1(2) and (3) of the Act.

This amendment, which applies to taxation years that end after May 6, 1974, moves the closing words of paragraph 66(4)(b) to become the closing words of subparagraph 66(4)(b)(ii) of the Act. This clarifies that the rule contained in these closing words applies only for the purpose of computing a taxpayer's specified foreign-source resource income.

Subclause 104(3)

ITA
66(11.4)

Subsection 66(11.4) of the Act applies where there is an acquisition of control of a corporation that was not a principal-business corporation immediately before the 12-month period preceding that acquisition of control. Under this rule, any Canadian or foreign resource property acquired by the corporation in that period is considered to have been acquired at the time control is acquired for the purpose of calculating the corporation's foreign exploration and development expenses, cumulative Canadian development expense and cumulative Canadian oil and gas property expense.

Paragraph 66(11.4)(b) of the Act is amended as a consequence of the introduction of the concept of "affiliated persons" in new section 251.1 of the Act. (See the commentary to new section 251.1 for further information.) Subsection 66(11.4) formerly contained an exception from its application where the property in question was owned before the 12-month period described above by the corporation whose control was acquired, by a partnership of which the corporation was a majority interest partner, or by a person or persons related to the corporation. As amended, this exception will apply where the property was owned by a person that was affiliated with the corporation, within the meaning that would be assigned by new section 251.1 if that section were read without reference to the extended definition of "controlled" in subsection 251.1(2).

Amended subsection 66(11.4) applies after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 104(4)

Early Change of Control

ITA

66(11.5)

Where a corporation referred to in subsection 66(11.4) of the Act was formed shortly before it underwent an acquisition of control, the exception provided in that subsection for transfers among related persons may not apply. Specifically, the acquired property will not be able to meet the test of having been owned by the corporation or by a related person throughout the period that starts immediately before the twelve month period before the acquisition of control and that ends when the corporation acquires the property.

Subsection 66(11.5) of the Act is a rule that ensures the appropriate result under subsection 66(11.4) in such a case. Subsection 66(11.5) treats a newly-formed corporation as having been in existence from the time immediately before the twelve month period to the time immediately after it was formed, and as having been related during that time to the persons to whom it was related from its formation until the acquisition of control.

Subsection 66(11.5) is amended, as a consequence of the amendment of subsection 66(11.4), to use the new test of affiliation rather than the test of being related. This amendment applies to acquisitions of control that occur after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 104(5)

ITA

66(12.66)

Subsections 66(12.6) and (12.601) of the Act permit a principal-business corporation to renounce Canadian exploration expenses (CEE) and Canadian development expenses (CDE) to a flow-through shareholder. A corporation may only renounce CEE or CDE incurred by it on or before the effective date of the renunciation. For the purposes of these subsections, where a number

of stated conditions are met, subsection 66(12.66) of the Act treats CEE and CDE incurred in the first 60 days of a calendar year as having been incurred at the end of the preceding calendar year.

Subsection 66(12.66) is amended so that this "lookback" rule also applies for the purposes of paragraph 66(12.602)(b). Under this paragraph, a corporation may only renounce CDE under subsection 66(12.601) to the extent of the corporation's cumulative CDE on the effective date of the renunciation. The amendment ensures that, where the effective date of the renunciation by a corporation is the last day of a calendar year, CDE incurred in the first 60 days of the following calendar year is taken into account for the purposes of computing cumulative CDE under paragraph 66(12.602)(b) of the Act.

This amendment applies to expenses incurred after 1992.

Subclause 104(6)

ITA

66(12.75)(c)

Subsection 66(12.75) of the Act sets out penalties for the late filing of specified documents and for the late renunciations of resource expenses in connection with flow-through share financings.

In order for a late renunciation to have any effect, the renouncing corporation is required under subsection 66(12.741) of the Act to pay a penalty in respect of the renunciation. A cross reference in paragraph 66(12.75)(c) is amended to ensure that this paragraph applies for the purposes of determining this penalty. The penalty in respect of a late renunciation is equal to the lesser of \$15,000 and the greater of \$100 and .25 per cent of the amount renounced.

This amendment applies to renunciations purported to be made after February 1993.

Subclause 104(7)

ITA

66(15)

"Canadian exploration and development expenses"

Subsection 66(15) of the Act defines "Canadian exploration and development expenses". Under paragraph (c) of the definition, such expenses include a cost incurred before May 7, 1974 for a "Canadian resource property".

The definition is amended to clarify that the cost of Canadian resource property acquired before 1972 is not included as a Canadian exploration and development expense. This amendment, which applies to taxation years that begin after 1984, is consequential on a broadening of the definition "Canadian resource property" in 1985 to include specified property acquired before 1972.

Clause 105**Successor Rules - Acquisition from Tax-Exempt**

ITA

66.6

Subsections 66.6(1) and (2) of the Act provide special exceptions to the resource property successor rules in subsection 29(25) of the *Income Tax Application Rules* (ITAR) and section 66.7 of the Act. The exceptions apply where a corporation has, after July 19, 1985, acquired all or substantially all of the Canadian resource properties of a tax-exempt person. This amendment simplifies and consolidates both subsections. Under amended section 66.6, a corporation that acquires all or substantially all of a tax-exempt's Canadian resources will not be subject to ITAR subsection 29(25) or subsections 66.7(1) to (5) of the Act in respect of that acquisition. The amendment applies to acquisitions that take place after April 26, 1995 other than acquisitions occurring before 1996 that were required by a written agreement made before April 27, 1995.

Clause 106**Exploration and Development Expenses - Successor Rules**

ITA

66.7

Section 66.7 of the Act includes what are commonly known as the "successor rules" with respect to resource properties and expenditures. Under subsection 66.7(10) of the Act, certain of these rules apply in modified form to a corporation that has undergone an acquisition of control or has ceased to be exempt from tax under Part I of the Act on its taxable income.

Subclauses 106(1) to (5)

ITA

66.7(1) to (5)

Subsections 66.7(1) to (5) of the Act allow a corporation to claim deductions with respect to Canadian exploration and development expenses, foreign exploration and development expenses, Canadian exploration expenses, Canadian development expenses and Canadian oil and gas property expenses incurred by one or more other taxpayers, where property has been acquired by the corporation in circumstances to which the successor rules apply.

Paragraphs 66.7(1)(b), (2)(b), (3)(b), (4)(b) and (5)(b) of the Act are amended to eliminate the reference in the paragraphs to subsection 80(17) of the Act, strictly as a consequence of the repeal of that subsection.

These amendments apply to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Subclause 106(6)

ITA

66.7(10)(b)

Paragraph 66.7(10)(b) of the Act is amended so that it will not apply to corporations that cease to be taxable after April 26, 1995. This change forms part of a set of amendments to the tax treatment of corporations that become or cease to be taxable. More details are provided in the notes to amended subsection 149(10) of the Act.

Subclause 106(7)

ITA

66.7(10)(c.1)

New paragraph 66.7(10)(c.1) of the Act applies where a corporation no longer owns any foreign resource property at the time of the acquisition of its control or its change in tax-exempt status. In these circumstances, the corporation is deemed to own a foreign resource property immediately before the acquisition of control or change in tax-exempt status. As a consequence, because of paragraph 66.7(10)(c) and subsection 66.7(2) of the Act, "streamed income" from Canadian resource properties owned immediately before the acquisition of control or change in tax-exempt status can be used so that up to 10 per cent of the undeducted balance of foreign exploration expenses can be claimed by the corporation under subsection 66.7(2) of the Act.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 17, 1987.

Clause 107

Inadequate Consideration

ITA

69

Section 69 of the Act provides a series of rules dealing primarily with transactions entered into between non-arm's length persons or on non-arm's length terms.

Subclause 107(1)

ITA

69(2) and (3)

Subsections 69(2) and (3) of the Act are, respectively, designed to prevent the overstatement of deductions and the understatement of revenues in computing the income of a taxpayer as a result of the misstatement of the prices charged (commonly known as "transfer prices") in transactions with a non-resident person with whom the taxpayer does not deal at arm's length. This is accomplished by re-stating the transfer prices for tax purposes so that they reflect the prices that would have been reasonable in the circumstances if the non-resident person and the taxpayer had been dealing at arm's length.

Subsections 69(2) and (3) are repealed effective for taxation years that begin after 1997, as a consequence of the introduction of proposed new subsection 247(2) of the Act.

Subclauses 107(2) and (3)

ITA

69(5)

Subsection 69(5) of the Act sets out rules to ensure that, where property is appropriated by a shareholder on the winding-up of a corporation, the property is to be treated as having been transferred at its fair market value with the consequent recognition of any resulting income or loss on the transfer. The amendment to paragraph 69(5)(a) of the Act, which applies to windings-up that begin after 1995,

deletes the reference to paragraph 40(2)(e) of the Act and is strictly consequential on the repeal of that provision. The amendment replacing paragraphs 69(5)(d) and (e) of the Act with a new paragraph (d), which applies subject to a transitional provision to windings-up that begin after April 26, 1995, deletes the references to paragraph 40(2)(e) and to subsections 85(4) and (5.1) of the Act, which are also being repealed. It also adds references to new subsections 13(21.2), 14(12), 18(13), 40(3.4) and 40(3.6) of the Act to ensure that those provisions do not apply with respect to windings-up dealt with under subsection 69(5).

Subclauses 107(4) and (5)

ITA

69(11) and (13)

Subsection 69(11) of the Act is an anti-avoidance rule that is intended to prevent a vendor from disposing of property on a tax-deferred basis as part of a series of transactions one of the main purposes of which is to obtain the benefit of tax deductions or other entitlements available to a specified person (as defined in subsection 69(12) of the Act) in respect of a subsequent disposition of the property within 3 years of the original disposition. Where it applies, subsection 69(11) denies the benefit of the rollover on the original disposition by deeming the vendor's proceeds of disposition to be equal to the fair market value of the property disposed of.

Subsection 69(11) of the Act is amended to ensure that it does not apply to a taxpayer for certain deductions in respect of the lifetime capital gains exemption for qualified small business corporation shares. New paragraph 69(11)(a) of the Act provides that a tax deduction does not include a deduction under subsection 110.6(2.1) of the Act where the deduction is in respect of a capital gain arising from the disposition of a share acquired by the taxpayer as a result of an acquisition under subsection 85(3) or 98(3) of the Act.

In the following example, assume all of the steps are done as part of the series of transactions which include a tax-deferred rollover of business assets and the purpose of the series of transactions is to access the capital gains exemption. A (an individual) owns an interest in a Canadian partnership, (ABC). All of ABC's assets are used in carrying on an active business in Canada. ABC incorporates

a new taxable Canadian corporation (Newco) and transfers on a tax-deferred basis all of its assets to Newco in accordance with subsection 85(2) of the Act. ABC is wound up in accordance with subsection 85(3) of the Act. On the wind-up of ABC, A receives shares of Newco. A's shares of Newco are "qualified small business corporations shares" within the meaning of the definition of such shares in subsection 110.6(1) of the Act. A sells the shares of Newco to an arm's length purchaser for fair market value. A deducts an amount in respect of the lifetime capital gains exemption under subsection 110.6(2.1) of the Act in respect of the capital gain realized on the disposition of the Newco shares. New subsection 69(11) ensures that it does not apply to ABC so as to treat ABC as having disposed of its assets to Newco for fair market value proceeds rather than on a tax-deferred basis.

Subsection 69(11) is further amended. New paragraph 69(11)(b) of the Act denies the rollover on the original disposition where one of the main purposes of the series of transactions is to use the tax-exempt status of any person to shelter from tax under Part 1 any income arising on a subsequent disposition of the property.

As well, new subsection 69(11) replaces the 3-year limitation for the subsequent disposition of the property with a provision, which permits the subsection to apply if the subsequent disposition or an arrangement for the subsequent disposition is made within the 3-year period.

Subsection 69(11) is also amended to delete the reference to specified person and to use instead the concept of affiliated person introduced in new section 251.1 of the Act. (See the commentary to new section 251.1 for further information.) As amended, subsection 69(11) will not apply where, on a transfer of property, any tax deductions or entitlements that may apply on a subsequent disposition of the property are those available to a person that would be affiliated with the vendor of the property if the affiliation test set out in new section 251.1 were read without reference to the extended definition of "controlled" in subsection 251.1(3) of the Act.

As a consequence of this last amendment to subsection 69(11), subsection 69(12) of the Act - which defined the term "specified person" - is being repealed and subsection 69(13) renumbered to take the place of subsection 69(12). New subsection 69(12) allows the

Minister of National Revenue to assess or reassess at any time the tax, interest and penalties, if any, payable as a consequence of the application of subsection 69(11) where arrangements to sell the property have been made within 3 years of the original disposition.

Subject to a special grandfathering provision, these amendments apply to a disposition that is part of a series of transactions that begin after April 26, 1995.

New Taxpayer

ITA

69(14)

The addition of new subsection 69(14) follows from amended subsection 69(11)'s use of the affiliated person concept. This new subsection prevents inappropriate effects where, because a taxpayer came into existence as part of the series of transactions described in subsection 69(11), the taxpayer might not be considered to meet the affiliation test immediately before the series began.

For example, the taxpayer described in subsection 69(11) may be a corporation that is formed on an amalgamation as part of the series of transactions. Although new subsection 251.1(2) will ordinarily treat the taxpayer as being affiliated with the predecessor corporations, it will not clearly treat the taxpayer as having been affiliated with any other corporation with which it is affiliated after it is formed. Subsection 69(11) may thus apply, even though the taxpayer has transferred the property in question to a person with whom it was affiliated when it came into being.

New subsection 69(14) treats a taxpayer that comes into existence during the subsection 69(11) series of transactions or events as having existed immediately before the series, and as having been affiliated with every person with whom it is affiliated (otherwise than because of a right referred to in paragraph 251(5)(b)) when it comes into existence.

This new provision applies on the same basis as the amendments to subsection 69(11) described above.

Clause 108

Death of a Taxpayer

ITA

70

Section 70 of the Act provides certain rules that apply on the death of an individual.

Subclause 108(1)

ITA

70(3)

Subsection 70(3) of the Act deals with "rights or things" transferred to certain beneficiaries of a deceased individual within a specified time.

An amendment was made to paragraph 70(3)(b) in the Fifth Supplement of the Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985 to make the paragraph gender neutral. The pronouns "his" and "he", which originally referred to a beneficiary or other such persons, were erroneously replaced with the word "taxpayer" in the English version of the Act. This amendment replaces the word "taxpayer" with the correct term: "beneficiary or person".

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after November 1991, as these are the taxation years to which the amendment made in the Fifth Supplement of the Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985 applies.

Subclause 108(2)

ITA

70(10)

"share of the capital stock of a family farm corporation"

Subsection 70(10) of the Act contains definitions that are relevant for the purposes of the spousal and intergenerational rollover provisions in sections 70 and 73 of the Act. The existing definition "share of the capital stock of a family farm corporation" requires that the

corporation's farm property be used by certain persons principally in the course of carrying on the business of farming in Canada in which the owner of the share or a parent, spouse or child of the owner is actively engaged in regular and continuous basis. Subparagraph (a)(i) of that definition indicates that those persons include, among others, the owner of the share, the corporation and any other corporation a share of the capital stock of which was a share of the capital stock of a family farm corporation of that owner.

The definition is being amended to add new subparagraph (a)(i.1). New subparagraph (a)(i.1), which applies to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years, allows the property to be used by a corporation controlled by a corporation referred to in subparagraph (a)(i). This allows the property used in the qualifying farm business of one corporation to be held by that corporation or by a controlled subsidiary of that corporation.

Clause 109

Seizure of Debtor's Property

ITA

79(1) "creditor"

Subsection 79(1) of the Act defines a number of words for the application of the rules applicable to situations where a creditor seizes the property of a debtor. The amendment to the French version of the definition "creditor" corrects a discrepancy between the two versions of that definition the purpose of which is not to narrow the common meaning of the word "creditor" but rather to enlarge it. Therefore, the word "comprend" is added to the French version of that definition. The coming-into-force of the amendment is similar to the one that applies to the introduction of this definition.

Clause 110

Claim for Debts

ITA

79.1(8)

Subsection 79.1(8) of the Act prohibits any deduction by a creditor in respect of the principal amount of a debtor's debt on account of bad or doubtful debts where property was acquired by the creditor in respect of the debt. Subsection 79.1(8) is amended as a consequence of the introduction of new paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act to refer to uncollectible debts and impaired debts. New subsection 79.1(8) applies to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have new paragraph 20(1)(l) apply to those years.

Clause 111

Debt Forgiveness

ITA

80

Section 80 of the Act sets out the existing rules that apply where an obligation of a debtor to pay an amount is settled or extinguished for less than its principal amount and the amount for which it was issued.

Subclause 111(1)

ITA

80(1)

"unrecognized loss"

The amount of a debtor's "unrecognized loss", as defined in subsection 80(1) of the Act, can be used to offset the amount otherwise included under subsection 80(13) of the Act in computing the debtor's income. Subject to exceptions where there has been an acquisition of control, a debtor's "unrecognized loss" is equal to total capital losses from the disposition of property that are denied under subparagraph 40(2)(g)(ii) of the Act.

The definition "unrecognized loss" in subsection 80(1) is amended to clarify that a debtor's "unrecognized loss" is determined with reference to dispositions by the debtor of property.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Subclause 111(2)

ITA

80(2)(g) and (g.1)

Subsection 80(2) of the Act provides a number of rules that apply for the purpose of the debt forgiveness rules in section 80 of the Act. Paragraph 80(2)(g) of the Act provides that the amount paid in satisfaction of a debt issued by a corporation and payable to a person is, where any part of the consideration for the settlement of the debt is a share issued by the corporation (other than an excluded security), considered to equal the fair market value of the share plus any increase in the fair market value of other shares owned by the person that results from the settlement of the debt. A corporate debtor is also considered to have paid an amount in satisfaction of a debt where the debtor does not issue any share, to the extent that an increase in the fair market value of shares of the capital stock of the debtor that are owned by the creditor results from the settlement of the debt.

Subsection 80(2) is amended, applicable to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994, so that existing paragraph 80(2)(g) is split into two rules. Under amended paragraph 80(2)(g), a corporate debtor is considered to have paid an amount in satisfaction of a debt equal to the fair market value of a share, where that share is issued by the debtor as consideration for the settlement of the debt. Under new paragraph 80(2)(g.1) of the Act, a corporate debtor is considered to have paid an amount equal to the increase in value of shares of the capital stock of the debtor that are owned by the creditor (other than those shares issued as consideration for the settlement of the debt) to the extent that the increase in value is as a consequence of the settlement of the debt. The main difference between existing paragraph 80(2)(g) and new paragraphs 80(2)(g) and (g.1) is that the new paragraphs do not limit the amount that is considered to have

been paid in satisfaction of a debt because of any non-share consideration that is given by a debtor.

Subclause 111(3)

ITA

80(13)B(b)

Where a commercial obligation issued by a debtor is settled, 75 per cent (or, where the debtor is a partnership, 100 per cent) of the debtor's unapplied forgiven amount after the application of subsections 80(3) to (12) of the Act is added in computing the debtor's income. However, the net amount included in computing the debtor's income under subsection 80(13) of the Act is subject to a number of adjustments specified in subsection 80(13).

One of these adjustments in respect of a settlement is the addition of the amount determined for B in subsection 80(13). B is currently defined as the lesser of two amounts. The first amount is the total designated under subsection 80(11) in respect of the settlement. The second amount is the total of:

- the "residual balance" (as determined under subsection 80(14) of the Act) in respect of the settlement, and
- the amount, if any, by which the amount determined for C (i.e., specified amounts transferred to a related person under section 80.04 of the Act) exceeds the amount determined for A (i.e. unapplied forgiven amount after the application of subsections 80(3) to (12)).

As a consequence of the amended definition of "residual balance" in amended subsection 80(14), a transfer under new section 80.04 in respect of a settlement of debt will no longer give rise to a lower residual balance as of the time of settlement. Accordingly, the second amount referred to above in respect of a settlement is now simply described as equal to the residual balance as of the time of the settlement.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Subclause 111(4)

ITA

80(14) and (14.1)

Subsection 80(14) of the Act defines the expression "residual balance". In general terms, a debtor's "residual balance" is equal to the total of income tax attributes (other than those described in subsection 80(11) of the Act) of certain corporations and partnerships related to the debtor (which are referred to as "directed persons") remaining after the settlement of a commercial obligation issued by the debtor, taking into account the application of section 80.04 of the Act in respect of that settlement. The expression "directed person" is defined in subsection 80(1) of the Act.

Subsection 80(14) is amended, in conjunction with the introduction of subsection 80(14.1) of the Act, to provide a simpler manner of determining a debtor's "residual balance", which produces essentially the same results. In cases where only one commercial obligation issued by a debtor is settled in a taxation year, a debtor's "residual balance" is now equal to the total income tax attributes (other than those described in subsection 80(11)) of the debtor's directed persons remaining before taking into account the application of section 80.04 in respect of a settlement of a commercial obligation issued by the debtor MINUS the portion of the forgiven amount in respect of the obligation that represents the amount determined for A in subsection 80(13) of the Act in respect of the settlement. The total income tax attributes referred to above are now defined as "gross tax attributes" in new subsection 80(14.1), as described in greater detail below. A further simplification in describing the "residual balance" is achieved by referring in all relevant cases to the amounts determined for A, B and C in subsection 80(13) rather than any resulting income inclusions, which avoids the need for adjustments to take into account the 75-per-cent inclusion rate under subsection 80(13) for debtors (other than partnerships).

Under new subsection 80(14.1), the "gross tax attributes" of directed persons is equal to the maximum total forgiven amount that could be applied under subsections 80(3) to (10) and (12) in respect of the settlement of notional commercial obligations that are deemed to have been issued by each of those directed persons. "Gross tax attributes" are calculated at any time in a debtor's taxation year on the

assumption that the notional obligations referred to above had been settled at that time and that the forgiven amount in respect of each of those settlements is equal to the total forgiven amounts determined at and before the time and in the year. Apart from the fact that tax attributes of directed persons at the time of the settlement of debt issued by the debtor are determined in respect of the debtor before taking into account agreements under section 80.04 in respect of that settlement, new subsection 80(14.1) corresponds very closely to existing paragraph 80(14)(a) of the Act.

More specifically, the "residual balance" under subsection 80(14) at any time in a taxation year in respect of a commercial obligation issued by a debtor is computed as follows:

- ADD, under paragraph 80(14)(a), the "gross tax attributes" of directed persons at that time in respect of the debtor;
- SUBTRACT, under paragraph 80(14)(b) of the Act, the amount determined for A in subsection 80(13) in respect of the settlement; and
- Where there has been a previous settlement in the same year of a commercial obligation issued by the debtor, SUBTRACT under paragraphs 80(14)(c) and (d) all amounts each of which is:
 - the amount, if any, by which the amount determined for A in subsection 80(13) in respect of another such settlement exceeds the amount determined for C in respect of that settlement,
 - the amount determined for A in subsection 80(13) for a directed person of the debtor, to the extent that it arises because of an agreement under section 80.04 in respect of another such settlement, or
 - the amount specified in an agreement under section 80.04 in respect of another such settlement, where the agreement is not with a directed person of the debtor, and
 - with respect to another such settlement, the least of
 - (i) the total of all amounts designated under subsection 80(11) in respect of that settlement,

(ii) the residual balance at the time of that settlement, and

*(iii) the amount, if any, by which the sum of the amounts determined for A and B in subsection 80(13) in respect of that settlement exceeds the amount determined for C in respect of that settlement.

New paragraph 80(14)(c) is, in substance, almost identical to existing paragraphs 80(14)(d) and (e). New paragraph 80(14)(d) is, in substance, almost identical to existing paragraph 80(14)(f). The only significant difference is the addition of clause 80(14)(d)(iii), which is denoted by the asterisk above and illustrated in example 5, below.

These amendments apply to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

The following examples illustrate the operation of these amendments. Except for example 5, the same end results are achieved under the existing and new provisions.

EXAMPLE 1

Debtco issued a commercial obligation to a bank for \$150,000. Debtco's only asset is the shares of the capital stock of Opco (a wholly-owned subsidiary that is a taxable Canadian corporation), which have an adjusted cost base (ACB) to Debtco of \$120,000. Opco's only asset is depreciable property of a prescribed class having an undepreciated capital cost (UCC) of \$70,000. The full \$150,000 of debt is forgiven. Debtco enters into an agreement with Opco under section 80.04 in which the amount specified is \$20,000 and designates \$80,000 under subsection 80(11) as a reduction in the ACB of the Opco shares. Opco uses the \$20,000 to reduce its UCC from \$70,000 to \$50,000.

Results:

1. The residual balance at the time of the settlement is nil, determined as follows:

- *Add \$70,000, which is the \$70,000 UCC, and*

- Subtract \$70,000 under paragraph 80(14)(b), which is the amount determined for A in subsection 80(13) (\$150,000 - \$80,000)
2. As a consequence, the amount included under subsection 80(13) in computing Debtco's income is equal to \$37,500, determined as follows:
- Add \$70,000 under the description of A in subsection 80(13), which is the remaining unapplied forgiven amount (\$150,000 - 80,000),
 - Add nil under the description of B in subsection 80(13), as the residual balance is nil,
 - Subtract the \$20,000 specified amount under the description of C in subsection 80(13), and
 - Multiply the remainder (\$50,000) by 3/4.

EXAMPLE 2

Same as example 1, except that the amount designated under subsection 80(11) is \$100,000 rather than \$80,000.

Results:

1. The residual balance at the time of the settlement is \$20,000, determined as follows:
- Add \$70,000, which is the \$70,000 UCC, and
 - Subtract \$50,000 under paragraph 80(14)(b), which is the amount determined for A in subsection 80(13) (\$150,000 - \$100,000).
2. As a consequence, the amount included under subsection 80(13) in computing Debtco's income is equal to \$37,500, determined as follows:

- Add \$50,000 under the description of A in subsection 80(13), which is the remaining unapplied forgiven amount (\$150,000 - 100,000),
- Add the \$20,000 residual balance under the description of B in subsection 80(13),
- Subtract the \$20,000 specified amount under the description of C in subsection 80(13), and
- Multiply the remainder (\$50,000) by 3/4.

EXAMPLE 3

Debtco issued two commercial obligations to a bank for \$90,000 and \$60,000. Debtco's only asset is the shares of the capital stock of Opco (a wholly-owned subsidiary that is a taxable Canadian corporation), which have an adjusted cost base (ACB) to Debtco of \$120,000. Opco's only asset is depreciable property of a prescribed class having an undepreciated capital cost (UCC) of \$70,000. The \$90,000 debt is fully forgiven. Subsequently, in the same taxation year, the \$60,000 debt is forgiven. Debtco enters into an agreement with Opco under section 80.04 in which the amount specified is \$20,000 with respect to the first settlement. In addition, an amount of \$20,000 is designated under subsection 80(11) with respect to the first settlement. Subsequently, an amount of \$60,000 is designated under subsection 80(11) with respect to the second settlement. (Note: this example is, in substance, the same as example 1.)

Results:

1. As in example 1, the residual balance at the time of the first settlement is nil. This is computed as follows:

- Add \$70,000, which is the \$70,000 UCC, and
- Subtract \$70,000 under paragraph 80(14)(b), which is the amount determined for A in subsection 80(13) (\$90,000 - \$20,000).

2. *The residual balance at the time of the second settlement is also nil, computed as follows:*

- *Add \$50,000, which is the \$70,000 UCC minus the \$20,000 amount specified in an agreement under section 80.04 before that time, and*
- *Subtract \$50,000 under subparagraph 80(14)(c)(i), which is the amount determined for A in subsection 80(13) in respect of the settlement before that time (\$90,000-\$20,000) that exceeds the amount determined for C in that subsection in respect of that settlement (\$20,000).*

3. *Given the residual balance in each case is equal to nil, the income inclusion under subsection 80(13) is equal to \$37,500 with respect to the first settlement ($\frac{3}{4} \times (\$90,000 - \$20,000 - \$20,000)$) and \$0 with respect to the second settlement. This is consistent with example 1. In the event that a higher total amount is designated under subsection 80(11), the results will be consistent with example 2.*

EXAMPLE 4

Debtco issued a commercial obligation to a bank for \$200,000. Debtco's only asset is the shares of the capital stock of Opco (a wholly-owned subsidiary that is a taxable Canadian corporation), which have an adjusted cost base (ACB) to Debtco of \$220,000. Opco's only asset is depreciable property of a prescribed class having an undepreciated capital cost (UCC) of \$120,000. The full \$200,000 of debt is forgiven. Debtco enters into an agreement with Opco under section 80.04 in which the amount specified is \$30,000 and designates \$200,000 under subsection 80(11) as a reduction in the ACB of the Opco shares. Opco does not use the \$30,000 to reduce its UCC.

Results:

1. *The residual balance at the time of the settlement is \$120,000, which is the \$120,000 UCC. No amount is subtracted under paragraph 80(14)(b) because the remaining unapplied amount under the description of A in subsection 80(13) is nil (\$200,000-\$200,000).*

2. As a consequence, the amount included under subsection 80(13) in computing Debtco's income is equal to \$67,500, determined as follows:

- Add nil under the description of A in subsection 80(13), which is the remaining unapplied forgiven amount (\$200,000-\$200,000),
- Add \$120,000 under the description of B in subsection 80(13), as it is the lesser of the amount designated under subsection 80(11) (\$200,000) and the residual balance (\$120,000),
- Subtract the \$30,000 specified amount under the description of C in subsection 80(13), and
- Multiply the remainder (\$90,000) by $\frac{3}{4}$.

EXAMPLE 5

Debtco issued two commercial obligations to a bank for \$90,000 and \$110,000. Debtco's only asset is the shares of the capital stock of Opco (a wholly-owned subsidiary that is a taxable Canadian corporation), which have an adjusted cost base (ACB) to Debtco of \$220,000. Opco's only asset is depreciable property of a prescribed class having an undepreciated capital cost (UCC) of \$120,000. The \$90,000 debt is fully forgiven. Subsequently, in the same taxation year, the \$110,000 debt is forgiven. Debtco enters into an agreement with Opco under section 80.04 in which the amount specified is \$30,000 with respect to the first settlement. Opco does not use the \$30,000 to reduce UCC. In addition, an amount of \$90,000 is designated under subsection 80(11) with respect to the first settlement. Subsequently, an amount of \$110,000 is designated under subsection 80(11) with respect to the second settlement. Note: this example is, in substance, the same as example 4.

1. As in example 4, the residual balance at the time of the settlement is \$120,000, which is the \$120,000 UCC. No amount is subtracted under paragraph 80(14)(b) because the remaining unapplied amount under the description of A in subsection 80(13) is nil (\$90,000-\$90,000).

2. *The residual balance at the time of the second settlement is \$30,000, computed as follows:*

- *Add \$120,000, which is the \$120,000 UCC (the \$30,000 amount specified in the agreement under section 80.04 in respect of the first settlement is not relevant under subsection 80(14.1) because Subco did not use it to reduce the UCC),*
- *Subtract \$30,000 under subparagraph 80(14)(c)(ii), which is the amount determined for A in subsection 80(13) for Subco because of the agreement made under section 80.04 in respect of the first settlement, and*
- *Subtract \$60,000 under paragraph 80(14)(d)(iii), which is the least of the amount designated under subsection 80(11) in respect of the first settlement (\$90,000), the residual balance at the time of the first settlement (\$120,000) and the sum of the amounts determined for A and B in subsection 80(13) in respect of the first settlement minus the amount determined for C in respect of first settlement ($\$0 + \$90,000 - \$30,000 = \$60,000$).*

3. *The income inclusion under subsection 80(13) is equal to \$45,000 with respect to the first settlement ($\frac{3}{4} \times (\$0 + \$90,000 - \$30,000)$) and \$22,500 with respect to the second settlement ($\frac{3}{4} \times (\$0 + \$30,000 - \$0)$). This is consistent with example 4.*

Subclause 111(5)

ITA 80(17)

Subsection 80(17) of the Act applies in certain cases where a deduction is claimed under section 61.3 of the Act in computing the income of a corporation. Subsection 80(17) is designed to provide a corporation which claims a deduction under section 61.3 with an incentive to enter into agreements under section 80.04 of the Act with related corporations and partnerships in order to have the tax attributes of those corporations or partnerships reduced.

In order to reduce the complexity associated with the debt forgiveness rules, subsection 80(17) is being repealed.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Clause 112

Definitions

ITA
80.03

Section 80.03 sets out rules that are designed to preserve the effectiveness of the debt forgiveness rules under section 80 of the Act, in the event that section 80 has resulted in a reduction of the adjusted cost base of a share, partnership interest or trust interest.

Subclause 112(1)

ITA
80.03(1)

Subsection 80.03(1) of the Act defines a number of expressions used in the section.

Subsection 80.03(1) is amended to eliminate the definition of "taxable dividend" for the purposes of section 80.03 of the Act. This amendment is strictly consequential on the repeal of subsection 80.03(4) of the Act, described below.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Subclause 112(2)

ITA

80.03(4) to (6)

Subsections 80.03(4) to (6) of the Act apply where a corporation disposes of capital property that is a share or a partnership or trust interest. In certain cases, tax consequences arise for the corporation based on adjustments to the adjusted cost base to the corporation arising because of section 80 and dividends received by the corporation.

In order to reduce the complexity associated with the debt forgiveness rules, subsections 80.03(4) to (6) are being repealed. It is noted, however, that the general anti-avoidance rule in section 245 may apply to some of the cases where subsection 80.03(4) was applicable.

These amendments apply to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Subclauses 112(3) and (4)

ITA

80.03(7)

Subsection 80.03(7) of the Act allows a person to treat a capital gain that would otherwise arise under subsection 80.03(2) or (4) of the Act as a forgiven amount for the purposes of section 80 of the Act, to the extent that the person so designates. The designation is made in a prescribed form filed with a person's income tax return for the taxation year that includes the time of the disposition that gave rise to the application of subsection 80.03(2) or (4).

Subsection 80.03(7) is amended to eliminate the references to subsection 80.03(4). This amendment is strictly consequential on the repeal of subsection 80.03(4).

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Clause 113**Agreement - Settlement of Debt**

ITA

80.04

Section 80.04 of the Act provides rules that allow a debtor to enter into an agreement with an eligible transferee in order for the debtor to minimize the tax consequences to the debtor under section 80 of the Act from the settlement of a debt issued by the debtor.

Subclauses 113(1) and (2)

ITA

80.04(5) and (5.1)

Subsection 80.04(5) of the Act contemplates that property may be acquired by an eligible transferee from the debtor as consideration for such an agreement. Under that subsection, neither the eligible transferee nor the debtor is required to add any amount or benefit in computing income only because of the acquisition of the property or because of the entering into the agreement under section 80.04 of the Act.

Paragraph 80.04(5)(d) of the Act is replaced by new subsection 80.04(5.1) of the Act. New subsection 80.04(5.1) provides that, for the purpose of Part I of the Act, a benefit is not considered to have been conferred on a debtor as a consequence of an agreement under section 80.04 between the debtor and an eligible transferee. Unlike paragraph 80.04(5)(d), the new subsection applies whether or not property is acquired by an eligible transferee as consideration for entering into an agreement filed under section 80.04.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Subclause 113(3)

ITA
80.04(10)

Section 80.04 of the Act provides rules that allow a debtor to enter into an agreement with an eligible transferee in order for the debtor to minimize the tax consequences to the debtor under section 80 of the Act from the settlement of a debt issued by the debtor.

Subsection 80.04(10) of the Act provides that a debtor is liable to pay all or part of its eligible transferee's taxes, interest and penalties for taxation years ending in the 10 calendar years ending after the settlement of the debt, that is subject of an agreement under section 80.04.

Paragraph 80.04(10)(a) of the Act is amended to provide that the debtor is liable only for taxation years ending in the 4 calendar years ending after the settlement of the debt.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Clause 114**Dividends from Canadian Corporations**

ITA
82(1)

Subsection 82(1) of the Act provides that taxable dividends received by a taxpayer from a corporation resident in Canada are included in computing the taxpayer's income. It also generally provides an extra 1/4 gross-up of the amount of such dividends from taxable Canadian corporations, which is added in computing the income of an individual. Section 121 of the Act provides a dividend tax credit equal to 2/3 of the amount an individual is required to include in income as a gross-up. For this purpose, an individual includes a trust (other than a trust that is a registered charity).

Subsection 82(1) is amended to provide that the gross-up for a taxation year does not apply to taxable dividends received by a trust

in the year from a taxable Canadian corporation, to the extent that such dividends are included in computing the income of a non-resident beneficiary under the trust. As a consequence, the calculation of the trust's dividend tax credit will not be affected by whether or not the trust designates amounts under subsection 104(19) of the Act in respect of non-resident beneficiaries.

The rationale for this amendment is that the dividend tax credit is aimed at Canadian residents, whose income tax rates under Part I are generally higher than the withholding rates for non-residents under Part XIII. The purpose of this amendment is to prevent trusts with non-resident beneficiaries from obtaining access to the dividend tax credit in connection with income allocated to those beneficiaries that has not been flowed-out to those beneficiaries under subsection 104(19).

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after April 26, 1995.

Clause 115

Non-arm's Length Sales of Shares

ITA
84.1

Subclauses 115(1) to (3)

ITA
84.1(2)

Subsection 84.1(2) of the Act provides, amongst other things, rules for determining a taxpayer's adjusted cost base of shares for the purposes of subsection 84.1(1) of the Act. Subsection 84.1(2) of the Act is restructured.

Subclauses 115(4)

Rules for para. 84.1(2)(a.1)

ITA

84.1(2.01)

Paragraph 84.1(2)(a.2) of the Act is repealed and is included in new subsection 84.1(2.01) of the Act.

New paragraph 84(2.01)(b) of the Act treats a share as having been acquired by a taxpayer in a non-arm's length transaction for the purposes of paragraph 84.1(2)(a.1) of the Act where the taxpayer has elected under subsection 110.6(19) of the Act to recognize all or part of the gain accrued to February 22, 1994 on the share. This amendment, which applies to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years, ensures that an election under subsection 110.6(19) in respect of a share will not increase the holder's adjusted cost base of the share for the purposes of section 84.1.

New paragraph 84.1(2.01)(c) of the Act provides that for the purpose of paragraph 84.1(2)(a.1) where, at any time after 1971, a share owned by a particular person has, as a result of one or more transactions between other persons not dealing at arm's length, become vested in one of those other persons, the particular person and the other person will be treated, at any time, as not dealing at arm's length with each other. This is so regardless of the fact that the person and the other person may have never coexisted. New paragraph 84.1(2.01)(c) of the Act is clarifying and ensures, amongst other things, that the test for non-arm's length status is continuous running from generation to generation with that continuity being severed only upon an arm's length disposition. New paragraph 84.1(2.01)(c) applies in respect of the determination of the adjusted cost base of a share after the June 20, 1996.

EXAMPLE

Assume Ms. A was born in 1980 and that Ms. A is the daughter of Mr. A. Mr. A's mother (Mrs. A) died in 1979. On her death, Mr. A acquired her shares of MCo which were owned by Mrs. A at the end of 1971. In 1994, Mr. A disposes of his MCo shares to Ms. A. In July 1996, Ms. A transfers the MCo shares to her

holding company. For the purpose of determining the adjusted cost base of the shares of MCo to Ms. A, Ms. A and the late Mrs. A are treated as dealing at non-arm's length. Therefore, the adjusted cost base of the MCo shares will be reduced by the amount, if any, of the excess of the V-Day value of the shares over the cost of the shares to the late Mrs. A on January 1, 1972.

Subclauses 115(5)

Rules for para. 84.1(2)(b)

ITA

84.1(2.2)

Paragraphs 84.1(2)(c) and (e) of the Act are repealed and included in new subsections 84.1(2.2) of the Act.

Clause 116

Transfer of Property to Corporation by Shareholder

ITA

85

Section 85 of the Act applies to transfers on a tax-deferred basis of certain properties by a taxpayer to a taxable Canadian corporation in exchange for shares.

Subclause 116(1)

Transfer of Property to Corporation from Partnership

ITA

85(2)

Subsection 85(2) of the Act provides that the rules in subsection 85(1) of the Act will apply to and allow a partnership to transfer certain properties to a taxable Canadian corporation on a tax-deferred basis in exchange for shares of the corporation. The amendment changes the scope of subsection 85(2) to make it more

closely parallel the scope of subsection 85(1.1) of the Act. A property that is inventory and an interest in real property or an option in respect of real property is excluded from subsection 85(2), as is a mark-to-market property held by a financial institution. However, a specified debt obligation held by a financial institution is expressly included.

The amendment applies to dispositions that occur after June 20, 1996.

Subclauses 116(2) to (5)

ITA

85(4) to (5.1)

Subsection 85(4) of the Act applies where a taxpayer disposes of capital property or eligible capital property to a corporation that is controlled by the taxpayer, the taxpayer's spouse or a person or group of persons by whom the taxpayer is controlled. Although, as discussed below, this subsection is to be repealed with effect after April 26, 1995, an amendment is being made to correct its application for the period between June 1988 and April 26, 1995.

Specifically, paragraph 85(4)(b) of the Act provides that, where the transferor of property owns shares of the transferee, any capital loss or deduction under paragraph 24(1)(a) of the Act that is denied because of subsection 85(4) is to instead be added to the transferor's adjusted cost base of those shares. Paragraph 85(4)(b) currently provides that addition is to equal the difference between the cost amount of the property and the eligible capital amount resulting from its sale. However, the cost amount of eligible capital property represents its full cost rather than only the 75 per cent thereof that is added to a taxpayer's cumulative eligible capital, whereas the eligible capital amount arising on the disposition of eligible capital property takes into account only 75 per cent of the proceeds therefrom. This amendment corrects paragraph 85(4)(b) by providing that any cost base addition arising in respect of a transfer of eligible capital property is to be limited to the difference between its cost amount to the transferor and 4/3 of the resulting addition to the transferor's eligible capital amount.

The repeal of subsection 85(4) reflects the addition of new subsection 14(12) of the Act, which applies with respect to transfers

of eligible capital property, and of new subsections 40(3.4) and (3.6) of the Act, which apply to transfers of non-depreciable capital property. Subsection 85(5.1) of the Act, which applied to transfers of depreciable capital property, is also repealed, its replacement being found in new subsection 13(21.2) of the Act. A consequential amendment to subsection 85(5) of the Act deletes the reference to subsection 85(5.1).

The repeal of subsections 85(4) and (5.1), and the amendment to subsection 85(5), apply to dispositions that take place after April 26, 1995, subject to certain exceptions. These are found in clause 247 of this bill, and generally exclude transactions in progress before April 27, 1995. Readers should refer to the notes to clause 247 for more detail.

Clause 117

Amalgamations

ITA

87

Section 87 of the Act sets out rules that apply where there has been an amalgamation of two or more taxable Canadian corporations to form a new corporation.

Subclause 117(1)

Superficial Losses

ITA

87(2)(g.3) and (g.4)

In general terms, new subsections 13(21.2), 14(12) and 40(3.4), along with amendments to section 18 of the Act, apply where property is transferred to a person with whom the transferor is affiliated (the concept of affiliated persons is introduced in new section 251.1 of the Act), and the tax cost of the property to the transferor exceeds its value at the time of its transfer. Where these conditions exist, any loss that would otherwise arise on the disposition is denied, but can

be subsequently recognized when, for example, the transferred property is sold to a person that is not affiliated with the transferor.

New paragraph 87(2)(g.3) of the Act treats a new corporation formed on an amalgamation as a continuation of each of its predecessors for the purpose of applying these subsections to property disposed of before the amalgamation took place. Thus a new corporation created on an amalgamation would, for example:

- be entitled under subsection 13(21.2) to make annual capital cost allowance claims (or to claim a terminal loss) in respect of a loss denied to a predecessor on the transfer of depreciable property;
- be considered under subsection 14(12) to own eligible capital property in respect of a business that was carried on by a predecessor; and,
- with respect to each of subsections 13(21.2), 14(12), 18(15) and 40(3.4), be permitted to recognize any loss of a predecessor that was denied under those provisions where control of the new corporation is acquired.

New paragraph 87(2)(g.4) of the Act provides that for the purposes of the deemed share ownership rule in new paragraph 40(3.6)(c) of the Act, the new corporation formed on an amalgamation is treated as the same as, and a continuation of, each predecessor corporation. For more information, readers should refer to the notes to new subsection 40(3.6).

These amendments apply to amalgamations that occur after April 26, 1995. Under paragraph 88(1)(e.2) of the Act, they will also apply to windings-up under subsection 88(1) of the Act that begin after that date.

Subclause 117(2)**Prepaid Expenses and Matchable Expenditures**

ITA

87(2)(j.2)

Paragraph 87(2)(j.2) of the Act provides that a corporation formed as a result of an amalgamation is considered to be a continuation of its predecessor corporations for the purposes of subsection 18(9) (prepaid expenses), subsection 18(9.01) (premium paid under group life insurance policies) and paragraph 20(1)(mm) (cost of injected substance used to recover petroleum, natural gas or related hydrocarbons) of the Act. Paragraph 87(1)(j.2) is amended, effective November 18, 1996, so that it also applies for the purpose of new section 18.1 (i.e., to a right to receive production to which a matchable expenditure relates) of the Act.

Subclause 117(3)**Part I.3 and Part VI Tax**

ITA

87(2)(j.91)

A corporation that is liable to tax under Part I.3 of the Act for a taxation year may deduct in computing that liability its Canadian surtax payable for the year, and may deduct any unused surtax credits against its Part I.3 liability for any of the seven following and three previous years. Similarly, a corporation liable to tax under Part VI of the Act can reduce that liability by its Part I tax payable for the year, and can carry any excess Part I liability forward seven and back three years. For the purposes of these carryforwards, paragraph 87(2)(j.91) of the Act treats the new corporation formed on an amalgamation as the same corporation as, and a continuation of, each of its predecessors. The paragraph is amended to clarify that it affects neither the fiscal period of any corporation nor the tax payable by any predecessor corporation. New paragraph 87(2)(j.91) applies to amalgamations occurring after April 26, 1995 and, by virtue of paragraph 88(1)(e.2) of the Act, to windings-up beginning after that date.

Subclause 117(4)**Film or Video Productions**

ITA

87(2)(j.94)

Paragraph 87(2)(j.94) of the Act deems a corporation formed on an amalgamation to be a continuation of each predecessor corporation for the purposes of the Canadian film and video production tax credit in section 125.4 of the Act. The paragraph is amended to apply also for the purposes of the film or video production services tax credit in new section 125.5 of the Act, applicable to amalgamations that occur and windings-up that begin after October 1997.

Subclause 117(5)

ITA

87(2)(l.21)

Paragraph 87(2)(l.21) of the Act provides that section 61.3 and subsection 80.01(10) of the Act apply to an amalgamated corporation as if the amalgamated corporation were the same as, and a continuation of, each of the predecessor corporations.

Paragraph 87(2)(l.21) is amended to add a reference to the definition "unrecognized loss" in subsection 80(1) of the Act, as a consequence of which an unrecognized loss from a disposition of a property by a predecessor corporation can survive an amalgamation under section 87 of the Act and be used under subsection 80(13) of the Act by the corporation formed on the amalgamation.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Subclause 117(6)**Taxable Dividends**

ITA

87(2)(x)

For the purposes of the stop-loss rules in subsections 112(3) to (4.3) of the Act, paragraph 87(2)(x) of the Act treats dividends received on a share by a predecessor corporation as having been received on the share by the new corporation with the same character and deductibility they had for the predecessor corporation.

Paragraph 87(2)(x) is modified in three ways.

First, the purposes for which the provision applies are changed to correspond to the renumbering of the stop-loss rules in section 112 of the Act.

Second, subparagraph 87(2)(x)(ii) of the Act is amended by changing the references to capital dividend and life insurance capital dividend to a dividend (other than a taxable dividend). This change ensures that all dividends (other than dividends deemed to be taxable dividends because of subsection 83(2.1) of the Act) in respect of which an election was made under subsection 83(2) of the Act – and not simply those which were supported by the dividend-paying corporation's capital dividend account – are captured by the effect of this paragraph.

Existing paragraph 87(2)(x) does not take into account the period of ownership of the share by a predecessor corporation. Consequently, the stop-loss rules may apply if the new corporation disposes of the share within 365 days of the amalgamation although the rules would not have applied had a predecessor corporation disposed of the share. Therefore, the third change to paragraph 87(2)(x) adds new subparagraph 87(2)(x)(iii) of the Act to provide that a new corporation is deemed to have owned a share throughout the period during which the share was owned by a predecessor corporation.

The effect of the coming-into-force provision for amended paragraph 87(2)(x) is that the first two amendments described above will apply to dispositions that occur after April 26, 1995, and

the third amendment will apply to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 117(7)

ITA
87(2)(y.1)

Paragraph 87(2)(y.1) of the Act provides for the flow-through of the net "preferred-earnings amount" of each predecessor corporation to the new corporation formed on an amalgamation. A corporation's preferred-earnings amount was defined in former subsection 181(2) of the Act and was a measure of a corporation's income earned in taxation years beginning after 1982 that was subject to the reduced small business rate of tax. Dividends paid out of the preferred-earnings amount were subject to a 12.5 per cent corporate distributions tax under former Part II of the Act.

Paragraph 87(2)(y.1) is repealed as a consequence of the previous repeal of the Part II tax. This amendment applies to taxes payable for taxation years that begin after 1986.

Subclause 117(8)

Mutual Fund and Investment Corporations

ITA
87(2)(bb)

Paragraph 87(2)(bb) of the Act provides rules that apply in calculating the capital gains dividend account and refundable capital gains tax on hand of a mutual fund corporation or an investment corporation formed as a result of an amalgamation.

Paragraph 87(2)(bb) is being amended to update the reference therein to the components of the definition "capital gains dividend account" in subsection 131(6) of the Act. This amendment applies to amalgamations that occur after 1991. However, where an amalgamation occurred after 1991 and before February 23, 1994, a transitional provision applies that provides the appropriate reference to the components of the definition "capital gains dividend account" in subsection 131(6) as it read during that period.

Flow-Through Entities

ITA

87(2)(*bb.1*)

New paragraph 87(2)(*bb.1*) is added to the Act as a consequence of the elimination of the \$100,000 lifetime capital gains exemption for dispositions that occur after February 22, 1994 and the introduction of the election mechanism in subsection 110.6(19) of the Act for recognizing gains accrued to the end of that day. If an individual elects to recognize a capital gain accrued to that time on an interest in, or a share of a capital stock of, a flow-through entity (as defined in subsection 39.1(1) of the Act), the amount of the gain is credited to a special account referred to as the individual's exempt capital gains balance in respect of the entity. Claims may be made against this account to reduce gains that are flowed out to the individual by the entity for taxation years before 2005 and gains realized on dispositions of interests in or shares of the entity in those years.

New paragraph 87(2)(*bb.1*) provides that the exempt capital gains balance of an individual in respect of a flow-through entity that is an investment corporation, a mortgage investment corporation or a mutual fund corporation before an amalgamation in which the corporation is a predecessor corporation is carried over to the new corporation formed on the amalgamation provided that the new corporation is also an investment corporation, a mortgage investment corporation or a mutual fund corporation, respectively.

New paragraph 87(2)(*bb.1*) applies in respect of amalgamations that occur after 1993.

Subclause 117(9)

Continuation of Corporation

ITA

87(2)(*qq*)

Paragraph 87(2)(*qq*) of the Act treats the corporation formed on an amalgamation as the same corporation as, and a continuation of, each of its predecessors, for the purposes of computing the new corporation's investment tax credits and employment tax credits. The

paragraph is amended, for amalgamations occurring after April 26, 1995, to delete the reference to employment tax credits and to clarify that the provision affects neither the fiscal period of any corporation nor the tax payable by any predecessor corporation.

Subclause 117(10)

ITA

87(2.1)(b)

Subsection 87(2.1) of the Act allows the corporation formed on an amalgamation to deduct the unclaimed losses of its predecessors, subject to the restrictions on the use of losses imposed by section 111 (loss carryovers) and subsection 149(10) (changes in tax status) of the Act. This amendment, which is consequential on the amendment of subsection 149(10), replaces the reference in paragraph 87(2.1)(b) of the Act to paragraph 149(10)(d) with a reference to paragraph 149(10)(c). The amended paragraph applies to any corporation that becomes or ceases to be exempt from tax after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 117(11)

Vertical Amalgamations

ITA

87(2.11)

Subsection 87(2.11) of the Act treats the corporation formed on what is commonly known as a "vertical amalgamation" (the amalgamation of a corporation and one or more of its subsidiary wholly-owned corporations) as the same corporation as, and a continuation of, the former parent corporation, for the purposes of section 111 and Part IV of the Act. By allowing losses incurred by the amalgamated corporation to be carried back to the former parent, subject to the rules in section 111, the provision conforms the effect of a vertical amalgamation to what would have resulted if the predecessor subsidiary had instead been wound up into its parent under subsection 88(1) of the Act.

This amendment adds to the list of purposes for which the new corporation will be treated as the same corporation as, and a

continuation of, the former parent company. In addition to section 111 and Part IV of the Act, these include: section 126 (foreign tax credits), subsections 127(5) to (26) (investment tax credits), subsections 181.1(4) to (7) (deductions of unused surtax against Part I.3 tax) and subsections 190.1(3) to (6) (deduction of unused Part I tax against Part VI tax) of the Act. The amendment thus allows various tax attributes to move from the surviving corporation - the one formed on the amalgamation - back to the predecessor parent, much as they could if the companies had reorganized through a winding-up.

This amendment applies to amalgamations occurring after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 117(12)

ITA

87(9)(a.5)

Subsection 87(9) of the Act provides rules for "triangular amalgamations" – amalgamations in which shares of a parent corporation are issued in exchange for shares of the merging predecessors. New paragraph 87(9)(a.5) of the Act provides rules that allow new subsection 87(10) of the Act to apply in the case of a triangular amalgamation. New subsection 87(10) is a rule that deems certain shares to have been listed on a prescribed stock exchange. For more information, readers should consult the notes to that provision.

Specifically, new paragraph 87(9)(a.5) allows either the new corporation formed on the amalgamation or the parent corporation to be the issuer of the deemed listed share. It also modifies the requirement, in new paragraph 87(10)(b), that the new corporation be a public corporation: where the deemed listed shares are issued by the parent, it is the parent that must be a public corporation.

New paragraph 87(9)(a.5) applies to amalgamations that occur after April 26, 1995. A transitional version of the paragraph applies to amalgamations that occur before 1998. The transitional version has substantially the same effect as that described here, except that it preserves the requirement, in new paragraph 87(10)(b), that the new

corporation be a public corporation (subject to the special transitional rule described in the notes to new subsection 87(10)).

Subclause 117(13)

Share Deemed Listed

ITA
87(10)

As a result of changes to the definition of "taxable Canadian property" in paragraph 115(1)(b) of the Act, shares of a public corporation that are not listed on a prescribed stock exchange are taxable Canadian property. In the course of certain amalgamations, a predecessor corporation's listed shares may temporarily be replaced by unlisted shares of the new corporation. New subsection 87(10) of the Act treats those temporary shares as having themselves been listed, provided the new corporation is a public corporation and the new shares are redeemed, acquired or cancelled by the new corporation within 60 days after the amalgamation. This deemed listing applies for the purposes of subsections 115(1) and 116(6) of the Act, and for the definition of "qualified investment" in subsections 146(1) and 146.3(1) and section 204 of the Act.

New subsection 87(10) applies to amalgamations that occur after April 26, 1995. Where an amalgamation occurs before July 1996, new subsection 87(10) applies whether or not the new corporation formed on the amalgamation is a public corporation (assuming the other requirements of the provision are met).

Vertical Amalgamations

ITA
87(11)

New subsection 87(11) of the Act is generally effective in respect of a vertical amalgamation occurring after 1994 to which subsection 87(1) of the Act applies. These provisions provide a new corporation formed on the amalgamation of a parent and one or more of its subsidiary wholly-owned corporations with the option of increasing its cost of certain capital property acquired by it on the amalgamation. This increase in the new corporation's cost is the

same as the increase that would be available to the parent if the subsidiary had been wound up into the parent and subsection 88(1) of the Act had applied to the winding-up .

New subsection 87(11) relies upon subsection 88(1) and new subsection 88(1.7) of the Act to determine the type of property that qualifies for the increase and the amount of the increase in respect of each such property. As well, new subsection 87(11) relies upon subsection 88(1) to determine the parent's proceeds of disposition arising from the parent's disposition of the subsidiary's shares on the amalgamation. New subsection 87(11) applies to amalgamations that occur after 1994 unless the amalgamation occurs before June 20, 1996 and the new corporation elects not to have it apply to the amalgamation in the tax return for the year of the parent that ended immediately before the amalgamation or within 90 days after any assessment or reassessment of tax payable for that year. Any paragraph 88(1)(d) designation filed by the new corporation by the end of the third month after the month in which subsection 87(11) becomes law will be considered to have been filed with the new corporation's return of income for its first taxation year.

Clause 118

Winding-up of a Corporation

ITA

88(1)

Section 88 of the Act deals with the tax consequences arising from the winding-up of a corporation. Subsection 88(1) of the Act provides rules that apply where a subsidiary has been wound up into its parent corporation provided that both corporations are taxable Canadian corporations and the parent owns not less than 90 per cent of the issued shares of each class of the subsidiary's capital stock.

Subclause 118(1)**Right to receive production**

ITA

88(1)(a)(i)

Paragraph 88(1)(a) of the Act provides rules for determining the proceeds of disposition of a subsidiary's property on a wind-up to which subsection 88(1) applies. Subparagraph 88(1)(a)(i) of the Act is amended to provide nil proceeds of the disposition of a subsidiary's right to receive production to which a matchable expenditure relates. This effectively results in a rollover of a subsidiary's right to receive production to its parent. This subsection applies after November 17, 1996.

Subclause 118(2)

ITA

88(1)(c)(v)

Subparagraph 88(1)(c)(v) of the Act provides that an increase in cost base will not be available with respect to property transferred to a subsidiary by the parent or by any person or partnership that was not, otherwise than by reason of a right referred to in paragraph 251(5)(b) of the Act, dealing at arm's length with the parent. Therefore, property transferred to a corporation by a subsequent purchaser of the corporation will not qualify for this increase on the winding-up of the corporation into the purchaser. This subparagraph is amended to restrict its application to property so transferred as part of the series of transactions in which the parent last acquired control of the subsidiary. It also is amended to include substituted property. New subparagraph 88(1)(c)(v) applies to windings-up that begin after 1996.

Subclauses 118(3) and (4)

ITA

88(1)(c)(vi)

Paragraph 88(1)(c) of the Act provides that the cost to the parent corporation of each property distributed to it on the winding-up of the subsidiary is equal to the subsidiary's proceeds of disposition of the

property plus, where the property is not an "ineligible property", an amount determined under paragraph 88(1)(d) of the Act in respect of that property. An ineligible property is defined in paragraph 88(1)(c) and consists of four types of property. The fourth type of property stops taxpayers from circumventing the restrictions against the so-called "purchase butterfly" reorganization in subsection 55(3.1) of the Act by means of a series of transactions that effectively result in a sale of part of a corporation's assets to an arm's length corporation on a tax-deferred basis.

Subparagraph 88(1)(c)(vi) of the Act which describes the fourth type of ineligible property targets property that is subsequently disposed of by the parent as part of the series of transactions in which the parent acquired control of the subsidiary and the property, or any substituted property, is acquired by one of the following:

- A. any person (other than a specified person) who, at any time during the series and before the parent acquired control of the subsidiary, was a specified shareholder of the subsidiary,
- B. two or more persons (other than specified persons) who, at any time during the series and before control of the subsidiary was last acquired by the parent, owned, in total, such number of shares as would, if they were owned by one person, make that person a specified shareholder of the subsidiary,
- C. a corporation (other than a specified person) of which any person who was a specified shareholder of the subsidiary is a specified shareholder, or
- D. a corporation (other than a specified person) where persons described in B whose shares, if owned by one person, would have made that person a specified shareholder of the corporation.

New subparagraph 88(1)(c)(vi) of the Act broadens the scope of the fourth type of ineligible property to include all property distributed to the parent on the winding-up of the subsidiary where as part of the series of transactions or events that includes the winding-up any property distributed to the parent on the winding-up, or any other property acquired in substitution thereof, is acquired by a person described in any of A to D above. New subparagraph 88(1)(c)(vi) of the Act applies to windings-up that begin after June 20, 1996 other

than those that are part of an arrangement that was substantially advanced, as evidenced in writing, by that date.

Sub-subclause 88(1)(c)(vi)(B)(III)2 of the Act describes the corporation referred to in D above. This sub-subclause is amended to restrict its application to those situations in which shares of the corporation acquiring the property were acquired by the shareholder as part of the series of transactions that includes the winding-up of the subsidiary. This provision applies to windings-up that begin after June 20, 1996 other than those that are part of an arrangement that was substantially advanced, as evidenced in writing, by that date.

Subclause 118(5)

ITA

88(1)(c.2)(iii)

New subparagraph 88(1)(c.2)(iii) of the Act provides that for the purposes of paragraph 88(1)(c.2) and subparagraph 88(1)(c)(vi) of the Act, the definition of "specified shareholder" in subsection 248(1) of the Act is to be read as including a reference to "or of any other corporation that is related to the corporation and that has a significant direct or indirect interest in any issued shares of any class of the capital stock of the corporation" rather than the reference to "or of any corporation that is related to the corporation". New subparagraph 88(1)(c.2)(iii) also provides that a corporation is considered not to be a specified shareholder of itself. New subparagraph 88(1)(c.2)(iii) ensures that in determining whether a person is a specified shareholder of a particular corporation for the purposes of paragraph 88(1)(c.2) and subparagraph 88(1)(c)(vi) of the Act only shareholdings "above" the particular corporation and not "below" it are to be considered. In other words, in determining a person's specified shareholder status in a particular corporation, the person's shareholdings in related corporations that have a significant direct or indirect interest in the particular corporation are considered. New subparagraph 88(1)(c.2)(iii) applies to windings-up that begin after November 1994.

Subclause 118(6)

ITA

88(1)(c.3) to (c.6)

Subparagraph 88(1)(c)(vi) of the Act treats a property acquired by the parent on the winding-up of a subsidiary as an ineligible property where the property is subsequently disposed of by the parent as part of the series of transactions in which the parent acquired control of the subsidiary and the property, or any property substituted therefor, is acquired by a non-qualifying person. A non-qualifying person includes a person who owned more than 10 per cent of the shares of a class of the subsidiary before the parent acquired control of the subsidiary. New paragraph 88(1)(c.3) of the Act applies for the purposes of clause 88(1)(c)(vi)(B) of the Act which refers to property distributed to the parent on the winding-up of the subsidiary or property substituted therefor. New subparagraphs 88(1)(c.3)(i) and (ii) of the Act respectively provide that property acquired by a person the fair market value of which is

- wholly or partly attributable to a particular property or properties (other than a specified property as defined in new paragraph 88(1)(c.4) of the Act), or
- determinable primarily by reference to the fair market of a particular property or properties, or to any proceeds from the disposition of a particular property or properties

will be considered to be property acquired by the person in substitution for the particular property or properties where the property is owned by the person at any time after the acquisition of control of the subsidiary. This ensures that only such property owned by a non-qualifying person after the acquisition of control of the subsidiary by the parent will be considered substituted property for the purposes of clause 88(1)(c)(vi)(B). New paragraph 88(1)(c.6) of the Act sets out the time at which control of a corporation will be considered to have been acquired where control of that corporation is acquired pursuant to a court approved plan of arrangement.

An example of property the fair market value of which is determinable primarily by reference to the fair market value of a particular property would be a share or debt the terms of which

provide for a value that is dependent upon or tracks the proceeds from the disposition of the particular property. In addition, in a situation where at the end of the series the vendor holds a majority of the shares of a corporation substantially all of the value of which is attributable to property distributed on the winding-up, the value of those shares will be considered to be determinable primarily by reference to the fair market value of that property.

New paragraph 88(1)(c.3) also provides that (in addition to a specified property) property described in new subparagraphs 88(1)(c.3)(iii), (iv) and (v) will not be considered to be substituted property.

New subparagraph (iii) provides that money received as consideration for the disposition of a particular property or properties will not be considered to be property acquired in substitution therefor.

New subparagraph (iv) provides that substituted property that was not owned by a person at any time after the acquisition of control of the subsidiary by the parent will not be considered to be property acquired in substitution for the particular property or properties.

New subparagraph (v) provides that if a property is described in subparagraph 88(1)(c.3)(i) only because a specified property was received by a person as consideration for the acquisition of a subsidiary's share that property will not be considered to be property acquired in substitution for the particular property or properties.

New paragraph 88(1)(c.3) applies to windings-up that begin after February 21, 1994; however a transitional rule is provided for windings-up that began before June 21, 1996.

New subparagraph 88(1)(c.4) of the Act provides the meaning of specified property for the purpose of new subparagraphs 88(1)(c.3)(i) and (v). A specified property is a property that may be acquired by a person during the series of transactions contemplated in new subparagraph 88(1)(c)(vi) without that acquisition tainting the winding-up. In other words, an acquisition of such property during the series, that includes the acquisition of control of the subsidiary by the parent and the winding-up of the subsidiary into the parent, will not in and by itself cause the capital property distributed to the parent on the winding-up to be ineligible for the step-up in cost provided for

under paragraph 88(1)(c) of the Act. New paragraph 88(1)(c.4) of the Act applies to windings-up that begin after February 21, 1994; however a transitional rule is provided for windings-up that began before June 21, 1996.

A specified property is

- a share of the parent received as consideration for the acquisition of a share of the subsidiary by the parent or by a corporation that was a specified subsidiary corporation of the parent immediately before the acquisition (specified subsidiary corporation is defined in new paragraph 88(1)(c.5) of the Act);
- an indebtedness issued by the parent as consideration for the acquisition of a share of the subsidiary by the parent;
- a share of a taxable Canadian corporation received as consideration for the acquisition of a share of the subsidiary by the taxable Canadian corporation or by the parent where the parent was a specified subsidiary corporation of the taxable Canadian corporation immediately before the acquisition;
- an indebtedness of a taxable Canadian corporation that was issued by it as consideration for the acquisition of a share of the subsidiary by the taxable Canadian corporation or by the parent where the parent was a specified subsidiary corporation of the taxable Canadian corporation immediately before the acquisition;
- where the subsidiary was formed on the amalgamation of two or more predecessor corporations at least one of which was a subsidiary wholly-owned corporation of the parent, a share of the subsidiary that was issued on the amalgamation in exchange for a share of the predecessor and that was redeemed, acquired or cancelled by the subsidiary for money immediately after the amalgamation; and
- where the subsidiary was formed on the amalgamation of two or more predecessor corporations at least one of which was a subsidiary wholly-owned corporation of the parent, a share of the parent that was issued on the amalgamation in exchange for a share of the predecessor corporation and that was redeemed,

acquired or cancelled by the parent for money immediately after the amalgamation.

New paragraph 88(1)(c.5), which generally applies to windings-up that begin after February 21, 1994, provides the meaning of a specified subsidiary corporation for the purpose of new paragraph 88(1)(c.4). A particular corporation is a specified subsidiary corporation of another corporation at any time where the other corporation holds at that time shares of the particular corporation

- that give the shareholder 90 per cent or more of the votes that could be cast under all circumstances at the annual shareholders meeting, and
- having 90 per cent or more of the fair market value of all the issued shares of the capital stock of the particular corporation.

The following examples illustrate the application of new paragraphs 88(1)(c.3), (c.4) and (c.5):

Loss Consolidation

EXAMPLE 1...

Assume Vco, a taxable Canadian corporation, owns 100 per cent of the shares of Lco and 41 per cent of the shares of Tco, a taxable Canadian corporation. The fair market value of the Tco shares owned by Vco is in excess of Vco's cost of those shares. Bco has made a take-over offer for all the shares of Tco. In anticipation of the sale, Vco transfers the Tco shares to Lco on a tax-deferred basis under section 85 of the Act and on the transfer takes back shares of Lco. Lco disposes of the Tco shares to Bco for proceeds equal to the fair market value of the shares. Lco receives money as consideration for the Tco shares. Bco intends to wind up Tco and to step-up the cost of the capital property distributed to it on the winding-up as provided for under paragraph 88(1)(c) of the Act.

Result: New subparagraph 88(1)(c.3)(i) of the Act ensures that the Lco shares acquired by Vco and the Tco shares acquired by Lco will not be considered substituted property for the purposes of

clause 88(1)(c)(vi)(B) of the Act with the result that such shares in and by themselves will not cause the capital property distributed to Bco on the winding-up of Tco to be ineligible property for the purposes of the step-up in paragraph 88(1)(c) of the Act.

EXAMPLE 2 ...

Assume the same facts as in EXAMPLE 1 except that Lco receives money and shares of Bco as consideration for the Tco shares. Substantially all of the consideration received by Lco for its Tco shares is money.

Result: New subparagraph 88(1)(c.3)(i) and the definition "specified property" in new subparagraph 88(1)(c.4)(i) of the Act ensure that the Bco shares acquired by Lco as consideration for the Tco shares will not be considered to be substituted property for the purpose of clause 88(1)(c)(vi)(B) of the Act. New subparagraph 88(1)(c.3)(v) of the Act ensures that the Lco shares acquired by Vco on Vco.'s transfer of the Tco shares to Lco will not be considered to be substituted property for the purpose of clause 88(1)(c)(vi)(B) of the Act. Therefore such shares (the Bco shares and the Lco shares), in and by themselves, will not cause the capital property distributed to Bco on the winding-up of Tco to be ineligible property for the purposes of the step-up in 88(1)(c) of the Act.

Safe Income Crystallization

EXAMPLE 1...

Assume Sco, a taxable Canadian corporation, owns 15 per cent of Tco, a publicly-traded taxable Canadian corporation. Pco makes a takeover offer for all the shares of Tco. In anticipation of the sale of the shares of Tco, Sco incorporates Newco and transfers on a tax-deferred basis under section 85 of the Act all of its Tco shares to Newco in exchange for Newco shares. The adjusted cost base and the paid-up capital of the Newco shares are increased by an amount equal to the so-called "safe income" attributable to the Tco shares that Sco had at the time of the transfer. Sco sells the Newco shares to Pco and receives cash. Pco intends to wind up Newco and to step-up the cost of the capital property (the Tco shares) distributed to it on the

winding-up of Newco. as provided for under paragraph 88(1)(c) of the Act.

Result: New subparagraph 88(1)(c.3)(iv) of the Act ensures that the Newco shares acquired by Sco will not be considered substituted property for the purposes of clause 88(1)(c)(vi)(B) of the Act with the result that such shares, in and by themselves, will not cause the capital property distributed to Pco on the winding-up of Newco to be ineligible property for the purposes of the step-up in paragraph 88(1)(c) of the Act.

Amalgamation Squeeze-Out

EXAMPLE 1...

Assume Aco is a publicly-traded taxable Canadian corporation. Mco. is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Aco. Mco offers to purchase all the shares of Tco. Tco is also a publicly-traded taxable Canadian corporation. In exchange for the shares of Tco, Mco offers the shareholders of Tco a payment of only cash; of cash and shares of Aco; or of only shares of Aco. Under no circumstance, will the Tco shareholders acquire a majority of the shares of Aco. At the option of the Tco shareholder, the shares of Aco may be acquired on a tax deferred basis pursuant to section 85 of the Act. Under the takeover offer, Mco acquires 75 per cent of the shares of Tco. The non-tendering shareholders hold the remaining 25 per cent of the Tco shares. Mco and Tco amalgamate to form NewTco and the non-tendering shareholders receive redeemable preferred shares of NewTco in exchange for their shares of Tco. The preferred shares are redeemed for cash immediately after the amalgamation. Aco intends to wind up NewTco and to step-up the cost of the capital property distributed to it on the winding-up of NewTco as provided for under paragraph 88(1)(c) of the Act.

Result: New subparagraphs 88(1)(c.3)(i) and (c.4)(i) and new paragraph 88(1)(c.5) of the Act ensure that any Aco shares received by the shareholders of Tco in exchange for their shares of Tco acquired by Mco will not be considered to be substituted property for the purposes of clause 88(1)(c)(vi)(B) of the Act. New subparagraphs 88(1)(c.3)(i) and (c.4)(v) of the Act ensure that the shares of NewTco acquired by the shareholders of Tco

will not be considered to be substituted property for the purpose of clause 88(1)(c)(vi)(B) of the Act. Therefore such shares (the Aco shares and the NewTco shares), in and by themselves, will not cause the capital property distributed to Aco on the winding-up of NewTco to be ineligible property for the purpose of the step-up in paragraph 88(1)(c) of the Act.

New paragraph 88(1)(c.6) of the Act provides that for the purpose of new paragraph 88(1)(c.3) and notwithstanding subsection 256(9) of the Act, where control of a corporation is acquired pursuant to articles of arrangement, control will be treated as having been acquired at the end of the day the arrangement becomes effective. New paragraph 88(1)(c.6) applies to windings-up that begin after February 21, 1996; however a transitional rule is provided for windings-up that began before June 21, 1996.

Subclause 118(7)

ITA

88(1)(d)

Paragraph 88(1)(d) of the Act determines for the purpose of paragraph 88(1)(c) of the Act the amount by which a parent corporation may increase the cost of capital property acquired by it on the winding-up of its subsidiary. This paragraph also includes an interpretation provision, which provides that where a parent corporation has been formed after the time that any other corporation with which the parent did not deal at arm's length at any time prior to the winding-up was formed, the parent corporation will be considered to have existed since the existence of the other corporation and to have not been dealing at arms' length with the other corporation since that time. This interpretation provision in paragraph 88(1)(d) is repealed effective for windings-up that begin after February 21, 1994 and added to new subsection 88(1.7) of the Act.

Subclause 118(8)

ITA

88(1)(d.1)

Paragraph 88(1)(d.1) of the Act provides that certain rules in the Act and in the *Income Tax Application Rules* are not to apply to a winding-up governed by subsection 88(1). This amendment deletes the reference in paragraph 88(1)(d.1) to subsection 85(5.1) of the Act, which is being repealed, and adds references to new subsections 13(21.2) and 14(12) of the Act. These changes are, subject to a transitional provision, applicable to windings-up that begin after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 118(9)

ITA

88(1)(d.2) and (d.3)

Paragraph 88(1)(d.2) of the Act applies in determining the time that a taxpayer last acquired control of a subsidiary for the purposes of the rules permitting a parent corporation to obtain, on the winding-up of the subsidiary, an increase in the cost of a capital property (other than an ineligible property) owned by the subsidiary at the time that the parent last acquired control of the subsidiary. This paragraph applies where control of a subsidiary was acquired from a person, or group of persons, with whom the person, or group of persons, who acquired control did not deal at arm's length. Where control of the subsidiary is acquired by the person, or group, because of a bequest or inheritance, the person or group, will be considered to have dealt at arm's length with the person who bequeathed the shares of the subsidiary.

New paragraphs 88(1)(d.2) and (d.3) of the Act ensure that if control of a subsidiary corporation is acquired by a person or group (the "acquiror") as a consequence of the death of an individual, the acquiror will be considered to have last acquired control of the subsidiary immediately after the individual's death from a person who dealt at arm's length with the acquiror. New paragraphs 88(1)(d.2) and (d.3) apply to windings-up that begin after December 20, 1991.

Subclauses 118(10) and (11)

ITA

88(1)(e.2)

Paragraph 88(1)(e.2) of the Act provides for the flow-through of a subsidiary's net "preferred-earnings amount" to its parent on a winding-up to which subsection 88(1) of the Act applies. A corporation's preferred-earnings amount was defined in former subsection 181(2) of the Act and was used in determining the amount of corporate distributions tax payable under former Part II of the Act. The reference to subparagraph 87(2)(y.1) in subsection 88(1)(e.2) is deleted, and subparagraphs 88(1)(e.2)(xiv) and (xv) are repealed, as a consequence of the previous repeal of the Part II tax. These amendments apply on windings-up that commence after June 1995.

Subclause 118(12)

ITA

88(1.7)

Paragraph 88(1)(d) of the Act determines for the purpose of paragraph 88(1)(c) of the Act the amount by which a parent corporation may increase the cost of capital property acquired by it on the winding-up of its subsidiary. Paragraph 88(1)(d) also includes an interpretation provision which provides that where a parent corporation has been formed after the time that any other corporation with which the parent did not deal at arm's length at any time prior to the winding-up was formed, the parent corporation will be considered to have existed since the existence of the other corporation and to have not been dealing at arm's length with the other corporation since that time. Effective for windings-up that begin after February 21, 1994, this interpretation provision is removed from paragraph 88(1)(d) and is included in new subsection 88(1.7) of the Act.

New subsection 88(1.7) is consequential on the 1994 amendments that resulted in the addition of the definition "ineligible property" to paragraph 88(1)(c).

Clause 119

Definition - Canadian Corporation

ITA
89(1)

Paragraph (d) of the French version of the definition "Canadian corporation" in subsection 89(1) of the Act is amended to correct the reference to the time at which each of the corporations from which a new corporation is formed through the amalgamation, merger or other reorganization of the former corporations has to have been a Canadian corporation. The word "quelconque" is therefore substituted for "donné".

The amendment is effective as of June 15, 1994, that is the date when the discrepancy between the French and English versions of paragraph (d) of that definition was introduced.

Clause 120

Disposition of Shares in Foreign Affiliate

ITA
93(4)

Subsection 93(4) of the Act applies where a Canadian taxpayer or a foreign affiliate of a Canadian taxpayer (the "vendor") has acquired shares of one foreign affiliate on the disposition of shares of another foreign affiliate. Any capital loss realized by the vendor on the disposition is denied and added to the vendor's adjusted cost base of the shares of the acquired affiliate.

This amendment deletes the reference in subsection 93(4) to subsection 85(4) of the Act (which is being repealed), and adds a reference to new subsection 40(3.3) of the Act (which largely replaces subsection 85(4) insofar as it applied to non-depreciable capital property).

The amendment applies to dispositions that take place after April 26, 1995, subject to certain exceptions. These are found in clause 247 of

this bill and generally exclude transactions in progress before April 27, 1995. Readers should refer to the notes to clause 247 for more detail.

Clause 121

Offshore Investment Fund Property

ITA

94.1(2)

Section 94.1 of the Act contains an anti-avoidance provision that applies where a taxpayer acquires an "offshore investment fund property" and certain other conditions are satisfied. Where this is the case, an additional amount is added in computing the taxpayer's income. The additional amount for a taxation year is generally equal to the "designated cost" of the property multiplied by the average prescribed rate of interest for the year, minus any other income of the taxpayer from the property for the year.

The "designated cost" to a taxpayer of an offshore investment fund property is, pursuant to the description of A in the formula in the definition, determined by reference to its cost amount. Because of the description of D in the formula, the "designated cost" of property held by a taxpayer at the end of 1984 (or the end of 1985 where subsection 94.1(3) of the Act applies) is increased to the extent that its fair market value exceeded its cost amount at that time.

The description of A is amended in two ways. First, the adjustments to the adjusted cost base of capital property arising because of the debt forgiveness rules in section 80 of the Act are to be ignored for the purposes of computing the "designated cost" of the property. This change applies to taxation years ending after April 26, 1995. Second, the cost of a property is to be computed without reference to subparagraph 53(2)(c)(i.3) and new section 143.2 of the Act, which may apply when determining the cost of a taxpayer's partnership interest or the cost of a taxpayer's tax shelter investment, respectively. This change applies after September 26, 1994.

The description of D in the definition is amended, for taxation years that commence after June 20, 1996 so that it does not apply only to

cases in which a taxpayer has held the property since the end of 1984 (or since the end of 1985 where subsection 94.1(3) of the Act applies). In other cases, the value determined for D is the total of two amounts. The first amount is the fair market value of the property at the time the taxpayer acquired it minus the cost amount to the taxpayer of the property at that time. The second amount is the total of all amounts that would have been included in the designated cost of the property because of additional amounts that would have been included in the taxpayer's income under this section if the designated cost of the property when originally acquired included the excess of its fair market value at that time over its cost to the taxpayer at that time. This amendment is intended to ensure an appropriate designated cost of an offshore investment fund property where the property is acquired by the taxpayer at a cost that is less than the property's fair market value.

Clause 122

Foreign Accrual Property Income

ITA

95

Section 95 of the Act defines a number of terms and provides certain rules that apply for the purposes of subdivision i of Division B in Part I of the Act, which relates to shareholders of non-resident corporations.

Subclauses 122(1) to (4)

ITA

95(1)

"excluded property"

The amendment to paragraph (a) of the French version of the definition "excluded property" in subsection 95(1) of the Act clarifies that the reference to the expression "income from an active business" refers to the definition of that expression in subsection 95(1). The expression "revenu provenant d'une entreprise exploitée activement" is therefore substituted for "revenu d'une entreprise exploitée

activement", the former expression being defined in subsection 95(1). This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

"foreign accrual property income"

Subsection 94.1(1) of the Act contains an anti-avoidance provision relating to investors in offshore investment funds. That subsection applies where a taxpayer has invested in an offshore investment fund and one of the main reasons for the investment was to reduce or defer the tax liability that would have applied to the income generated from the underlying assets of the fund if such income had been earned directly by the taxpayer. In such a case the taxpayer is required to include an amount in income determined by applying the prescribed rate of interest to the designated cost of the interest in the fund. This rule also applies, with modifications, in computing the foreign accrual property income of a controlled foreign affiliate of a taxpayer. Those modifications are set out in the description of C in the formula in the definition of "foreign accrual property income" in subsection 95(1) of the Act.

The description of C in the definition "foreign accrual property income" in subsection 95(1) of the Act is being amended to add new paragraphs (c) and (d) thereto.

When subsection 94.1(1) is applied in respect of a taxpayer resident in Canada, paragraph 94.1(1)(a) excludes a controlled foreign affiliate of the taxpayer from the class of non-resident entities that are offshore investment fund properties in respect of which subsection 94.1(1) may apply. This is the case since the controlled foreign affiliate's investment income is already subject to accrual taxation under the provisions relating to foreign accrual property income. Where the description of C in the definition "foreign accrual property income" applies so that subsection 94.1(1) is read as being applicable to a controlled foreign affiliate of a taxpayer resident in Canada (i.e. subsection 94.1(1) is read such that the controlled foreign affiliate is the taxpayer referred to therein) it is appropriate to exclude other controlled foreign affiliates of the taxpayer resident in Canada from the class of non-resident entities that are offshore investment fund properties in respect of which subsection 94.1(1) may apply.

New paragraph (c) of the description of C provides that, in computing the foreign accrual property income of a controlled foreign affiliate of

a taxpayer resident in Canada arising under subsection 94.1(1), that subsection does not apply to include an amount in the income of the affiliate in respect of an investment in another controlled foreign affiliate of the same taxpayer resident in Canada. This amendment applies to taxation years that end after November, 1991.

New paragraph (d) of the description of C provides a modification to paragraph 94.1(1)(g). Subsection 94.1(1) may include in a taxpayer's income an amount determined by applying the prescribed rate of interest to the designated cost of the interest in the offshore investment fund property. In order to prevent double taxation, the amount required under subsection 94.1(1) to be included in the taxpayer's income is reduced under paragraph 94.1(1)(g) by distributions or other amounts in respect of the property (other than capital gains) that are required by any other provision of the Act to be included in the taxpayer's income for the relevant year.

Where the description of C applies so that subsection 94.1(1) is read as being applicable to a controlled foreign affiliate of a taxpayer resident in Canada, it is intended that paragraph 94.1(1)(g) reduce the amount included in the controlled foreign affiliate's income only by distributions or other amounts in respect of the property that increase the foreign accrual property income of the affiliate that is included in the income of the taxpayer resident in Canada to the extent of that taxpayer's share thereof. No more is required to prevent double taxation. New paragraph (d) of the description of C is added for greater certainty specifically to exclude from the reduction provided by paragraph 94.1(1)(g) any income of the controlled foreign affiliate of the taxpayer resident in Canada that is not included in the controlled foreign affiliate's foreign accrual property income for the relevant year. For this purpose, the value of C is treated as nil to eliminate circularity in applying this new paragraph.

New paragraph (d) of the description of C in the definition of "foreign accrual property income" in subsection 95(1) applies to taxation years that begin on or after June 20, 1996.

"lending of money"

The definition of "lending of money" is relevant for the purpose of the definition of "investment business". "Lending of money" by a person (the lender) is defined to include

- the acquisition of trade accounts receivable of another person (the borrower) owing by persons that deal at arm's length with the lender or of interests in such trade accounts receivable,
- the acquisition of loans made by and lending assets of another person (the borrower) owing by persons that deal at arm's length with the lender or of interests in such loans or lending assets,
- the acquisition of foreign resource properties of other persons (the borrower) other than resource properties that are rents or royalties payable by persons that do not deal at arm's length with the lender, and
- the sale by the lender of loans or lending assets or an interest in loans or lending assets where the loans or lending assets were owing by persons that deal at arm's length with the lender.

The definition "lending of money" is being amended such that the definition "lending asset" in subsection 248(1) of the Act will be read without the words "but does not include a prescribed property" for the purpose of the lending of money definition. The effect of this amendment is to permit a debt instrument purchased by a foreign affiliate to qualify as a lending asset notwithstanding that it may have represented inventory to the person from whom it was acquired.

This amendment generally applies to taxation years of a foreign affiliate of a taxpayer that begin after 1994 except that, if there has been a change to the taxation year of a foreign affiliate of a taxpayer in 1994 and after February 22, 1994, this amendment will apply to taxation years of such foreign affiliate that end after 1994. However, where a written request to change the taxation year had been made before February 22, 1994 to the income taxation authority of the country in which the affiliate was resident and subject to income taxation, or where the change in taxation year causes the first taxation year that begins after 1994 to begin earlier than if there had been no change in the affiliate's taxation year, this new definition will remain applicable for taxation years that begin after 1994. For taxation years that end before October 1997 the reference to "prescribed property" in the definition of "lending asset" will be read as "prescribed security". This change is consequential on the introduction of the new definition of "lending asset" in subsection 248(1).

"trust company"

Subsection 95(1) of the Act is amended to add thereto the definition of "trust company". This definition will be relevant for the purposes of subparagraph 95(2)(1)(iv), paragraphs 95(2.1)(a) and (2.3)(a) and paragraph (b) of the definition "indebtedness" in subsection 95(2.5) of the Act. This definition provides that a trust company includes a corporation that is resident in Canada that is a "loan company" as defined in subsection 2(1) of the *Canadian Payments Association Act*.

This new definition applies to taxation years of a foreign affiliate that begin after 1994 except that, where there has been a change to the taxation year of a foreign affiliate of a taxpayer in 1994 and after February 22, 1994, this new definition will apply to taxation years of such foreign affiliate that end after 1994. However, where a written request to change the taxation year had been made before February 22, 1994 to the income taxation authority of the country in which the affiliate was resident and subject to income taxation, or where the change in taxation year causes the first taxation year commencing after 1994 to commence earlier than if there had been no change in the affiliate's taxation year, this new definition will remain applicable for taxation years that begin after 1994.

Subclause 122(5)

ITA

95(2)(g.1)(ii)

Paragraph 95(2)(g.1) of the Act clarifies that, for the purposes of computing foreign accrual property income (FAPI) of a foreign affiliate, the rules in section 80 of the Act will apply with respect to obligations settled or extinguished that relate to FAPI. However, many of the debt forgiveness rules are ignored for this purpose.

Subparagraph 95(2)(g.1)(ii) of the Act is amended to eliminate the reference therein to subsection 80(17) of the Act, consequential on the repeal of that subsection.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 21, 1994.

Clause 123**Partnerships and their Members**

ITA

96

Section 96 of the Act provides general rules for determining the income or loss of a partnership and its members.

Subclauses (1) to (4)

ITA

96(2.2)

Subsection 96(2.2) of the Act defines the "at-risk amount" of a limited partner for the purposes of determining deductible losses and tax credits allocated to the partner. Subsection 96(2.2) is amended in four ways.

The starting point in the calculation of a partner's at-risk amount is the adjusted cost base of the partner's interest. However, if an amount of limited-recourse indebtedness is used to acquire a partner's partnership interest, that amount is deducted from the cost of the interest under subparagraph 53(2)(c)(i.3) or under new subsection 143.2(6) of the Act. Paragraph 96(2.2)(c) of the Act, however, also reduces the at-risk amount by certain loans owing to the partnership. Paragraph 96(2.2)(c) is, therefore, amended to ensure that the reduction under new subsection 143.2(6) of the Act is not deducted a second time under that paragraph in computing the partner's at-risk amount. This amendment applies after November 1994.

Paragraph 96(2.2)(d) of the Act provides a reduction in computing a partner's at-risk amount for any amount or benefit to which a limited partner, or a person not dealing at arm's length with the partner, is or may be entitled, where the amount or benefit is intended to protect the partner or person from any loss in respect of the partner's investment. Paragraph 96(2.2)(d) is amended consequential on new section 143.2 of the Act to specifically refer to "a loan or any other form of indebtedness" as being a type of amount or benefit to which that paragraph applies. Subparagraph 96(2.2)(d)(vi) of the Act

ensures, however, that paragraph 96(2.2)(d) does not apply in respect of an indebtedness where the cost of a limited partner's partnership interest has already been reduced under new subsection 143.2(6). Reference may be made to the commentary accompanying new section 143.2 of the Act. This amendment applies after November 1994.

Subparagraphs 96(2.2)(d)(iv) and (v) of the Act are repealed. Subparagraph 96(2.2)(d)(iv) provided an exception from the application of paragraph 96(2.2)(d) for agreements to dispose of a partnership interest for an amount not exceeding the fair market value of the interest. Subparagraph 96(2.2)(d)(vi) provided an exception from the application of paragraph 96(2.2)(d) in the case of certain types of gross revenue guarantees. Generally, the repeal of subparagraphs 96(2.2)(d)(iv) and (v) applies to partnership interests acquired by a taxpayer after April 26, 1995.

The portion of subsection 96(2.2) after subparagraph (d)(vii) is amended consequential on the introduction of new section 143.2 of the Act. Paragraph 96(2.2)(e) of the Act provides that, where a taxpayer described in paragraph 96(2.2)(d) has a right to exchange a partnership interest to which paragraph (d) applies for some other property, the owner of the partnership interest is considered to be entitled to an amount or benefit protecting the partner from loss to the extent of the fair market value of the other property at the time at which the at-risk amount is being computed. This amendment clarifies that paragraph 96(2.2)(e) applies where the taxpayer entitled to exchange all or any part of the partner's partnership interest is a person not dealing at arm's length with the taxpayer. Similarly, paragraph 96(2.2)(f) of the Act provides that, where a taxpayer's borrowing in respect of a partnership interest is guaranteed or otherwise backed by a security or similar indemnity, or covenant, provided by the partnership or a person or partnership not dealing at arm's length with the partnership, an at-risk reduction is required under subsection 96(2.2) in respect of the outstanding balance of the borrowing. In addition to clarifying that paragraph 96(2.2)(f) applies where the guarantee is provided to a person not dealing at arm's length to the taxpayer, paragraph 96(2.2)(f) is also amended to remove the reference to the partnership or a person or partnership not dealing at arm's length with the partnership. Generally, this amendment applies to partnership interests acquired after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 123(5)**Limited Partner**

ITA

96(2.4)

Subsection 96(2.4) of the Act provides an extended definition of "limited partner" which is relevant for the purposes of restrictions on partnership investment tax credits and losses.

In addition to grammatical changes to subsection 96(2.4), paragraph 96(2.4)(b) of the Act is amended to clarify its application in circumstances where a member of a partnership, or a person not dealing at arm's length with the member, is entitled to receive an amount or obtain a benefit referred to in certain parts of paragraph 96(2.2)(d), either immediately or in the future and either absolutely or contingently. This amendment applies to fiscal periods that end after November 1994.

Subclause 123(6)**Agreement or Election of Partnership Members**

ITA

96(3)

Subsection 96(3) of the Act provides rules that apply if a member of a partnership makes an election under certain provisions of the Act for a purpose that is relevant to the computation of the member's income from the partnership. In such case, the election will be valid only if it is made on behalf of all the members of the partnership and the member had authority to act for the partnership.

Subsection 96(3) is amended to treat an election filed by a member under section 15.2 and new subsections 249.1(4) and (6) of the Act in the same way as other elections referred to in subsection 96(3). This amendment generally applies to fiscal periods that end after December 2, 1992.

Clause 124

Contribution of Property to Partnership

ITA

97

Subsection 97(2) of the Act provides the rules which allow a person to transfer certain types of properties on a tax-deferred "rollover" basis to a partnership. The amendment to this subsection deletes the reference to subsection 85(5.1) of the Act (which is being repealed), and adds a reference to new subsection 13(21.2) of the Act (which replaces subsection 85(5.1)).

Subsection 97(3) of the Act currently denies a deduction for any capital loss realized by a majority interest partner on the transfer of property to a partnership. The term "majority interest partner" is defined in subsection 97(3.1) of the Act.

Subsection 97(3) is being repealed as a consequence of the introduction of new subsection 40(3.3) of the Act. Under subsection 40(3.3), a loss arising on the transfer of property to a partnership of which the transferor is a majority interest partner will continue to be denied at that time. However, that loss will no longer be added to the adjusted cost base of any interest held by the transferor in the partnership but will, instead, be deferred until the earliest of certain events (described in the commentary to subsection 40(3.3)).

A definition of majority interest partner is also being added to section 248(1) of the Act, thus enabling subsection 97(3.1) to be repealed.

The amendments to section 97 of the Act apply to dispositions that take place after April 26, 1995, subject to certain exceptions. These are found in clause 247 of this bill, and generally exclude transactions in progress before April 27, 1995. Readers should refer to the notes to clause 247 for more detail.

Clause 125**Disposition of a Partnership Interest**

ITA

98.1(1)(a)

Section 98.1 of the Act provides rules that apply to a taxpayer who ceases to be a member of a partnership but continues to have a residual interest in the partnership. Paragraph 98.1(1)(a) of the Act provides, among other things, that the residual interest will be considered to be an interest in the partnership and the partner will be considered not to have disposed of that interest unless the taxpayer ceases to be a resident of Canada or the taxpayer dies.

Paragraph 98.1(1)(a) is amended, as a consequence of the elimination of the \$100,000 lifetime capital gains exemption, to add a reference to section 110.6. This amendment deems a disposition of the residual interest to occur where the taxpayer elects to recognize gains in respect of the partnership interest that accrued to the end of February 22, 1994 thereby obtaining the benefit of the exemption in respect of those gains. Amended paragraph 98.1(1)(a) applies to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 126**Loss Relating to Interest in a Partnership**

ITA

100(4)

In certain circumstances, subsection 100(4) of the Act reduces the capital loss of a corporate partner arising from the corporation's disposition of a partnership interest. The capital loss otherwise determined is reduced to the extent that the corporation's share of the partnership's loss would have been reduced under subsection 112(3.1) or (4.2) of the Act. Subsections 112(3.1) and (4.2) are stop-loss rules which reduce a partner's share of a partnership loss arising from the partnership's disposition of shares of the capital stock of a corporation. The loss reduction is equal to certain dividends received on the shares and distributed to the partner. Subsections 112(3.1) and

(4.2) would not apply to reduce a partner's loss where, instead of the partnership disposing of the corporate shares, the partner disposes of its interest in the partnership. Subsection 100(4) ensures that the capital loss from the disposition of the partnership interest is reduced to reflect the amount of any capital loss that would have been denied in respect of the shares held by the partnership in a notional disposition of the shares at their fair market value. For the purposes of calculating the loss reduction, the provision also treats the partnership's fiscal period as having ended immediately before the disposition of the partnership interest.

The provision is amended so that a loss from the disposition of an interest in a partnership may be reduced where the interest is held by another partnership. The amended provision applies in circumstances where amended subsection 112(3.1) would have applied to reduce a partner's share of a partnership loss arising from the disposition of a share held by any partnership. Since amended subsection 112(3.1) does not reduce losses at the partnership level, a capital loss reduction under amended subsection 100(4) will apply only at the individual or corporate partner level. Accordingly, where amended subsection 112(3.1) would have applied to reduce a partner's share of a partnership loss arising from the disposition of a corporate share held by another partnership, amended subsection 100(4) will reduce the partner's capital loss arising from the disposition of an interest in the second partnership. For the purposes of calculating the loss reduction, the partnership is treated as having disposed of the corporate shares at their fair market value and the fiscal period of all partnerships are treated as having ended immediately before the disposition of the partnership interest.

Subsection 100(4) is also amended to remove the reference to subsection 112(4.2) of the Act because amended subsection 112(4.2) does not apply to shares held by partnerships.

Amended subsection 100(4) applies to dispositions that occur after April 26, 1995.

Clause 127**Trusts and their Beneficiaries**

ITA

104

Section 104 of the Act provides rules governing the tax treatment of trusts and their beneficiaries.

Subclause 127(1)

ITA

104(4)(a)

Subsection 104(4) of the Act contains provisions that relate to what is generally referred to as the "21-year deemed realization" rule for trusts. Subparagraph 104(4)(a)(i.1) of the Act, which deals with certain spousal trusts, refers to paragraph 70(5.2)(d) or (f) of the Act. Those paragraphs were amended by the Statutes of Canada 1994, chapter 21 (Bill C-27), which restructured subsection 70(5.2) of the Act. This amendment to subparagraph 104(4)(a)(i.1) updates the corresponding references so that they correctly reflect that restructuring. It applies to acquisitions and dispositions that occur after 1992, the same period to which the corresponding amendment to subsection 70(5.2) applies.

Subclause 127(2)

ITA

104(6)

Subsection 104(6) of the Act generally permits a trust to deduct in a taxation year any trust income payable to a beneficiary under the trust.

Subsection 104(6) is amended to provide that, once a trust governed by an RRSP or RRIF is no longer exempt from tax after the death of the RRSP or RRIF annuitant, only trust income actually paid to a beneficiary in a taxation year is deductible in computing income. Because subsection 104(13) of the Act does not apply to trusts

governed by RRSPs and RRIFs, such amounts paid would be included in income under subsection 146(8) or 146.3(5) of the Act.

This amendment applies to the 1996 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 127(3)

Late, Amended or Revoked Election

ITA

104(14.01) and (14.02)

Subsection 104(14) of the Act provides for a joint election by a trust and a preferred beneficiary under the trust that allows an amount not exceeding the beneficiary's share of the trust's accumulating income to be deducted in computing the income of the trust and included in computing the income of the beneficiary. Ordinarily, the election is required by subsection 2800(2) of the *Income Tax Regulations* to be filed within 90 days after the end of the trust's taxation year in respect of which the election is made. For the trust's taxation year that includes February 22, 1994, the filing deadline is extended to coincide with the filing deadline for the capital gains election under subsection 110.6(19) of the Act. Section 104 of the Act is amended, applicable to trusts' taxation years that include February 22, 1994, by adding new subsections 104(14.01) and (14.02) of the Act.

New subsection 104(14.01) extends the filing deadline for a preferred beneficiary election, and allows such an election to be amended or revoked, where the late or amended election or the revocation is made solely because of a late or amended capital gains election or the revocation of a capital gains election. In these circumstances, the filing deadline for the preferred beneficiary election or the amendment or revocation thereof is extended to coincide with the filing of the late or amended capital gains election or the revocation of the capital gains election, as the case may be.

New subsection 104(14.02) provides that an election or an amended election made in accordance with subsection 104(14.01) will be considered to have been made within the prescribed time for making the election provided for in subsection 104(14), and that the revoked election will be considered, except for the purposes of subsections 104(14.01) and (14.02), to have never been made.

Subclause 127(4)**Designation in Respect of Non-Taxable Dividends**

ITA

104(20)

For the purposes of certain loss limitation rules in the Act, subsection 104(20) of the Act requires a trust to designate the non-taxable dividends that are received by the trust and subsequently distributed to the trust's beneficiaries. The amendment to this provision is consequential on the amendments to the loss limitation rules in section 112 of the Act and the addition of paragraph 107(1)(d) to the Act. The amended loss limitation rules and new paragraph 107(1)(d) are added to the list of purposes of the Act for which designations will be considered to have been made under subsection 104(20).

This amendment applies after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 127(5)**Late, Amended or Revoked Designation**

ITA

104(21.01) to (21.03)

Subsection 104(21) of the Act permits a trust to designate in its return of income for the year a portion of its net taxable capital gain as a taxable capital gain of a beneficiary of the trust.

Section 104 of the Act is amended, applicable to taxation years that include February 22, 1994, by adding proposed new subsections 104(21.01), (21.02) and (21.03) of the Act.

New subsection 104(21.01) allows a trust that has filed its return of income for the year which includes February 22, 1994 to subsequently designate an amount under subsection 104(21), or amend or revoke a designation made thereunder, where such designation, amendment or revocation is solely because of changes to the election made under subsection 110.6(19) of the Act and subsection 110.6(25), (26) or (27) of the Act applies to those changes.

The trust must file such designation, amendment or revocation, and an amended return for the year, with the amended or revoked election under subsection 110.6(25), (26) or (27) of the Act.

New subsection 104(21.02) provides that a designation, amendment or revocation referred to in subsection 104(21.01) that affects an amount determined in respect of a beneficiary under subsection 104(21.2) may only be made where the trust makes the corresponding changes to an amount designated under subsection (21.2) in respect of the beneficiary. The trust must file these changes with the Minister at the same time as the trust files the changes under subsection 104(21.01).

New subsection 104(21.03) provides that a designation, amended designation or revocation of an amount by a trust under subsection 104(21) or (21.2) that is in accordance with subsection 104(21.01) will be considered to have been made in the trust's return of income for the year that includes February 22, 1994. The designation that is revoked shall be deemed, but for the purposes of this subsection and subsections 104(21.01) and (21.02), to have been made in that return of income.

Clause 128

Dispositions Related to Trusts

ITA
107

Section 107 of the Act provides rules relating to the acquisition and disposition of interests in, and property of, trusts.

Subclause 128(1)

ITA
107(1)(c) and (d)

Subsection 107(1) of the Act contains special rules that apply to the disposition of an interest in a trust. Paragraph 107(1)(c) of the Act is a "stop-loss" rule which reduces a corporate beneficiary's capital loss from the disposition of an interest in a trust. The loss otherwise

realized by the beneficiary is reduced by all dividends designated under subsection 104(19) or (20) of the Act by the trust in respect of the beneficiary. In computing the amount of loss reduction, dividends that reduced a capital loss of the beneficiary from a previous disposition of an interest in the same trust are excluded. Where a trust realizes a loss on the disposition of a share, the stop-loss rules in section 112 of the Act may apply to reduce the loss otherwise determined by the amount of certain dividends received by the trust on the share. However, these stop-loss rules would not apply where a beneficiary which holds a capital interest in the trust disposes of the interest and realizes a loss that can be attributed to the reduced value of shares held by the trust. Paragraph 107(1)(c) ensures that the appropriate loss reduction is made in such circumstances.

Paragraph 107(1)(c) is amended so that it applies to reduce the loss, not merely the capital loss, from the disposition of a capital interest in a trust. This amendment applies to dispositions that occur after 1997.

Paragraph 107(1)(c) is amended in its application to taxable dividends received by corporate beneficiaries so that only those taxable dividends that are deductible by the beneficiary will be applied to reduce the loss from the disposition. This amendment applies to dispositions that occur after April 26, 1995.

Paragraph 107(1)(c) is also amended so that it applies to other taxpayers (except for members of partnerships who are dealt with under new paragraph 107(1)(d) of the Act). Where the beneficiary is another trust, all amounts designated under subsection 104(19) or (20) in respect of the beneficiary will reduce the beneficiary's capital loss from the disposition of an interest in the trust which designated the dividends. Consistent with the exclusion for mutual fund trusts from the stop-loss rules in amended subsection 112(3.2) of the Act, this rule does not apply to a beneficiary trust which is a mutual fund trust. Where the beneficiary is a natural person, only amounts designated under subsection 104(20) in respect of the beneficiary will reduce a capital loss from the disposition of an interest in the trust. These amendments apply to dispositions that occur after April 26, 1995.

New paragraph 107(1)(d) provides similar rules where a partnership realizes a loss from a disposition of an interest in a trust. However,

since the partnership which disposes of the share is treated as a flow-through entity, the loss reduction is performed at the partner level. The new provision does not apply to reduce the loss of a partnership that is a member of another partnership and applies only where the partner is a corporation or individual (other than a mutual fund trust). Accordingly, where a partnership is a member of another partnership which realizes a loss from the disposition of a trust interest, the loss of the partners of the first partnership may be reduced under new paragraph 107(1)(d). These amendments apply to dispositions that occur after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 128(2)

Cost of Capital Interest in a Trust

ITA

107(1.1)

Subsection 107(1.1) of the Act provides, for the purposes of subsection 107(1) of the Act, that the cost of a capital interest in a trust will be nil, except where the interest is acquired from the previous capital beneficiary of the trust or where the interest is issued to taxpayer for consideration equal to the fair market value of the trust interest. Subsection 107(1.1) is amended as a consequence of the elimination of the \$100,000 lifetime capital gains exemption to add a reference to an election made under new subsection 110.6(19) of the Act. This amendment ensures that where a taxpayer makes an election to recognize gains in respect of the taxpayer's capital interest accrued to the end of February 22, 1994 and the trust does not elect in respect of any property of the trust, the taxpayer's cost of that interest will be the amount determined in respect thereof under paragraph 110.6(19)(a). New subsection 107(1.1) applies to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 128(3)

ITA

107(2)(b)

Paragraph 107(2)(b) of the Act is amended, applicable to distributions after 1993, to permit an additional amount determined under new subsection 107(2.2) of the Act to be included in the cost of property

distributed to a beneficiary of a trust described in paragraph (h), (i) or (j) of the definition "flow-through entity" in subsection 39.1(1) of the Act in satisfaction of all or a portion of the beneficiary's interest in the trust. A trust described in paragraph (h), (i) or (j) of the definition "flow-through entity" in subsection 39.1(1) is also a prescribed trust under section 4800.1 of the *Income Tax Regulations* for the purpose of subsection 107(2) of the Act.

Subclause 128(4)

Other Distributions

ITA

107(2.1)

Subsection 107(2.1) of the Act sets out rules that apply on a distribution of property, by a trust other than a personal or a prescribed trust, in satisfaction of all or part of a beneficiary's capital interest. The subsection is amended to clarify that it does not apply to a disposition that forms part of a qualifying exchange under section 132.2 of the Act. A qualifying exchange is a tax-deferred transfer of property from one mutual fund to another, and includes the disposition by investors in the transferor fund of their shares or units of that fund in exchange for units of the transferee fund.

To coincide with the introduction of section 132.2, this amendment applies to distributions made after June 1994.

Subclause 128(5)

Flow-Through Entity

ITA

107(2.2)

New subsection 107(2.2) of the Act is consequential on the elimination of the \$100,000 lifetime capital gains exemption for gains arising on dispositions that occur after February 22, 1994 and the introduction of the mechanism in subsection 110.6(19) of the Act for recognizing gains accrued to that date. Where an individual recognizes a capital gain accrued to that date on an interest in, or a share of the capital stock of, a flow-through entity (as defined in

subsection 39.1(1) of the Act), the amount of the gain is credited to a special account referred to as the individual's exempt capital gains balance in respect of the entity. Claims may be made against this account to reduce gains that are flowed out to the individual by the entity for taxation years before 2005 and gains realized on dispositions of interests in or shares of the entity for those years.

A beneficiary of a trust described in paragraph (h), (i) or (j) of the definition "flow-through entity" in subsection 39.1(1) may elect under subsection 110.6(19) and establish an exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust. Distributions of property from such a trust to a beneficiary occur on the rollover basis set out in subsection 107(2) of the Act.

New subsection 107(2.2) is available to provide an addition to the cost to the beneficiary of each distributed property determined under paragraph 107(2)(b) of the Act to permit the beneficiary potentially to benefit from an undepleted exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust. A beneficiary of a trust described above who receives a distribution of property, other than money, in satisfaction of all or a portion of the beneficiary's interests in the trust may file an election with Revenue Canada in respect of a particular property received.

The amount designated in the election in respect of a particular property must not exceed the lesser of two amounts. The first amount is the beneficiary's exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust for the year minus the total of all reductions in capital gains in the year because of the beneficiary's exempt capital gains balance, $\frac{4}{3}$ of all reductions in taxable capital gains in the year because of the beneficiary's exempt capital gains balance and all amounts included because of subsection 107(2.2) in the cost of other property received by the beneficiary in the year. The second amount is the fair market value of the particular property minus the amount deemed to be the cost of the particular property under paragraph 107(2)(b). Thus the cost of a property cannot be bumped to an amount higher than its fair market value under this provision. An election in respect of a property received by the beneficiary must be filed in prescribed form by the beneficiary's filing-due date for the taxation year in which the property was received.

New subsection 107(2.2) applies to distributions made after 1993; however, new subsection 107(2.2) applies only where property is distributed before 2005. After 2004, paragraph 53(1)(p) of the Act increases the adjusted cost base to a beneficiary of an interest in a trust to the extent of any undepleted exempt capital gains balance of the beneficiary in respect of the trust. A prescribed form filed under subsection 107(2.2) before the end of the sixth month after the month that the bill that includes this amendment is assented to is deemed to be filed on time.

Subclause 128(6)

ITA

107(6)

Subsection 107(6) of the Act is an anti-avoidance rule designed to deal with an acquisition of a capital interest in a trust that has a property with an accrued loss. Where the property is distributed to the beneficiary in satisfaction of that interest, any loss on a subsequent disposition of the property will be denied to the extent that it can be considered to have accrued while owned by the trust **and** at a time when neither the beneficiary, a person related to the beneficiary nor a partnership of which the beneficiary or a related person was a majority interest partner, had a capital interest in the trust.

This subsection is amended as a consequence of the introduction of the concept of "affiliated persons" in new section 251.1 of the Act. As amended, subsection 107(6) will limit the recognition of a loss only to the extent that it arose when neither the beneficiary nor a person affiliated with the beneficiary had a capital interest in the trust. For this purpose, the affiliation test set out in new section 251.1 is to be read without reference to the extended definition of "controlled" in subsection 251.1(2) of the Act.

Amended subsection 107(6) applies after April 26, 1995.

Clause 129

Trusts

ITA

108

Section 108 of the Act sets out certain definitions and rules that apply for the purposes of subdivision k which deals with the taxation of trusts and their beneficiaries.

Subclauses 129(1) and (2)

ITA

108(1)

"excluded property"

The definition of "excluded property" in subsection 108(1) of the Act is amended to replace its reference to property referred to in clauses 115(1)(b)(v)(A) to (D) of the Act with a reference to taxable Canadian property. This amendment makes no substantive change to the definition, but simplifies and clarifies it. The amended definition applies after April 26, 1995.

"trust"

A "trust" is defined in subsection 108(1) of the Act, for the purposes of the 21-year deemed disposition rules and other specified measures, to exclude certain listed trusts. Under paragraph (e.1) of the definition, trusts governed by eligible funeral arrangements are among the excluded trusts for these purposes.

Paragraph (e.1) of the definition is amended so that cemetery care trusts are likewise excluded, in cases where such trusts might not be otherwise be considered to be trusts governed by eligible funeral arrangements. For further detail, see the commentary below on the definition "cemetery care trust" in subsection 148.1(1) of the Act.

This amendment applies to the 1993 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclauses 129(3) to (6)

ITA

108(2)

Subsection 108(2) of the Act defines the expression "unit trust". A trust must qualify as a "unit trust" in order to meet the conditions for qualifying as a "mutual fund trust" under subsection 132(6) of the Act.

Paragraph 108(2)(b) of the Act is amended so "interests" in real property, as defined by subsection 248(4) of the Act, are treated in the same manner as real property for the purposes of determining whether a trust is a unit trust. Under subsection 248(4), an "interest" in real property includes a leasehold interest in real property.

Paragraph 108(2)(b) is also amended so that share warrants, debentures, notes and other similar obligations are treated in the same manner as shares and bonds, mortgages and marketable securities for the purposes of determining whether a trust is a unit trust.

New paragraph 108(2)(c) of the Act allows certain trusts established before 1994 to qualify as "unit trusts". This provision applies to a trust where the following conditions are satisfied:

- the fair market value of the property of the trust at the end of 1993 was primarily attributable to real property (or an interest in real property, as defined by subsection 248(4));
- the trust was a "unit trust" under subsection 108(2) throughout any calendar year that ended before 1994; and
- the current fair market value of the property of the trust is primarily attributable to cash or investments described in paragraph (a) or (b) of the definition "qualified investment" in section 204 of the Act, real property (or an interest in real property) or any combination of such property.

These amendments apply to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 130

Capital Gains Exemption

ITA
110.6

Section 110.6 of the Act sets out the rules that apply in calculating an individual's entitlement to the lifetime capital gains exemption.

Subclause 130(1)

ITA
110.6(2.1)

Subsection 110.6(2.1) of the Act provides a deduction in respect of net taxable capital gains from the disposition of qualified small business corporation shares. This amendment to paragraph 110.6(2.1)(d) of the Act replaces a general reference to "that paragraph" with a specific reference to paragraph 3(b), to eliminate any ambiguity that may arise. The amendment applies to the 1996 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 130(2)

ITA
110.6(14)(f)(iii)

Paragraph 110.6(14)(f) of the Act applies for the purposes of the definition of "qualified small business corporation share" in subsection 110.6(1) of the Act and treats shares issued by a corporation to a particular person or partnership, except in certain circumstances, as having been owned immediately before their issue to the particular person or partnership by a person who was not related to the particular person or partnership. Paragraph 110.6(14)(f) is amended by adding subparagraph (iii) to provide that shares issued by the corporation as stock dividends on other shares of the capital stock of the corporation will not be subject to this rule.

Paragraph 248(5)(b) of the Act provides that a share received in payment of a stock dividend on a particular share of the capital stock of a corporation is deemed to be property substituted for that particular share. Therefore, paragraphs (e) and (f) of the definition of

"qualified small business corporation share" in subsection 110.6(1) will be applicable to ensure that the holding period and active business asset tests in that definition operate effectively where shares are received as stock dividends on other shares of the capital stock of a corporation.

The effect of the rule in paragraph 110.6(14)(f) is to require shares, other than those issued in circumstances provided for in the exceptions in subparagraphs (i), (ii) and (iii), to be owned for the full 24 month holding period by the taxpayer or persons or partnerships related to the taxpayer in order to qualify for the \$500,000 lifetime capital gains exemption. This rule ensures that the holding period requirement in the "qualified small business corporation share" definition cannot be circumvented through the issue of shares of a corporation from treasury. For example, a sole shareholder of a small business corporation wishing to sell shares which were acquired from an unrelated person within the 24-month period preceding the expected date of sale could have the corporation issue shares from treasury immediately before the sale. In the absence of the rule in paragraph 110.6(14)(f), the shares issued from treasury could meet the holding period requirement for the purposes of the \$500,000 lifetime capital gains exemption.

New subparagraph 110.6(14)(f)(iii) of the Act applies to dispositions of shares that occur after June 17, 1987.

Subclauses 130(3) and (4)

ITA

110.6(27) and (28)

Subsections 110.6(27) and (28) of the Act deal with amendments to an election made under subsection 110.6(19) in respect of capital gains accrued to February 22, 1994.

Subject to subsection 110.6(28), subsection 110.6(27) permits an election under 110.6(19) of the Act in respect of a property or a business to be amended at any time before 1998 by the filing of an amended election in prescribed form accompanied by payment of an estimate of the penalty in respect of the amended election. This subsection is amended, applicable to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years, to ensure that it only applies for the purposes of

section 110.6 of the Act other than subsection 110.6(29) of the Act which provides for the calculation of the penalty.

Subsection 110.6(28) prohibits the revocation or amendment of an election where the amount designated in the election in respect of the property is greater than 11/10 of its fair market value at the end of February 22, 1994. This subsection is amended, applicable to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years, to provide that an election cannot be revoked or amended where the amount designated in respect of a partnership interest or a business exceeds the greater of \$1 and the fair market value of the partnership interest or the eligible capital property in respect of the business, as the case may be, at the end of February 22, 1994.

Clause 131

Taxable Dividends Received by Corporations

ITA

112

Section 112 of the Act is one of the principal provisions of the Act dealing with the treatment of dividends received by taxpayers.

Subclauses 131(1) and (2)

Loss on Share that is Capital Property

ITA

112(3) to (3.32)

Subsection 112(3) of the Act contains a "stop-loss" rule which reduces the loss of a corporation from the disposition of a share held as capital property by the amount of tax-free dividends received by the corporation on the share. The provision applies unless the corporation establishes that it held the share for at least 365 days before the disposition and that the corporation and non-arm's length persons did not own more than 5 per cent of the shares of any class of the dividend-paying corporation when the dividends were received by the corporation. Subsections 112(3.1) and (3.2) of the Act provide

similar treatment where the share is held by a partnership or trust. These subsections are amended in several respects.

First, the reference to a "capital dividend" is changed to a reference to a dividend in respect of which an election was made under subsection 83(2) of the Act where the dividend is not a taxable dividend because of subsection 83(2.1) of the Act. Subsection 83(2) permits a private corporation to elect to treat a dividend it pays as a capital dividend. Where the election is made, no part of the dividend is included in the shareholder's income even where the dividend exceeds the corporation's capital dividend account. However, where the conditions in subsection 83(2.1) are satisfied, a capital dividend will be treated as a taxable dividend received by the shareholder and paid by the corporation. Subsection 83(2.1) is an anti-avoidance rule which applies where one of the main purposes of an acquisition of a share is to acquire a right to a capital dividend. Accordingly, under the amended provisions, a dividend subject to subsection 83(2.1) is not treated as a dividend in respect of which an election under subsection 83(2) was made. (For the sake of simplicity in the presentation of these notes describing the amendments to section 112 of the Act, reference to the term "capital dividends" will be maintained.)

Second, the rules are restructured so that the dividends which are excluded from the loss reduction are set out in separate subsections from those which require the loss reduction. The dividends which are excluded are those which meet the 365-day and 5-per-cent ownership test and are contained in new subsections 112(3.01), (3.11), (3.31) and (3.32).

Third, the provisions are amended to ensure that only dividends received while the taxpayer and non-arm's length persons held more than 5 per cent of the shares of any class of the dividend-paying corporation are taken into account in reducing a loss from the disposition of a share. Under the existing provisions, a dividend that was received while the taxpayer did not exceed the 5-per-cent threshold may have, nevertheless, been taken into account in reducing a loss if another dividend was received at a time when the taxpayer exceeded the 5-per-cent threshold.

Fourth, the subsections are amended to ensure that the 365-day holding period can only be met where the taxpayer held the

share throughout the 365-day period that ends immediately before its disposition.

Fifth, as a consequence of the amendment to paragraph 112(6)(a) of the Act the provisions are amended to remove the reference to an amount on which a corporation was required to pay tax under Part VII of the *Income Tax Act* chapter 148 of the Revised Statutes of Canada, 1952, as it read on March 31, 1977.

Subsection 112(3) is also amended to expand its application to shares held by a natural person with respect to capital dividends. However, under amended subsection 112(3) a loss will be reduced only by the lesser of:

- the capital dividends received by the person on the share, and
- the amount by which the loss exceeds the taxable dividends received by the person on the share.

This change will ensure that a loss is not reduced to the extent that the loss is attributable to the corporation's payment of taxable dividends to the shareholder.

Subsection 112(3.1) is also amended to expand its application to an individual member of a partnership which receives capital dividends. In a manner akin to the amendment to subsection 112(3), these capital dividends will reduce an individual's share of a partnership loss only where they exceed the individual's share of the loss minus the taxable dividends received by the individual on the share. With respect to members of a partnership that are trusts, the amended provision also applies to taxable dividends and life insurance capital dividends received on a share and designated under subsection 104(19) or (20) of the Act by the trust in respect of a beneficiary that is a corporation, partnership or another trust.

Subsection 112(3.1) is further amended to ensure that a taxpayer's share of a partnership loss is subject to reduction in situations involving multi-tier partnerships. Amended subsection 112(3.1) is intended to reduce an individual or corporate partner's share of a loss from one partnership where the share of a corporation was held by another partnership of which the first partnership has a direct or indirect (that is, through one or more other partnership) interest. Since

the partnerships are flow-through entities with respect to any loss arising from the disposition of a share held by one of the partnerships, the stop-loss rule applies only at the individual or corporate partner level: the loss of a partnership that is a member of another partnership is not reduced under the amended provision.

Subsection 112(3.2), which deals with trust losses other than those addressed under new subsection 112(3.3), is amended to expand its application, subject to subsection 112(3.32), to taxable dividends and life insurance capital dividends received on a share and designated by a trust to beneficiaries that are corporations, partnerships or other trusts. Under new subsection 112(3.32) taxable dividends which the trust establishes were received by an individual that is not a trust are not included in the loss reduction under subsection 112(3.2) or (3.3).

Under amended paragraph 112(3.2)(a) of the Act a trust's loss will also be reduced by the lesser of the following two amounts:

- capital dividends received by the trust, and
- the trust's loss minus certain taxable dividends paid on the share disposed of. (The taxable dividends which count for this purpose are those received and taxed in the trust's hands, designated by the trust in respect of a beneficiary who is a natural person, or designated to other beneficiaries where the trust establishes that the dividends were received on a share that was held for 365 days or more and received when the trust, the beneficiary and persons non-arm's length with the beneficiary owned less than 5 per cent of any class of the capital stock of the corporation.)

Where the trust is an individual's estate and the share was acquired as a consequence of the individual's death, the amount of the loss reduction otherwise determined above will be reduced under subparagraph 112(3.2)(a)(iii) of the Act by 1/4 of the lesser of the loss otherwise determined and the capital gain arising from the deemed disposition of the share on the individual's death. In conjunction with subsection 164(6) of the Act, subparagraph 112(3.2)(a)(iii) is intended to enable an individual's estate to ignore, in computing its capital loss in respect of shares of a private corporation, capital dividends up to 1/4 of the deceased's capital gain on the shares, thus promoting integration between the deceased individual and the estate where the deceased's capital gain

on the shares is attributable to the appreciation of capital property held by the corporation.

The exclusion for prescribed trusts has been removed in the amended provision, reflecting the fact that no trusts have been prescribed for the purposes of subsection 112(3.2). In addition, capital losses of mutual fund trusts are not subject to amended subsection 112(3.2).

New subsection 112(3.3) of the Act is a special rule which applies to reduce a trust's loss from the disposition of a share that is considered to have been acquired by the trust because of the application of subsection 104(4) of the Act. At certain times, subsection 104(4) treats property of a trust as having been disposed of and reacquired at its fair market value. Those times are, generally, when the spouse beneficiary of a spousal trust dies and every 21 years thereafter and, in the case of any other trust, every 21 years following the trust's creation. When there is a deemed disposition and reacquisition of shares owned by a trust because of the application of subsection 104(4), the trust is in a position similar to that of an individual's estate: in both cases the capital gain to the trust in respect of a corporation's share may be attributable to the appreciation of capital property held by the corporation, and allowing capital dividends received by the trust after the deemed disposition, of up to 1/4 of the gain triggered by the disposition, to be ignored in computing its loss on a subsequent disposition promotes integration between the corporation and the trust. Therefore, the same provision found in the estate rule in subparagraph 112(3.2)(a)(iii) is set out in subparagraph 112(3.3)(a)(iii).

The new stop-loss rules in subsections 112(3) to (3.32) generally apply to share dispositions that occur after April 26, 1995. They do not apply, however, to share dispositions taking place after that date where:

1. The shares are owned by a taxpayer on April 26, 1995 and are disposed of pursuant to an agreement in writing made before April 27, 1995.
2. A corporation or a partnership of which a corporation was a member was a beneficiary of a life insurance policy on the life of a taxpayer on April 26, 1995, the proceeds of the policy were intended primarily to be used to redeem the shares owned by the taxpayer on

April 26, 1995, and the redemption occurs pursuant to an agreement in writing made before April 1997. This rule has the following important features:

- The shares owned by the taxpayer on April 26, 1995 need not be shares of the corporation which is the beneficiary of the life insurance policy; it is necessary only to demonstrate that the proceeds of the policy were intended to be used to acquire the taxpayer's shares. For example, the taxpayer may hold an interest in the corporate beneficiary through one or more holding corporations.
- The shares need not be acquired with the proceeds of the life insurance policy that was in place on April 26, 1995. Therefore, policies may be renewed, converted, replaced or entered into after April 26, 1995 without necessarily eliminating the application of these grandfathering rules.
- The life insurance policy may insure the life of the taxpayer or the taxpayer's spouse or both lives. This is intended to accommodate joint life insurance policies and other estate planning arrangements.

Similar rules apply where the taxpayer is a spouse trust and the life insured is the beneficiary spouse.

3. The shares are held by a taxpayer on April 26, 1995, the taxpayer dies on or after that date and the taxpayer's estate disposes of the shares before 1997.
4. On April 26, 1995 a taxpayer's estate owns the shares, the estate's first taxation year ends after April 26, 1995 and the share are disposed of by the estate before 1997.
5. The shares are owned by a spouse trust on April 26, 1995 and are disposed of by the trust after the death of the beneficiary spouse and before 1997.

A share acquired in exchange for another share on a conversion, transfer to a corporation, corporate reorganization or amalgamation to which section 51, 85, 86 or 87 (respectively) of the Act applies is to be treated as being the same as the exchanged share for the purposes of

(i) determining whether a taxpayer owned the share on April 26, 1995; and

(ii) whether it was reasonable to conclude that a life insurance policy was intended to be used primarily to fund a redemption of the share.

Application rule for subsections 112(3) to (3.32) of the Act, as proposed in Bill C-69

Bill C-69 was tabled in the previous Parliament on November 20, 1996. The House of Commons did not pass Bill C-69 before Parliament dissolved in April 1997. In order to take effect, these provisions must be reintroduced in a new bill when the new session of Parliament begins in the fall. The following notes explain changes that are to be made to the provisions of Clause 57 of Bill C-69.

Clause 57 of Bill C-69 provides rules which reduce a taxpayer's loss arising on the disposition of a share of the capital stock of a corporation by the amount of certain dividends received by the taxpayer on the share. These rules generally apply to share dispositions that occur after April 26, 1995. They do not apply, however, to share dispositions that occur in the situations described in clause 57(10) of Bill C-69. That clause is amended in several ways. First, the amendment removes the requirement in clause 57(10)(b) that the disposition of a share be made pursuant to a written agreement entered into before April 1997.

Second, the requirement in clause 57(10)(b), that it be reasonable to conclude that the proceeds of a life insurance policy be primarily intended to fund a share redemption, will be modified. Under the modified clause 57(10)(b), the transitional relief may apply provided that a main purpose of the life insurance policy was to fund a share redemption. This change is intended to expand the types of circumstances which can qualify for transitional relief.

Third, the share ownership requirement in clause 57(10) is modified to include shares owned on April 26, 1995 by a trust under which an individual is a beneficiary. Therefore, the transitional rule in clause 57(10)(b) may apply where: the shares are owned by a trust on April 26, 1995; a corporation was a beneficiary of a life insurance policy on the life of an individual beneficiary (or the individual's

spouse) of the trust; a main purpose of the insurance was to fund a redemption of the shares; and the share disposition is made by the individual, the individual's spouse or their estates.

Fourth, modified clause 57(10)(b)(i) and new clause 57(10)(b)(iv)(C) will ensure that transitional relief is available where

- a share was owned by a spousal trust on April 26, 1995;
- a corporation was a beneficiary of a life insurance policy that insured the life of the beneficiary spouse under the trust;
- a main purpose of the insurance policy was to fund a redemption of the share; and
- the share is disposed of by the spouse trust to the corporation after the spouse's death and before the end of the trust's third taxation year that begins after the spouse's death.

Fifth, the transitional rule will be amended to clarify that the disposition of a share may qualify for transitional relief where the disposition is made by the individual whose life was insured, the individual's spouse or their estates. The transitional rules are also expanded to include certain share dispositions made by inter vivos or testamentary spouse trusts created by the individual whose life (or whose spouse's life) was insured on April 26, 1995.

In addition to these changes, the supporting rule in clause 57(11) of the Bill will be modified. For the purposes of clause 57(10)(b), existing clause 57(11) provides that a share acquired in exchange for another share on a conversion, transfer to a corporation, corporate reorganization or amalgamation to which section 51, 85, 86 or 87 (respectively) of the *Income Tax Act* applies is to be treated as being the same as the exchanged share for the purposes of

- (i) determining whether a particular taxpayer owned the share on April 26, 1995; and
- (ii) determining whether it was reasonable to conclude that a life insurance policy was intended to be used primarily to fund a redemption of the share.

Clause 57(11) will be simplified as a consequence of the changes to clause 57(10). A share acquired in exchange for another share in a transaction to which section 51, 85, 86 or 87 of the Act applies will be considered to be the same share as the exchanged share for all purposes of the rule in clause 57(10)(b). The amendment to clause 57(11) will also clarify that the transitional rule will continue to be available where there is a succession of share transfers, conversions, reorganizations or amalgamations.

Loss on Share Not Held as Capital Property

ITA

112(4) to (4.22)

Subsection 112(4) of the Act provides a "stop-loss" rule in respect of losses arising with respect to a share that is not held as capital property. Such losses are reduced by the amount of dividends received by the taxpayer on the share unless the taxpayer owned the share for at least 365 days before the loss was sustained and the taxpayer and non-arm's length persons did not own more than 5 per cent of any class of shares of the dividend-paying corporation at the time a dividend was received.

Subsections 112(4.2) and (4.3) of the Act are similar rules which apply to losses arising from shares held by partnerships and trusts, respectively. Subsection 112(4.1) of the Act is a rule which applies for the purposes of inventory valuation under subsection 10(1) of the Act. Under subsection 112(4.1), a dividend received on a share must be added to the fair market value of the share otherwise determined, unless the taxpayer satisfies the 365-day and 5-per-cent share ownership tests described above.

These subsections are amended so that the dividends which are excluded from the amount of loss reduction, because they meet the 365-day and 5-per-cent share ownership tests, are set out in new subsections 112(4.01), (4.11), (4.21) and (4.22) of the Act. The 5-per-cent ownership tests are also amended to ensure that only dividends received while the taxpayer held more than 5 per cent of the shares of any class of the dividend-paying corporation are taken into account in reducing a loss from a disposition or increasing a fair market value in an inventory valuation. Under the existing provisions, a dividend that was received while the taxpayer and non-arm's length

persons did not hold more than 5 per cent of the shares of the dividend-paying corporation may have, nevertheless, been taken into account in reducing a loss or increasing a fair market value if another dividend was received at a time when the taxpayer exceeded the 5-per-cent threshold.

The 365-day holding period test is also amended to ensure that it can be met only where the taxpayer held the share throughout the 365-day period ending immediately before the disposition or, in the case where section 10 of the Act applies, at the time of inventory valuation.

The subsections are further amended to remove the references to a capital gains dividend as a consequence of the amendment to paragraph 112(6)(a) of the Act.

Subsection 112(4) is also amended to expand its application to shares held by a partnership so that any loss reduction is made at the partnership rather than partner level. Accordingly, amended subsection 112(4.2) does not apply to shares held by partnerships.

Subsection 112(4.1) is also amended to expand the purposes for which the provision applies as a consequence of the amendments to section 10 of the Act. New subsection 10(10) of the Act requires a corporation to value its inventory of a business that is an adventure or concern in the nature of trade at the end of the corporation's last taxation year before a change in control. The inventory is valued at the lower of its original cost and its fair market value. Amended subsection 112(4.1) applies for the purposes of determining the fair market value of such inventory.

Lastly, the exclusion for a prescribed trust in these subsections has been removed because no trusts have been prescribed for the purpose of these provisions.

Amended subsections 112(4) and (4.2) and new subsections 112(4.01), (4.21) and (4.22) apply to dispositions that occur after April 26, 1995. Amended subsection 112(4.1) and new subsection 112(4.11) apply to taxation years that end after April 26, 1995.

Subclauses 131(3) to (6)

Adjustment to Proceeds of Disposition

ITA

112(5.1)(b) and (5.2)

Subsections 112(5) and (5.1) of the Act set out the criteria for determining when the stop-loss rule in subsection 112(5.2) of the Act applies. Subsection 112(5.2) applies to adjust a taxpayer's proceeds of disposition arising from the disposition of a share in certain circumstances. In general terms, subsection 112(5.2) prevents a taxpayer from obtaining a deduction for the part of a taxpayer's overall loss in respect of a share to the extent that the taxpayer has received dividends on the share.

Subsection 112(5) provides that subsection 112(5.2) applies where a financial institution disposes of a share that is a mark-to-market property and the financial institution and non-arm's length persons held more than 5 per cent of any class of the corporation on which the dividends were paid.

Subsection 112(5.1) provides that subsection 112(5.2) applies where a taxpayer disposes of a share that is held for less than 365 days if the disposition was an actual disposition and the share was a mark-to-market property for any taxation year beginning after October 1994 in which the taxpayer was a financial institution. The 365-day holding period in paragraph 112(5.1)(b) of the Act is amended so that the taxpayer must hold the share throughout the 365-day period ending immediately before the disposition. This amendment is consistent with the 365-day tests in amended subsections 112(3.01) to (4.22) of the Act.

Paragraph (b) of the description of B in subsection 112(5.2) is amended to remove the reference to capital gains dividends as a consequence of the amendment to paragraph 112(6)(a) of the Act.

New subsection 112(5.21) is added to the Act to ensure that only dividends received while the taxpayer and non-arm's length persons held more than 5 per cent of the issued shares of any class of the dividend-paying corporation are included in the total determined under paragraph (b) of the description of B in subsection 112(5.2).

Under existing subsections 112(5.1) and (5.2), a dividend that was received while the taxpayer and non-arm's length persons did not hold more than 5 per cent of the shares of the dividend-paying corporation may have, nevertheless, been taken into account in reducing a loss if another dividend was received at a time when the taxpayer exceeded the 5-per-cent threshold. New subsection 112(5.21) also maintains the application of the 365-day holding period contained in subsection 112(5.1).

A consequential amendment is made to paragraph (b) of the description of C in subsection 112(5.2) to replace the reference to subsection 112(4.3) of the Act with a reference to subsection 112(4.2) of the Act.

These amendments apply to dispositions that occur after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 131(7)

Stop-Loss Rules not Applicable

ITA
112(5.5)

Subsection 112(5.5) of the Act provides that the stop-loss rules in subsections 112(3) to (4), (4.2) and (4.3) of the Act are not applicable in specified circumstances. The subsection is amended by removing the reference to subsection 112(4.3) of the Act which is being repealed by this Act.

Subclause 131(8)

Stop-Loss Rules Restricted

ITA
112(5.6)

In the case of certain dispositions, subsection 112(5.6) of the Act provides that the holding of a share for less than 365 days does not cause the existing stop-loss rules in subsections 112(3) to (4), (4.2) and (4.3) of the Act to apply. Therefore, those rules will have potential application only where dividends are received on a share of

a corporation of which the shareholder and non-arm's length persons own more than 5 per cent of any class of shares. The amendment to subsection 112(5.6) is consequential on the amendments to those stop-loss rules and merely changes the references to the provisions in which the 365-day share ownership tests are found.

Amended subsection 112(5.6) applies to dispositions that occur after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 131(9)

Meaning of Certain Expressions

ITA

112(6)(a)

For the purposes of section 112 of the Act, paragraph 112(6)(a) of the Act states that the term "taxable dividend" is not to include a capital gains dividend as defined by subsection 131(1) of the Act. Paragraph 112(6)(a) is amended to exclude a capital gains dividend and a dividend received by a taxpayer on which the taxpayer was required to pay tax under Part VII of the Act, as it read on March 31, 1977, from the meaning of "taxable dividend" and "dividend". Part VII of the Act levied a tax of 25 per cent on certain taxable dividends received by either a corporation resident in Canada or an unincorporated trader or dealer in securities. The tax was equal to 25 per cent of the portion of the taxable dividend paid out of the designated surplus of the payer corporation. The stop-loss rules in subsections 112(3) to (4.3) and (5.2) of the Act do not apply to capital gains dividends or dividends subject to the former Part VII tax. Since the amended stop-loss rules in section 112 do not contain references to these dividends, the dividends will be excluded by amended paragraph 112(6)(a).

Amended paragraph 112(6)(a) applies after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 131(10)**Rules Where Shares Exchanged**

ITA

112(7)

Subsection 112(7) of the Act provides rules relating to the application of the "stop-loss" rules in subsections 112(3) to (3.2) of the Act to shares that have been acquired in exchange for other shares (the "old shares") on a conversion, share-for-share exchange, corporate reorganization or amalgamation. Existing subsection 112(7) provides that the loss otherwise determined on the disposition of a new share acquired in such an exchange is reduced by the taxable dividends, capital dividends and life insurance capital dividends received on the new share which are subject to the stop-loss rules in subsection 112(3), (3.1) or (3.2) as well as the same types of dividends received on all the old shares that are attributed to the new share. Where the number of old shares and new shares exchanged is not equal, the dividends received on the old shares are attributed to the new share on a pro rata basis using the adjusted cost bases of the new shares immediately after the exchange. The dividends received on an old share that are attributed to a new share are limited to the adjusted cost base of the old share. Existing subsection 112(7) does not make it clear that a loss from the disposition of a new share should only be reduced by the dividends received on the old shares which do not meet the 365 day and 5-per-cent share ownership tests in subsections 112(3) to (3.2).

Amended subsection 112(7) applies for the purposes of the amended stop-loss rules in subsections 112(3) to (3.32). Rather than adjusting the amount of loss otherwise determined on a disposition of a new share, amended subsection 112(7) treats an old share as being the same as the new share acquired in exchange for the old share and treats the dividends received on the old share as having been received on the new share. Under amended paragraph 112(7)(a) of the Act, any dividends received on the old share are considered to have been received on the new share in the proportion that the adjusted cost base of the new share is of the total adjusted cost bases of all the new shares acquired in exchange for that old share. Thus, if the amended stop-loss rules apply to reduce a loss from the disposition of a new share, only the appropriate dividends received on the old shares will

be taken into account. Under amended paragraph 112(7)(b) of the Act the amount of loss that can be reduced on a disposition of a new share, due to the dividends that are attributed to the new share because of paragraph 112(7)(a), is limited to the adjusted cost base of the old share acquired in exchange for the new share.

This amendment applies to dispositions that occur after April 26, 1995.

Clause 132

Taxable Income Earned in Canada by Non-Residents

ITA

115(1)(b), 115(3)

Section 115 of the Act provides rules for calculating a non-resident's taxable income earned in Canada.

Paragraph 115(1)(b) of the Act lists the types of property (called "taxable Canadian property") in respect of which taxable capital gains and allowable capital losses figure in the calculation of a non-resident's taxable income earned in Canada. In addition to renumbering its subparagraphs and updating its language, this paragraph is revised in several respects.

First, subparagraph 115(1)(b)(ii) of the Act is modified to clarify that a non-resident's ships and aircraft used principally in international traffic, as well as related personal property, are not taxable Canadian property, provided the country in which the non-resident is resident grants substantially similar relief to persons resident in Canada.

Second, paragraph 115(1)(b) is amended to modify the basic criterion for determining whether a share of the capital stock of a corporation is taxable Canadian property, replacing a test based on the status of the corporation as a public corporation with a test based on whether or not the share is listed on a prescribed Canadian or foreign stock exchange. Revised subparagraph 115(1)(b)(iv) of the Act provides that an unlisted share of a corporation resident in Canada (other than a mutual fund corporation) is taxable Canadian property. Under revised subparagraph 115(1)(b)(vi) of the Act, a listed share of a

Canadian-resident corporation, or a share of a mutual fund corporation, is taxable Canadian property if the shareholder, together with all non-arm's length persons, owned 25 per cent or more of the shares of any class of the corporation's stock at any time in the preceding five years.

Third, amended subparagraph 115(1)(b)(v) of the Act treats certain unlisted shares of non-resident corporations as taxable Canadian property. Such a share will be taxable Canadian property at a particular time if two criteria are both met. First, at some time in the 12 months preceding the particular time more than half of the fair market value of the corporation's property must be in the form of taxable Canadian property, Canadian resource properties, timber resource properties, income interests in Canadian-resident trusts or interests in or options in respect of these sorts of property. Second, at the same time more than half of the fair market value of the share itself must be derived directly or indirectly from any one or more real properties in Canada, Canadian resource properties or timber resource properties.

A share of a non-resident corporation that meets the tests described above will usually not be taxable Canadian property if it is listed on a prescribed stock exchange. If the shareholder has held 25 per cent or more of the shares of any class of the corporation's stock at any time in the preceding five years, however, subparagraph 115(1)(b)(vi) provides that the share is taxable Canadian property even if it is listed on a prescribed exchange.

A fourth change to paragraph 115(1)(b) treats as taxable Canadian property certain interests in non-resident trusts. The tests for this treatment, set out in subparagraph 115(1)(b)(ix) of the Act, are comparable to those that apply to shares of non-resident corporations.

Another change slightly modifies the description of those partnership interests that are taxable Canadian property. Under existing paragraph 115(1)(b)(v), a partnership interest is taxable Canadian property if, at any time in the 12 months before the interest is disposed of, 50 per cent or more of the value of the partnership's property was represented by taxable Canadian property, Canadian resource property, timber resource property and income interests in Canadian resident trusts. New subparagraph (vii) changes the applicable percentage from 50 per cent or more to over 50 per cent,

the same number as in new subparagraphs (v) and (xi). The new subparagraph also clarifies that options in respect of the various sorts of property it describes are treated for this purpose in the same way as the property itself.

Amended paragraph 115(1)(b) applies after April 26, 1995, with certain exceptions. The amendments do not apply to a disposition of property before 1996 to a person who was obliged to acquire the property under an agreement in writing made on or before April 26, 1995. (For this purpose a person is not considered to be obliged to acquire property where the obligation can be relieved if there is a change to the Act or an adverse assessment under the Act.) The amendments also do not apply to a disposition before 1996 pursuant to a prospectus or similar document filed with the relevant securities authority before April 27, 1995. And where a property (such as a share of a non-resident corporation, or an unlisted share of a public corporation) has become taxable Canadian property as a result of these amendments, new subsection 40(9) of the Act may reduce a taxpayer's gain or loss on a disposition of the property. For more information on new subsection 40(9), reference should be made to the notes to that provision.

Clause 133

Dispositions of Property by Non-Residents

ITA

116

Section 116 of the Act sets out information reporting and tax collection procedures relating to non-residents' dispositions of taxable Canadian property.

Subclause 133(1)

ITA

116(1)

Subsections 116(1) and (2) of the Act allow a non-resident who plans to dispose of taxable Canadian property to obtain what is commonly known as a "clearance certificate" in respect of the disposition.

Subsection 116(1) is amended, with application after April 26, 1995, to clarify that it does not apply to dispositions to which subsection 116(5.2) of the Act applies.

Subclause 133(2)

Notice to Minister

ITA

116(3)

Subsection 116(3) of the Act requires a non-resident who disposes of taxable Canadian property to provide certain information to the Minister of National Revenue. This provision is amended, with application after April 26, 1995, to clarify that it does not apply to dispositions to which subsection 116(5.2) of the Act applies.

Subclause 133(3)

Certificates for Dispositions

ITA

116(5.2)

Subsection 116(5.2) of the Act provides for "clearance certificates" in respect of dispositions by non-residents of certain sorts of property. The subsection is amended to provide that it does not apply in respect of the disposition of "excluded property," defined for this purpose in subsection 116(6) of the Act. The amendment, which applies to dispositions that occur after 1996, also clarifies that subsection 116(5.2) applies to the disposition of any interest in, or option in respect of, a property to which the subsection applies.

Subclause 133(4)

ITA

116(6)(a) and (b)

The various rules in section 116 of the Act, which provides a withholding procedure for the purchaser of certain property, do not apply where the property is "excluded property," as defined in subsection 116(6) of the Act. Subsection 116(6) is amended as a

consequence of the restructuring and revision of paragraph 115(1)(b) of the Act.

Existing subparagraph 115(1)(b)(ix) of the Act refers to any property that is deemed by any provision of the Act to be taxable Canadian property. Amended paragraph 115(1)(b) moves this reference to subparagraph 115(1)(b)(xii) of the Act. Paragraph 116(1)(a)'s cross-reference must therefore be updated as well.

Under subparagraphs 115(1)(b)(iii) and (iv) of the Act, a share of a public corporation is taxable Canadian property only if the person disposing of the share (along with persons with whom that person did not deal at arm's length) held a significant interest in the corporation. Since the purchaser of a publicly-traded share will ordinarily not know who the vendor of the share is, let alone the extent of the vendor's interest in the corporation, paragraph 116(6)(b) of the Act currently treats a share of the capital stock of a public corporation, or an interest in such a share, as excluded property.

With the amendment of paragraph 115(1)(b), the focus of determining if a share of a corporation resident in Canada is taxable Canadian property under that provision has shifted from whether or not the corporation is a public corporation to whether or not the class of shares in question is listed on a prescribed stock exchange. This amendment to paragraph 116(6)(b) imports the same test into the definition of excluded property. Under amended paragraph 116(6)(b), a share of a class of a corporation's stock, or an interest in a share, will be excluded property if that class is listed on any prescribed exchange. The amendment applies after April 26, 1995, except in respect of certain dispositions before 1996. The excluded dispositions are the same as those to which the amendments to paragraph 115(1)(b) do not apply; for more information, readers should consult the notes to that provision.

Clause 134

Age Tax Credit

ITA

118(2)

Subsection 118(2) of the Act provides an age tax credit for individuals who are over 65 years of age or who reach age 65 in the year. The credit is calculated as a percentage (17 per cent for 1994) of an indexed base amount (\$3,482 for 1994). The base amount upon which an individual's age tax credit is calculated is reduced by 15 per cent of the amount by which the individual's income for the year exceeds \$25,921. For 1994, the reduction is only one-half of the reduction otherwise determined.

Section 79 of the Act provides special rules where a creditor acquires or reacquires a property in consequence of a debtor's failure to pay any part of a mortgage or other debt. The capital gain arising from such a transaction is included in the income base upon which the reduction in the age tax credit is calculated, resulting in certain circumstances in a reduced credit.

Subsection 118(2) is amended, applicable to 1994 and subsequent taxation years, to exclude a capital gain arising by virtue of section 79 of the Act from the income base upon which the reduction in the age tax credit is calculated.

Clause 135

Tuition Tax Credit

ITA

118.5(1)

Subsection 118.5(1) of the Act provides a tax credit in respect of tuition fees paid to certain educational institutions. New subparagraph 118.5(1)(a)(v) of the Act is added to ensure that where, under a federal program designed to assist athletes, tuition fees are paid on behalf of an individual or the individual is entitled to a reimbursement, the individual will not be entitled to claim a tuition

tax credit unless the payment or reimbursement is included in computing income.

New subparagraph 118.5(1)(a)(v) applies to 1994 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 136

Credits in Year of Bankruptcy

ITA

118.95

Where an individual becomes bankrupt, subsection 128(2) of the Act divides the calendar year in which the bankruptcy occurs into two taxation years: one that runs from January 1 to the day before the bankruptcy (the pre-bankruptcy period) and the other that begins on the day of the bankruptcy and runs to December 31 (the post-bankruptcy period). Under the current provisions governing non-refundable tax credits in sections 118 to 119 of the Act, an individual may claim full credits in respect of each of these periods, even though this means that the individual may get the benefit of these credits twice in respect of the same calendar year.

New section 118.95 is added to the Act to ensure that, where an individual becomes bankrupt in a calendar year, these non-refundable tax credits in respect of each of the two periods in the calendar year will generally be calculated on a pro-rata basis (except for those credits that are based on expenditures or the receipt of certain types of income during the period). The calculation of credits will be similar to the calculation of credits in respect of individuals residing in Canada for only part of a taxation year, which is contained in section 118.91 of the Act. The personal tax credits, the age tax credit, the disability tax credit and the transfers of unused credits will be subject to pro-rata based on the number of days in the period for which the return is filed. The pension tax credit, charitable donations tax credit, medical tax credit and the tuition and education tax credits will be based on the related amounts in respect of each period. In all cases, the total of the amounts claimed in respect of each of these credits for both the pre and post-bankruptcy periods cannot be greater

than the amount that could be claimed in respect of the calendar year.

New section 118.95 applies to bankruptcies that occur after April 26, 1995.

Clause 137

Minimum Tax Carry-Over

ITA

120.2(4)(a)

Section 120.2 of the Act provides for the carry-over of additional taxes paid under the minimum tax provisions for previous taxation years.

Where an individual becomes bankrupt, the trustee in bankruptcy for the individual is required under paragraph 128(2)(e) of the Act to file income tax returns on behalf of the individual in respect of income arising from the individual's estate and business. Currently, the trustee cannot utilize any minimum tax carry-over of the individual in such a return in computing the tax payable by the individual.

Paragraph 120.2(4)(a) of the Act is amended to provide that, for taxation years that begin after April 26, 1995, the trustee may claim under subsection 120.2(1) of the Act any available minimum tax carry-over in an income tax return that is required under paragraph 128(2)(e). However, the individual, who is required to file an income tax return under paragraph 128(2)(f) of the Act, may not deduct any such amount under that subsection for such years.

Clause 138

Child Tax Credit

ITA

122.2

Before its repeal and replacement by the child tax benefit for 1993 and subsequent years, section 122.2 of the Act provided the rules for

determining the child tax credit for individuals. A taxpayer's total child tax credit in respect of a year was reduced by five cents for each dollar of the individual's family income in excess of an indexed threshold. For this purpose, the individual's family income for the year was the total of the incomes for the year of the taxpayer and a supporting person.

Section 79 of the Act provides special rules where a creditor acquires or reacquires a property in consequence of a debtor's failure to pay any part of a mortgage or other debt. The capital gain arising from such a transaction is included in the income base upon which both the child tax credit and the child tax benefit are calculated, resulting in certain circumstances in a reduced credit.

Section 122.2 is amended, in its application to the 1992 taxation year, to exclude a capital gain arising by virtue of section 79 of the Act from the income base of the child tax credit. Similar amendments are also being made to the child tax benefit.

Clause 139

Goods and Services Tax Credit

ITA
122.5

Section 122.5 of the Act provides the rules for determining the Goods and Services Tax (GST) credit for individuals.

Subclause 139(1)

ITA
122.5(1)
"adjusted income"

A taxpayer's total GST credit in respect of a year is reduced by five cents for each dollar of the taxpayer's adjusted income in excess of an indexed threshold. For this purpose, a taxpayer's "adjusted income" for a year, which is defined in subsection 122.5(1) of the Act, is the total of the incomes for the year of the taxpayer and the taxpayer's cohabiting spouse and the end of that year.

Section 79 of the Act provides special rules where a creditor acquires or reacquires property in consequence of a debtor's failure to pay any part of a mortgage or other debt. The capital gain arising from such a transaction is included in the income base upon which the GST tax credit is calculated, resulting in certain circumstances in a reduced credit.

Section 122.5 is amended, applicable to the 1992 and subsequent taxation years, to exclude a capital gain arising by virtue of section 79 of the Act from the income base upon which the GST credit is calculated.

Subclause 139(2)

ITA

122.5(1)

"eligible individual"

An "eligible individual", for purposes of the GST credit, is defined as an individual who is resident in Canada at the end of December and who is married, a parent or at least 19 years old at that time. This amendment to the definition, which is consequential on the addition of new subsection 122.5(7) to the Act, clarifies that an individual must be resident in Canada at the end of December 31 of a year. This amendment applies after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 139(3)

Effect of bankruptcy

ITA

122.5(7)

Where an individual becomes bankrupt, subsection 128(2) of the Act divides the calendar year in which the bankruptcy occurs into two taxation years: one that runs from January 1 to the day before the bankruptcy (the pre-bankruptcy period) and the other that begins on the day of the bankruptcy and runs to December 31 (the post-bankruptcy period). Under the current provisions governing the GST credit, only the income from the post-bankruptcy period is taken into account in future periods for the purposes of determining the "adjusted income" upon which the GST credit is based.

New subsection 122.5(7) is added to the Act to ensure that, where an individual becomes bankrupt in a calendar year, the individual's entitlement to the GST credit in subsequent years will be calculated based on income from both the pre and post-bankruptcy periods. By virtue of the wording of this new subsection and the definition "adjusted income" in subsection 122.5(1) of the Act, where a spouse become bankrupt, the spouse's income from both periods will also be taken into consideration.

New subsection 122.5(7) applies to bankruptcies that occur after April 26, 1995.

Clause 140

Child Tax Benefit – Definitions

ITA
122.6

Section 122.6 of the Act contains definitions for the purposes of the child tax benefit (CTB). This benefit is delivered in non-taxable monthly payments based on family earnings, income, number of children and child care expenses.

Subclause 140(1)

ITA
122.6
"adjusted income"

The amount of the monthly CTB is based on a taxpayer's "adjusted income", which is the total of the incomes for a base taxation year of the taxpayer and the taxpayer's cohabiting spouse at the end of that year. For the first 6 months of a year, the base taxation year is the second preceding year, and, for the last 6 months of a year, the base taxation year is the preceding year.

Section 79 of the Act provides special rules where a creditor acquires or reacquires a property in consequence of a debtor's failure to pay any part of a mortgage or other debt. The capital gain arising from

such a transaction is included in the income base upon which the CTB is calculated, resulting in certain circumstances in a reduced benefit payable in a subsequent year.

The definition "adjusted income" in section 122.6 of the Act is amended to exclude a capital gain arising by virtue of section 79 from the income base upon which the CTB is calculated. This amendment is effective with respect to child tax benefit payments arising after June 30, 1993.

Subclause 140(2)

ITA

122.6

"eligible individual"

Paragraph (e) of the definition "eligible individual" describes certain residency requirements that must be met in order for an individual to be eligible for the child tax benefit. Subparagraph (e)(iii), which provides for the determination of Convention refugee status by the Convention Refugee Determination Division of the Immigration and Refugee Board, is being amended to reflect the fact that individuals may be determined to be Convention refugees not only by this body, but also under other provisions of the *Immigration Act* and Regulations.

This amendment applies after 1992.

Paragraphs (g) and (h) of the definition "eligible individual" refer to regulations made by the Governor in Council on the recommendation of the Minister of National Health and Welfare. These paragraphs are amended to replace these references with references to prescribed circumstances and prescribed factors. This amendment, which applies after August 27, 1995, reflects the shift in responsibility from the Minister of National Health and Welfare to the Minister of National Revenue.

Clause 141

Child Tax Benefit – Bankrupt Individuals

ITA

122.61(3.1)

Where an individual becomes bankrupt, subsection 128(2) of the Act divides the calendar year in which the bankruptcy occurs into two taxation years: one that runs from January 1 to the day before the bankruptcy (the pre-bankruptcy period) and the other that begins on the day of the bankruptcy and runs to December 31 (the post-bankruptcy period). Under the current provisions governing the child tax benefit (CTB), only the income from the post-bankruptcy period is taken into account in future periods for the purposes of determining the income upon which the CTB is based and the earned income upon which the earned income supplement to the CTB is based.

New subsection 122.6(3.1) is added to the Act to ensure that, where an individual becomes bankrupt in a calendar year, the individual's entitlement to the CTB and the earned income supplement in subsequent years will be calculated based on income from both the pre and post-bankruptcy periods. By virtue of the wording of this new subsection and the definitions "adjusted income" and "adjusted earned income" in section 122.6 of the Act, where a spouse becomes bankrupt, the spouse's income from both periods will also be taken into consideration.

New subsection 122.6(3.1) applies to bankruptcies that occur after April 26, 1995.

Clause 142

Child Tax Benefit – Eligible Individuals

ITA

122.62

Section 122.62 of the Act deals with various situations in which a person becomes or ceases to become an eligible individual or a

cohabiting spouse of such an individual for purposes of the child tax benefit (CTB).

Subclause 142(1)

Eligible Individuals

ITA

122.62(1) and (2)

Subsection 122.62(1) of the Act provides that, as a general rule, a person will be entitled to a CTB for a particular month only if the person files the required notice with the Minister of National Health and Welfare before the end of the eleventh month following that month. However, subsection 122.62(2) of the Act provides that the Minister may extend the period to file the notice. These subsections are amended, applicable after August 27, 1995, to require the filing of the notice in prescribed form containing prescribed information with the Minister of National Revenue and to give to this Minister the power to extend the period for filing the notice.

Subclause 142(2)

Person Ceasing to be an Eligible Individual

ITA

122.62(4)

Subsection 122.62(4) of the Act requires a person who ceases to be an eligible individual in respect of a qualified dependant to inform the Minister of National Health and Welfare of that fact before the end of the following month. This subsection is amended to require the person to notify the Minister of National Revenue. The notification need not necessarily be in writing.

This amendment applies after August 27, 1995.

ITA

122.62(5) to (9)

Subsection 122.62(5) of the Act enables the Minister of National Health and Welfare to waive the requirement to file a notice under

subsection 122.62(1) of the Act or the requirement under subsection 122.62(4) of the Act to inform the Minister upon ceasing to be an eligible individual in respect of a qualified dependant.

Paragraph 122.62(5)(a) of the Act, which deals with the filing of notices, is deleted as the Minister of National Revenue already has the power, under subsection 220(2.1) of the Act, to waive the requirement to file a notice.

Paragraph 122.62(5)(b) of the Act, which deals with notification when ceasing to be an eligible individual, is also deleted as a result of the amendment to subsection 122.62(4) of the Act. Since the requirement to inform the Minister in writing when a person ceases to be an eligible individual has been removed, there is no need to have a provision to waive the requirement to inform the Minister.

Subsections 122.62(6) to (8) of the Act deal with elections filed with the Minister of National Health and Welfare upon the death of a cohabiting spouse or when a person separates from or becomes a cohabiting spouse. The subsections are amended in order that the elections be filed with the Minister of National Revenue.

Subsections 122.62(6) to (8) have been renumbered as 122.62(5) to (7) to reflect the fact that old subsection 122.62(5) is no longer required. Previous subsection (9), which dealt with obtaining advice from the Minister of National Health and Welfare, is deleted as the Minister of National Revenue will be responsible for the child tax benefit program.

These amendments apply after August 27, 1995.

Clause 143

Child Tax Benefit – Agreements

ITA
122.63

Section 122.63 of the Act deals with agreements between the federal government and provinces regarding the basic amount of the child tax benefit. The reference to the Minister of National Health and Welfare has been deleted, applicable after August 27, 1995, as that

department will no longer have responsibility in respect of the child tax benefit program.

Clause 144

Child Tax Benefit – Communication of Information

ITA

122.64

Section 122.64 of the Act deals with the treatment of information obtained for the purposes of the child tax benefit.

Subsection 122.64(2) of the Act allows information obtained under the child tax benefit provisions or the *Family Allowances Act* to be provided to an official of the Department of National Health and Welfare for the purposes of certain stated acts.

Subsection 122.64(2) of the Act is amended to remove the reference to the *Children's Special Allowances Act* since the Minister of National Health and Welfare will no longer be responsible for the administration of that Act, and to add a reference to the *Family Allowances Act* to permit the disclosure of information obtained under that Act to the Minister of National Health and Welfare for the purpose of the administration of that Act. This provision is necessary since subsection 122.64(1) of the Act deems the information obtained under the *Family Allowances Act* to be obtained by the Minister of National Revenue, so that such information is protected under the confidentiality provisions of section 241 of the Act.

Subsection 122.64(2) is also amended to incorporate the wording from subsection 122.64(5) of the Act, which defines official as being within the meaning assigned by subsection 241(10) of the Act. As a consequence, subsection 122.64(5) is repealed.

These amendments apply after August 27, 1995.

Clause 145

Small Business Deduction

ITA

125

Section 125 of the Act provides a corporate tax reduction (called the "small business deduction") in respect of income of a Canadian-controlled private corporation (CCPC) from an active business carried on in Canada.

Subclause 145(1)

ITA

125(1)

Subsection 125(1) of the Act provides the basic rules for the calculation of a CCPC's small business deduction. The small business deduction is provided by way of an annual tax credit which is calculated as 16 per cent of the least of:

- a corporation's active business income for a taxation year;
- its taxable income for the year; and
- its business limit for the year (which is generally \$200,000).

The small business deduction is intended to apply only to corporations that are CCPCs throughout the taxation year for which they are claiming the deduction. The amendment to subsection 125(1) simply corrects an error which occurred at the time subsection 125(1) was last amended (1988), thereby ensuring that this intention prevails. It is generally applicable to taxation years that end after June 1988.

Subclause 145(2)

ITA

125(7)

"Canadian-controlled private corporation"

Subsection 125(7) of the Act defines "Canadian-controlled private corporation", among other terms. This definition applies not only to the small business deduction under section 125 of the Act but also, through its incorporation by reference into subsection 248(1) of the Act, to the Act as a whole.

Currently, a corporation is a CCPC if it is a private corporation and a Canadian corporation (both of which terms are defined in subsection 89(1) of the Act), and it is not controlled, directly or indirectly in any manner whatever by one or any combination of public corporations (other than prescribed venture capital corporations) or non-resident persons. This amendment ensures that two other types of corporation are not CCPCs. The first type are corporations that, if they are not actually controlled by non-residents, avoid that status only because their shares are widely held. The second type are corporations the shares of which are listed on a foreign stock exchange. The following paragraphs describe in more detail how the amended definition applies to each of these cases.

A corporation the voting shares of which are distributed among a large number of persons is usually not considered to be controlled by any group of its shareholders, provided the shareholders do not act together to exercise control. As a result, it may be argued that a private Canadian corporation that is owned by a number of non-residents or public corporations is not controlled by non-residents or public corporations, and is thus a CCPC. New paragraph (b) of the CCPC definition clarifies that this is not the case. Paragraph (b) requires non-residents' and public corporations' shareholdings – not only of the corporation in question, but of all corporations – to be notionally attributed to one hypothetical person. If that person would control the corporation, then the corporation is not a CCPC.

Under the definition of "public corporation" in subsection 89(1) of the Act, a corporation the shares of which are listed on a prescribed Canadian exchange will usually be a public corporation, and thus not a CCPC. New paragraph (c) of the CCPC definition extends similar

treatment to corporations the shares of which are traded on foreign exchanges. Specifically, the paragraph provides that a corporation is not a CCPC if any of its shares are listed on any prescribed stock exchange (that is, either a Canadian exchange listed in Income Tax Regulation 3200 or a foreign exchange listed in Regulation 3201).

This amendment applies after 1995.

Subclause 145(3)

ITA

125(7)

"specified investment business"

A "specified investment business" carried on by a corporation is defined in subsection 125(7) of the Act in general terms as a business the principal purpose of which is to derive income from property and which does not employ more than five full-time employees.

Income from a "specified investment business" does not qualify for the small business deduction under section 125 of the Act. However, such income from Canadian sources is considered to be "Canadian investment income" under subsection 129(4.1) of the Act. The rules in section 129 of the Act allow for a tax refund for a corporation of up to 20 per cent of Canadian investment income on the payment of dividends by the corporation.

The definition "specified investment business" is amended, applicable to the 1995 and subsequent taxation years, to include a business carried on by a prescribed labour-sponsored venture capital corporation where the main purpose of the business is to derive income from property. This measure applies irrespective of the number of the employees of the corporation or of any corporation associated with it.

Section 6701 of the *Income Tax Regulations*, which provides the meaning of "prescribed labour-sponsored venture capital corporation" for a number of provisions of the Act, will be amended to apply for the purpose of the definition "specified investment business" in subsection 125(7).

Clause 145.1**Film or Video Production Services Tax Credit**

ITA

125.5

New section 125.5 of the Act sets out the rules that apply for the purpose of computing a film or video production services tax credit. Generally, this new tax credit is available at a rate of 11 per cent of qualified Canadian labour expenditures incurred after October 1997 by an eligible production corporation for the production of an accredited film or video production. The application of these rules is more fully described in the commentary accompanying the following subsections.

ITA

125.5(1)

New subsection 125.5(1) of the Act provides definitions that apply for the purpose of new section 125.5.

"accredited film or video production certificate"

The term "accredited film or video production certificate" means a certificate issued in respect of a production by the Minister of Canadian Heritage certifying that the production is an accredited production.

An accredited film or video production certificate is required to be filed by an eligible production corporation with its return of income for a taxation year in which it claims a film or video production services tax credit under new subsection 125.5(3) of the Act. Reference should also be made to the commentary accompanying new subsection 125.5(6) of the Act, which provides that an accredited film or video production certificate in respect of a production may be revoked by the Minister of Canadian Heritage in certain circumstances.

"accredited production"

The definition "accredited production" has the meaning assigned by regulation. The regulations are to be amended to reflect that an accredited production is a film or video production the cost of which

- is in excess of \$1 million; or
- in the case a production that has is part of a television series that has more than one episode, or is a pilot for such a series, is in excess of \$100,000 for a production shorter than 30 minutes or in excess of \$200,000 for any other production.

The regulations will also list the types of productions that are not eligible, including any production that is

- (i) news, current events or public affairs programming, or a programme that includes weather or market reports,
- (ii) a talk show,
- (iii) a production in respect of a game, questionnaire or contest,
- (iv) a sports event or activity,
- (v) a gala presentation or awards show,
- (vi) a production that solicits funds,
- (vii) reality television,
- (viii) pornography,
- (ix) advertising, or
- (x) a production produced primarily for industrial, corporate or institutional purposes.

Upon application from the owner of the copyright, the Minister of Canadian Heritage will certify those proposed productions that meet these requirements.

"assistance"

The definition "assistance" describes amounts that reduce the cost of a film or the amount of an otherwise "qualifying Canadian labour expenditure." Generally, all government assistance received in respect of an eligible production will reduce the related expenditure base for the film and video production services tax credit in the same manner as is currently the case under the regular investment tax credit program. Also, new subsection 125.5(4) of the Act clarifies that amounts paid as a tax credit under this section are also assistance received by the claimant.

"Canadian labour expenditure"

The definition "Canadian labour expenditure" describes the underlying expenditures of a corporation that will be eligible for the film or video production services tax credit. In the case of a corporation not eligible for the credit, its Canadian labour expenditure is deemed to be nil. In the case of a corporation that is an eligible production corporation for a taxation year, the corporation's Canadian labour expenditure for the taxation year in respect of an accredited production is, subject to new subsection 125.5(2) of the Act discussed below, the total of three amounts (paragraphs (a) to (c) of that definition), to the extent that they are reasonable in the circumstances.

Paragraph (a) of the definition "Canadian labour expenditure" is the total salary or wages (discussed below) directly attributable to the production that are incurred by the eligible production corporation after October 1997, in the taxation year of the corporation and paid by it in the year (or within 60 days after the end of the year) in respect of certain stages of the production. The eligible stages of production are those stages from the end of the final script stage to the end of the post-production stage. The commentary accompanying new paragraph 125.5(2)(b) of the Act lists those services that are considered to be post-production services.

Paragraph (b) of the definition "Canadian labour expenditure" refers to a portion of amounts paid by the eligible production corporation under contracts for services, i.e. as non-salaried remuneration. The eligible portion is the amount that

- is directly attributable to the accredited production;

- is paid in a taxation year (or within 60 days after the end of the year) by the eligible production corporation;
- is paid to a person or partnership that is carrying on a business in Canada through a permanent establishment; and
- relates to services rendered in Canada to the eligible production corporation after October 1997 and in the year, for the stages of production mentioned above (see the above discussion in respect of paragraph (a)).

Furthermore, the service provider must be one of the following persons:

- an individual resident in Canada who is not an employee of the eligible production corporation, to the extent to which the amount paid
 - is attributable to services personally rendered by the individual in Canada in respect of the accredited production, or
 - is attributable to and does not exceed the salary or wages of those of the individual's employees who were resident in Canada for personally rendering services in Canada for the production;
- a taxable Canadian corporation, to the extent the amount paid is attributable to and does not exceed the salary or wages of those of the other corporation's employees who are resident in Canada for personally rendering services in Canada for the production;
- a taxable Canadian corporation, all the shares of which belong to an individual resident in Canada and the activities of which consist principally of the provision of the individual's services, to the extent the amount paid is attributable to services rendered personally in Canada by the individual for the production;
- a partnership, to the extent to which the amount paid
 - is attributable to services personally rendered in Canada by an individual resident in Canada who is a member of the partnership, for the production of the property, or

- is attributable to and does not exceed the salary or wages of the partnership's employees for personally rendering services for the production.

Paragraph (c) of the definition "Canadian labour expenditure" provides a mechanism under which a subsidiary wholly-owned corporation can obtain credit for a Canadian labour expenditure by reimbursing its parent for expenditures incurred by the parent in a particular year of the parent in respect of the corporation's production, if certain conditions are met. In particular, the expenditure reimbursed to the parent must be an expenditure that would have otherwise been a Canadian labour expenditure of the eligible production corporation for the particular year if

- the eligible production corporation had such a particular year, and
- the expenditure were incurred by the eligible production corporation for the same purpose as it was by the parent and were paid at the same time and to the same person or partnership as it was by the parent (i.e. those expenditures which previously earned the credit).

"eligible production corporation"

The definition "eligible production corporation" means a corporation that, in the year, carries on through a permanent establishment (as defined by regulation) in Canada a business that is primarily a film or video production business, or production services business.

Specifically excluded are prescribed labour-sponsored venture capital corporations, tax-exempt corporations and corporations controlled by one or more tax-exempt persons. Furthermore, the corporation must either

- own the copyright in the film for which a claim is being made, or
- have contracted directly with the owner of the copyright (where the owner itself is not an eligible production corporation).

"qualified Canadian labour expenditure"

The definition "qualified Canadian labour expenditure" is the portion of an eligible corporation's Canadian labour expenditures upon which it can claim an 11-per-cent investment tax credit in respect of an accredited production (explained above). Generally, the definition "qualified Canadian labour expenditure" means the amount in respect of the accredited production by which the aggregate of Canadian labour expenditures in the current and preceding taxation years exceeds

- the total assistance attributable to those expenditures that the corporation or any other person or partnership has received, is entitled to receive, or can reasonably expect to receive, at the time of filing the corporation's return of income for the year, that has not been repaid before that time pursuant to a legal obligation to do so;
- the total of all such amounts which are, where the eligible production corporation is a parent, subject to an agreement under which a wholly-owned subsidiary claims it as a "Canadian labour expenditure" in respect of the accredited production; and
- the total of qualified Canadian labour expenditures for preceding years which ended after the principle filming or taping began.

"salary or wages"

The definition "salary or wages", which is generally defined in subsection 248(1) of the Act, does not include for the purposes of this credit an amount described in section 7 of the Act (share option benefits) or any amount determined by reference to profits or revenues.

Subsection 125.5(1) applies to taxation years that end after October 1997.

ITA

125.5(2)

New subsection 125.5(2) of the Act provides special rules that apply for the purpose of applying the definition "Canadian labour

expenditure" in subsection 125.5(1) of the Act.

Paragraph 125.5(2)(a) of the Act provides that remuneration does not include remuneration determined by reference to profits or revenues. A similar rule is found in the definition "salary or wages", as discussed above.

Paragraph 125.5(2)(b) of the Act provides that the services referred to in paragraph (b) of the definition "Canadian labour expenditure", that relate to the post-production stage of the production, include only the services that are rendered at that stage of production by persons who perform particular duties. In particular, these services are the duties of an animation cameraman, assistant colourist, assistant mixer, assistant sound-effects technician, boom operator, colourist, computer graphics designer, cutter, developing technician, dubbing technician, encoding technician, inspection technician – clean up, mixer, optical effects technician, picture editor, printing technician, projectionist, recording technician, senior editor, sound editor, sound-effects technician, special effects editor, subtitle technician, timer, video-film recorder operator, videotape operator or by a person who performs a prescribed duty.

Paragraph 125.5(2)(c) of the Act ensures that a film or video production services tax credit will not be claimed in respect of amounts claimed as expenditures in respect of scientific research and experimental development.

Paragraph 125.5(2)(d) of the Act clarifies that Canadian labour expenditures do not include amounts that are not production costs, such as costs of marketing, advertising, promotion, market research, or any cost related in any way to some other production.

This subsection applies to taxation years that end after October 1997.

ITA

125.5(3)

New subsection 125.5(3) of the Act provides that, where an eligible production corporation that produces an accredited production has satisfied certain conditions, the corporation is considered to have paid an amount on account of its tax payable under Part I of the Act for the year equal to 11 per cent of its qualified Canadian labour

expenditures for the year in respect of the production. The conditions that an eligible production corporation must satisfy are that

- it files with its return of income for the taxation year
 - an accredited film or video production certificate issued in respect of an accredited production, and
 - a prescribed form containing prescribed information; and
- the principal filming or taping of the production began before the end of the year.

For a description of many of the terms referred to in new subsection 125.5(3), reference may be made to the commentary accompanying new subsection 125.5(1) of the Act.

This subsection applies to taxation years that end after October 1997.

ITA 125.5(4)

New subsection 125.5(4) of the Act provides that a film or video production services tax credit may not be claimed in respect of a Canadian film or video production for which a credit is claimed pursuant to section 125.4 of the Act.

This subsection applies to taxation years that end after October 1997.

ITA 125.5(5)

New subsection 125.5(5) of the Act provides that the amount of tax that a corporation is considered to have paid under subsection 125.5(3) of the Act for a taxation year is considered to be assistance received by the corporation from a government immediately before the end of the year (other than for the purpose of claiming the film production tax credit).

This subsection applies to taxation years that end after October 1997.

ITA

125.5(6)

New subsection 125.5(6) of the Act provides that an accredited film or video production certificate in respect of a production may be revoked by the Minister of Canadian Heritage. A revocation of a certificate may occur in circumstances where an incorrect statement is made for the purposes of obtaining the certificate or the production is not an accredited production. A revoked certificate is considered never to have been issued for the purposes of claiming a film or video production services tax credit under new subsection 125.5(3) of the Act. For additional information on this matter, see the commentary accompanying amended paragraph 152(1)(b) of the Act.

This subsection applies to taxation years that end after October 1997.

Clause 146

Investment Tax Credit

ITA

127(9)

"specified percentage"

Subsection 127(9) of the Act provides definitions for terms that are used in the provisions relating to the ITC.

The definition "specified percentage" in subsection 127(9) sets out the relevant rates at which investment tax credits are earned in different circumstances.

Paragraph (f) of the definition permits an investment tax credit to be earned by the repayment of government assistance, non-government assistance or contract payments that reduced the cost of property under paragraph (11.1)(b), the amount of an expenditure under paragraph (11.1)(c) or (e), or the prescribed proxy amount of the taxpayer under paragraph (11.1)(f).

Paragraph (f) of the definition is amended consequential on the repeal of paragraphs (11.1)(c), (e) and (f) effective for taxation years beginning after 1995. Those paragraphs were replaced by

subsections 127(11.5) and (18) to (20) of the Act. The definition is, therefore, further amended by the addition of new paragraph (f.1) consequential on the introduction of basis reductions in subsections 127(18) to (20) and the additions to the ITC in respect of repayments of those amounts in paragraphs (e.1) and (e.2) of the definition "investment tax credit".

For more information on those amendments, please see the Explanatory Notes to the February 27, 1995 budget amendments, which were released in December, 1995.

This amendment applies to taxation years that begin after 1995.

Clause 147

Refundable Investment Tax Credit

ITA

127.1(1)

Subsection 127.1(1) of the Act allows a taxpayer to claim a refundable investment tax credit for a taxation year.

At present, a trustee in bankruptcy required to file an income tax return under paragraph 128(2)(e) of the Act may not claim a refundable investment tax credit under subsection 127.1(1) of the Act. Subsection 127.1(1) of the Act provides that a taxpayer's refundable investment tax credit, to the extent so designated by the taxpayer, is deemed to be paid on account of the taxpayer's tax for the year under Part I as of the date of filing the return for the year or a prescribed form amending a prior year's return. This amendment to subsection 127.1(1) provides that the payment will be deemed to have been made on the day that the taxpayer is required to pay the balance of the estimated taxes for the year. This will allow the deemed payment to be taken into account in determining the interest on arrears of taxes payable under other Parts of the Act. This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 22, 1994.

Paragraph 127.1(1)(a) of the Act is amended to add a reference to paragraph 128(2)(f) of the Act and to delete the reference to paragraph 128(2)(e) of the Act. Accordingly, for taxation years

that begin after April 26, 1995, an individual who is bankrupt during a taxation year and who is required to file an income tax return under 128(2)(f) may not claim a refundable investment tax credit under subsection 127.1(1). The trustee in bankruptcy for the individual may, however, make such a claim for those years.

Clause 148

Part XII Tax Credit

ITA

127.41(1)(a)

Section 127.41 of the Act provides a refundable tax credit to beneficiaries of a mining reclamation trust, recognizing that trust income is subject to a tax under Part XII.4 of the Act and is also allocated to one or more beneficiaries income under subsection 107.3(1) of the Act. The amount of the tax credit is, under paragraph 127.41(1)(a) of the Act, normally based on a beneficiary's pro-rata share of Part XII.4 tax. However, where a beneficiary of a mining reclamation trust is a partnership, under paragraph 127.41(1)(b) of the Act members of the partnership are allowed a tax credit equal to a pro-rata share of the Part XII.4 tax credit to which the partnership would be entitled if it were a person.

Paragraph 127.41(1)(a) is amended so that partnership losses are, for the purposes of calculating the component of the tax credit under paragraph 127.41(1)(a), treated in a parallel fashion to partnership income. Consequently, neither partnership income nor partnership losses have any bearing on the calculation of the portion of the tax credit determined under paragraph 127.41(1)(a). The amendment is of relevance only in cases where a taxpayer is a direct beneficiary in one mining reclamation trust and an indirect beneficiary (through a partnership) in another mining reclamation trust.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 22, 1994.

Clause 149

Minimum Tax

ITA
127.5

Section 127.5 of the Act levies the minimum tax payable by an individual under Part I for a taxation year.

Section 127.5 is amended as a consequence of the enactment of new paragraph 127.55(f) of the Act. For additional details see the commentary on that paragraph.

This amendment applies to the 1992 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 150

Minimum Tax – Adjusted Taxable Income

ITA
127.52

Section 127.52 of the Act defines the "adjusted taxable income" of an individual for a taxation year for the purposes of determining any minimum tax liability under Division E.1 of Part I of the Act.

Subclauses 150(2), (3) and (5)

ITA
127.52(1)

Subsection 127.52(1) of the Act defines the "adjusted taxable income" of an individual for a taxation year as the amount that would be the individual's taxable income for that year if the assumptions set out in paragraphs 127.52(1)(a) to (j) were made. A number of amendments are being made to this subsection.

First, subsection 127.52(1) is amended to extend its application to:

- certain losses deducted by a limited partner, a member of a partnership who has been a specified member since becoming a partner, or a partner for whose interest an identification number is required to be, or has been, obtained under section 237.1. For this purpose, losses allocated from a partnership are netted against gains from the same partnership source – that is allowable capital losses of the partnership against taxable capital gains of the partnership; business losses of the partnership against taxable capital gains of the partnership arising from the disposition of property used in the business; and property losses of the partnership against taxable capital gains of the partnership arising from the disposition of property held to earn income from property;
- losses deducted in respect of investments identified or required to be identified under the tax shelter identification rules; and
- carrying charges in respect of investments described above as well as those described in paragraphs 127.52(1)(b), (c) and (e), which relate to deductible amounts in respect of rental/leasing property, film property and resource-related deductions.

An exception is provided for limited partnership losses incurred in the year in which the partnership is wound up. Subsection 127.52(1) does not apply to any portion of such losses that is allocated to a partner.

These amendments apply to taxation years of an individual that begin after 1994.

Subsection 127.52(1) is also amended, applicable to the 1994 and 1995 taxation years, by adding new paragraph 127.52(1)(h.1). This paragraph is consequential on the addition of paragraph 110.6(21)(a) to the Act. It ensures that the portion of the gain from the deemed disposition of non-qualifying real property under subsection 110.6(19) that is not eligible for the capital gains exemption will be excluded from the adjusted taxable income computation in subsection 127.52(1). Subsection 110.6(21) ensures that the tax on that portion of the gain that is not so eligible is deferred until a subsequent taxable disposition. Similarly, on such a subsequent

disposition that gain will be included in the adjusted taxable income computation.

Paragraph 127.52(1)(i) provides rules that apply to an individual's losses arising in another taxation year that are relevant in the year in which the individual is computing "adjusted taxable income" for minimum tax purposes. Paragraph 127.52(1)(i) is amended to ensure that such losses from another taxation year are computed on the basis of the wording of subsection 127.52(1) as it reads for that year. These amendments generally apply to taxation years of an individual that begin after 1994, except that the amendment of paragraph 127.52(1)(i) of the Act applies after December 1, 1994 to any taxation year.

Clause 127.52(1)(i)(ii)(B) is also amended to include the full amount of net capital losses incurred before 1986 in the calculation of an individual's adjusted taxable income. This amendment generally applies in determining an individual's adjusted taxable income for taxation years that begin after 1994.

Subclause 150(6)

ITA

127.52(2)

Subsection 127.52(2) of the Act provides a special rule that applies where an individual has invested in a partnership that owns a residential building or a certified Canadian film production. For the purpose of computing adjusted taxable income under the minimum tax, the individual is treated as having claimed capital cost allowance claimed by the partnership in the same proportion as the individual's share of the partnership income.

Subsection 127.52(2) is amended to apply to any amount deductible in computing the income or loss of a partnership. Where an amount deductible by a partnership is relevant for the purpose of computing the adjusted taxable income of an individual who is a member of the partnership, the individual is treated as having claimed the partnership's deductible amounts in the same proportion as the individual's share of the partnership income or loss.

This amendment applies to taxation years of an individual that begin after 1994.

Subclause 150(7)

Specified Member of a Partnership

ITA

127.52(2.1)

New subsection 127.52(2.1) of the Act provides an anti-avoidance rule that applies where one of the main reasons that a member of a partnership was not a specified member of the partnership since becoming a member of the partnership is to avoid the application of the "adjusted taxable income" computation under section 127.52 of the Act in respect of determining an individual's minimum tax for a year.

In such cases, the member shall be considered to have been a specified member of the partnership at all times since becoming a member of the partnership. This subsection applies after April 26, 1995.

Subclauses 150(8) and (9)

ITA

127.52(3)

Subsection 127.52(3) of the Act defines the terms "film property" and "residential property" for the purpose of computing an individual's adjusted taxable income under the minimum tax. Subsection 127.52(3) is amended to repeal the definition "residential property" and to add the definitions "limited partner" and "rental or leasing property".

These amendments apply to taxation years of an individual that begin after 1994.

Example of Application of Section 127.52 of the Act

EXAMPLE A:

<i>Regular Part I Computation of Taxable Income</i>	<i>Section 127.52 Computation of Taxable Income</i>		
<i>Facts concerning the individual's share of income and losses of the limited partnership.</i>	<i>Income computation ignoring Minimum Tax</i>	<i>Income computation for purposes of Minimum Tax</i>	<i>Reason for adjustment</i>
<i>Business Loss before CCA</i>	<i>(\$9,500)</i>	<i>(\$8,000)</i>	<i>The 127.52(1)(c.1)(ii) limit on the loss is lesser of: A: 9,500 (amount of loss); and B: 8,000 (amount of 8,000 business tcgs in excess of nil acIs)</i>
<i>Loss calculated as a result of CCA from business of producing a film</i>	<i>(\$500)</i>	<i>\$0</i>	<i>127.52(1)(c) eliminates the CCA which is relevant for the purpose of determining the limit imposed by 127.52(1)(c.1)(ii)(B)</i>
<i>Taxable capital gain from disposition of property used in above-noted business</i>	<i>\$6,000</i>	<i>\$8,000</i>	<i>127.52(1)(d)</i>
<i>Taxable capital gain from disposition of other partnership (non-business) property</i>	<i>\$9000</i>	<i>\$12,000</i>	<i>127.52(1)(d)</i>
<i>Individual's Taxable Income</i>	<u><i>\$5,000</i></u>	<u><i>\$12,000</i></u>	<i>There is a \$7,000 adjustment for Minimum Tax purposes</i>

EXAMPLE B:

Regular Part I Computation of Taxable Income

Section 127.52 Computation of Taxable Income

<i>Facts concerning the individual's share of income and losses of the limited partnership.</i>	<i>Income computation ignoring Minimum Tax</i>	<i>Income computation for purposes of Minimum Tax</i>	<i>Reason for adjustment</i>
<i>Business Loss before CCA</i>	<i>(\$9,500)</i>	<i>\$0</i>	<i>The 127.52(1)(c.1)(ii) loss limit is lesser of: A: 9,500 (amount of loss); B: Nil (amount of 8,000 business tcgs in excess of 8,000 acfs)</i>
<i>Loss calculated as a result of CCA from business of producing a film</i>	<i>(\$500)</i>	<i>\$0</i>	<i>127.52(1)(c) eliminates the CCA which is relevant for the purpose of determining the limit imposed by 127.52(1)(c.1)(ii)(B)</i>
<i>Taxable capital gain from disposition of property used in above-noted business</i>	<i>\$6,000</i>	<i>\$8,000</i>	<i>127.52(1)(d)</i>
<i>Allowable capital loss from disposition of other partnership (non-business) property</i>	<i>(\$6,000)</i>	<i>(\$8,000)</i>	<i>127.52(1)(d); the loss limit in 127.52(1)(c.1)(i) is the lesser of: A: 20,000 (amount of tcgs: 12K+8k); B: 8,000 (amount of loss)</i>
<i>Taxable capital gain from disposition of other partnership (non-business) property</i>	<i>\$9,000</i>	<i>\$12,000</i>	<i>127.52(1)(d)</i>
<i>Individual's Taxable Income</i>	<i><u>(\$1,000)</u></i>	<i><u>\$12,000</u></i>	<i>There is a \$13,000 adjustment for Minimum Tax purposes</i>

Clause 151

Minimum Tax – Exceptions

ITA

127.55

Section 127.55 of the Act exempts individuals from the minimum tax in certain limited circumstances.

Section 127.5 of the Act previously exempted certain related segregated fund trusts and mutual fund trusts from the application of the minimum tax. These exemptions are now included in new paragraph 127.55(f), which also applies to a trust prescribed to be a master trust under section 5001 of the *Income Tax Regulations*. One of the conditions that a master trust must satisfy is that each of its beneficiaries must be a trust governed by a registered pension plan or a deferred profit sharing plan.

This amendment applies to the 1992 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 152

Bankrupt Individuals

ITA

128(2)

Subsection 128(2) of the Act contains rules that apply to individuals who become bankrupt.

Under paragraph 128(2)(d) of the Act, where an individual becomes bankrupt in a calendar year, a taxation year of the individual is deemed to have ended on the day before the bankruptcy and a new taxation year of the individual is deemed to have begun on the day of the bankruptcy.

In the calendar year in which the individual becomes bankrupt, a number of income tax returns must be filed by, or on behalf of, the individual:

- a return to be filed for the taxation year that ends on the day before the bankruptcy;
- a return to be filed under paragraph 128(2)(e) of the Act by the trustee in bankruptcy with respect to certain income of the estate and business of the individual for each taxation year in that calendar year; and
- a separate return to be filed by the individual for the taxation year that begins on the day of bankruptcy.

For each subsequent calendar year during which the individual is bankrupt, the trustee and the individual are each required to file an income tax return in respect of the income of the individual.

A number of the rules set out in subsection 128(2) prevent double reporting of income and double deducting of amounts in computing taxable income and tax payable for a taxation year. In particular, these rules:

- allocate the income of the individual for a year between the returns that are to be filed by the trustee and the individual;
- limit certain deductions that may be made by the trustee and the individual in computing taxable income for the year; and
- limit certain deductions that may be made by the trustee and the individual in determining the tax payable for the year.

Further, paragraph 128(2)(g) of the Act sets a restriction on losses that might otherwise be carried forward under section 111 of the Act after the individual is absolutely discharged from bankruptcy.

Subsection 128(2) is amended to expand these rules effective for bankruptcies that occur after April 26, 1995.

The amendments to subsection 128(2) are part of a package of amendments relating to bankruptcies. Other changes include the introduction of new section 118.61 of the Act dealing with the carry-over of unused tuition fee and education tax credits, new section 118.95 of the Act dealing with the proration of personal tax credits, an amendment to section 120.2 of the Act dealing with

minimum tax carry-over, amendments to sections 122.5 and 122.61 of the Act dealing with the Goods and Services Tax Credit and Child Tax Benefit, and an amendment to 127.1 of the Act dealing with the refundable investment tax credit.

Subclause 152(1)

ITA

128(2)(e)

A trustee in bankruptcy for a bankrupt individual is currently required under paragraph 128(2)(e) of the Act to file an income tax return on behalf of the bankrupt individual as if:

- the only income of the individual for a taxation year were the income for the year arising from dealings in the estate or the carrying on of a business of the bankrupt by the trustee;
- the individual were not entitled to deduct any amount under Division C (computation of taxable income) for the year except under section 111 of the Act (loss carry-overs); and
- the individual were not entitled to deduct any amount under sections 118 to 118.3, 118.5, 118.6, 118.61, 118.8 and 118.9 of the Act (various credits and deductions available to individuals).

Subparagraph 128(2)(e)(ii) of the Act is amended to allow the trustee in bankruptcy to deduct amounts under paragraphs 110(1)(d), (d.1), (d.2) and (d.3) (stocks options, etc.) and section 110.6 (capital gains exemption) in Division C of the Act in computing taxable income of the individual. Any such deduction must be in respect of an amount that the trustee is required to include in income under subparagraph 128(2)(e)(i) of the Act.

Subparagraph 128(2)(e)(ii) is further amended to allow the trustee to deduct under section 111 of the Act (loss carry-overs) an amount in respect of losses of the bankrupt, such as capital losses, non-capital losses and limited partnership losses, arising in taxation years that end before the bankrupt is absolutely discharged from bankruptcy. Losses referred to in section 111 for taxation years ending after the bankrupt is absolutely discharged from bankruptcy cannot be carried back to be

applied against the income of the bankrupt for any taxation year that ends before the bankrupt is so discharged.

Subparagraph 128(2)(e)(iii) of the Act is amended to allow the trustee to deduct an amount under section 118.1 (charitable gifts) with respect to gifts made by the bankrupt before the individual became bankrupt.

Subparagraph 128(2)(e)(iii) is also amended to limit the deduction under subsection 127(5) of the Act (investment tax credits) in computing tax payable. This amendment restricts the carrying back of investment tax credits arising from expenditures incurred or properties acquired in taxation years ending after the bankrupt is absolutely discharged.

The amendments to paragraph 128(2)(e) apply to bankruptcies that occur after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 152(2)

ITA

128(2)(f)

An individual who is bankrupt at any time in a taxation year is required under paragraph 128(2)(f) of the Act to file an income tax return for the year. This return is in addition to the return that is required under paragraph 128(2)(e) of the Act to be filed by the trustee in bankruptcy on behalf of the individual for the same taxation year. Paragraph 128(2)(f) of the Act is amended to deny the bankrupt individual a deduction under section 118.61 of the Act (carryforward of unused tuition and education tax credits). However, the trustee may claim a deduction under that section in the return filed under paragraph 128(2)(e). For further details on the carryforward of unused tuition and education tax credits, reference may be made to the commentary on section 118.61 of the Act.

This amendment applies to the 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 152(3)

ITA

128(2)(g)

Paragraph 128(2)(g) of the existing Act prohibits an individual who is discharged absolutely from bankruptcy from deducting under section 111 of the Act losses carried forward from taxation years that ended before the individual's discharge, as well as certain amounts in computing the individual's tax payable. Paragraph 128(2)(g) is amended to restrict the individual from deducting an amount under section 118.61 (carryforward of unused tuition and education tax credits) in respect of the individual's unused tuition and education tax credits at the end of the last taxation year that ended before the bankruptcy. For further details on the carryforward of unused tuition and education tax credits, reference may be made to the commentary on section 118.61 of the Act.

This amendment applies to the 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 152(4)

ITA

128(3)

Subsection 128(3) of the Act provides that, in section 128 of the Act, the terms "bankrupt" and "estate of the bankrupt" have the meanings assigned by the *Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act*. As recent amendments to the Act (in Bill C-70) added these same definitions to section 248 of the Act, subsection 128(3) is no longer required, and is therefore repealed. The repeal of subsection 128(3) applies to bankruptcies that occur after April 26, 1995.

Clause 153**Immigration – Paid-Up Capital**

ITA

128.1(2)

Subsection 128.1(2) of the Act applies a formula to adjust the paid-up capital of the shares of a corporation that becomes resident in Canada. As a consequence of changes to Part XIV of the Act, a reference (in paragraph (c) of the description of the variable C in the formula) to paragraph 219(1)(h) of the Act is replaced with a reference to paragraph 219(1)(j) of the Act.

This amendment generally applies to taxation years that begin after 1995. Since the existing reference to paragraph 219(1)(h) of the Act may remain relevant for taxation years that begin in 1996, a transitional version of the amendment leaves both references in place for such taxation years.

Clause 154**Dividend Refund**

ITA

129(1)(b)

If a corporation has filed its tax return for a taxation year within 3 years from the end of the year and the Minister of National Revenue has not paid a "dividend refund" upon issuing the assessment of tax for the year, paragraph 129(1)(b) of the Act allows the corporation to make an application for the refund within the period determined under paragraphs 152(4)(b) or (c) of the Act within which the Minister can reassess tax payable by the corporation for the year. The amendments to paragraph 129(1)(b) are strictly consequential on the amendments to subsection 152(4) of the Act and effect no substantive changes to this provision. Amended paragraph 129(1)(b) applies after April 27, 1989.

Clause 155**Investment Corporations**

ITA

130

Section 130 of the Act sets out special rules relating to the taxation of investment corporations.

Subclause 155(1)**Application of ss. 131(1) to (3.2) and (6)**

ITA

130(2)

As a flow-through vehicle, an investment corporation can pass its capital gains on to its shareholders in the form of capital gains dividends. Such dividends are treated as capital gains in the hands of the shareholders, while the corporation receives a refund of the tax it paid on the gains. This special treatment is made available by subsection 130(2) of the Act, which adapts the capital gains dividend rules for mutual fund corporations (subsections 131(1) to (3.2) of the Act) to investment corporations.

In its current form, subsection 130(2) applies to a corporation that was throughout a taxation year an investment corporation other than a mutual fund corporation. As a result, a corporation that is an investment corporation throughout a taxation year, but that becomes a mutual fund corporation part-way through the year, may lose its entitlement to capital gains dividend treatment. This amendment, which applies to the 1993 and subsequent taxation years, prevents that inappropriate result. The amendment also ensures that the relevant definitions in subsection 131(6) of the Act apply for the purposes of subsection 130(2).

Subclause 155(2)

ITA

130(3)(a)

Paragraph 130(3)(a) of the Act sets out the conditions under which a corporation is considered to be an investment corporation. Among those conditions is, in subparagraph 130(3)(a)(vii) of the Act, a requirement that no shareholder hold more than 25 per cent of the shares of the corporation. This amendment expands that rule. In effect, a person will be considered for the purpose of the 25-per-cent test to own not only any shares that person actually owns, but also (1) any shares owned by persons with whom that person does not deal at arm's length, and (2) a proportionate number of any shares held by a trust or partnership of which that person is a beneficiary or member.

More specifically, under new subparagraph 130(3)(a)(vii.1) of the Act, a corporation will be an investment corporation only if no person acquiring shares of the corporation after June 20, 1996 would be a specified shareholder of the corporation if the definition "specified shareholder" in subsection 248(1) of the Act were modified in two ways: first, if the references to "not less than 10 per cent" were read as "more than 25 per cent;" and second, if that test applied only in respect of the shares of the corporation itself (rather than also in respect of the shares of corporations related to it).

This amendment applies to taxation years that begin after June 20, 1996. A significant exception applies to corporations that were investment corporations on June 20, 1996 and that had one or more shareholders (called "existing 26-per-cent specified shareholders" in these notes) who would otherwise violate the new 25-per-cent specified shareholding test. In such a case, the application of amended subparagraph 130(3)(a)(vii) in respect of the corporation and a given 26-per-cent specified shareholder (as well as persons related to that shareholder) will depend on what happens to the share ownership and capitalization of the corporation after June 20, 1996.

As long as an existing 26-per-cent specified shareholder (and any person who does not deal at arm's length with such a shareholder) does not acquire additional shares of the corporation, or contribute additional capital to it, amended subparagraph 130(3)(a)(vii) does not

apply in respect of the shareholder's interest in the corporation. Assuming it meets the Act's other requirements, the corporation can remain an investment corporation.

If, after June 20, 1996 and before the end of a given taxation year, an existing 26-per-cent specified shareholder contributes capital to the corporation or acquires additional shares of the corporation, amended subparagraph 130(3)(a)(vii) will apply for that and subsequent taxation years, in respect of the shareholder's investment in the corporation. However, this basic rule, in subclause 155(5) of this bill, is overridden in certain cases by subclause 155(8) of this Act. Those cases are essentially the acquisition of shares that have been held continuously since June 20, 1996 by related persons, and the acquisition of shares as stock dividends. These are described in more detail below.

An existing 26-per-cent specified shareholder who buys a share in the market or from treasury will thus cause the corporation not to be an investment corporation, if the shareholder's direct and indirect interest totals over 25 per cent at any time in the year. On the other hand, if before the end of a given year the shareholder has acquired shares only as stock dividends or from related persons, subclause 155(8) of this bill provides that the amended version of subparagraph (vii) is to be read in a special manner for that year. Instead of limiting the shareholder's shareholding to 25 per cent, it will limit it to the greatest percentage of the shares of any class of the corporation's stock that were held at the end of June 20, 1996 by the existing 26-per-cent specified shareholder and non-arm's length persons.

Subclause 155(6) of this bill provides for situations in which a person becomes related to an existing 26-per-cent specified shareholder after June 20, 1996. Such "newly-related persons" (defined in subclause 155(7) of this bill) will not themselves be existing 26-per-cent specified shareholders, and will thus not be covered by subclauses 155(5) and (8). However, subclause 155(6) applies amended subparagraph 130(3)(a)(vii) of the Act to the corporation if a newly-related person either contributes capital to it or holds a share of it (whether directly or indirectly).

Three additional details of these special rules should be noted. First, the class of related persons from whom an existing 26-per-cent specified shareholder may acquire a share under subclause 155(8) of

this bill includes only persons who were related to the shareholder both on June 20, 1996 and at every time (after that date) at which they held the share. This means, for example, that an existing 26-per-cent specified shareholder who marries in 1997 cannot acquire additional shares from her or his new spouse without invoking the ordinary version of subparagraph 130(3)(a)(vii), even though the spouse is related to the shareholder when the shares are transferred. It also means, however, that every person who holds a share between June 20, 1996 and the time it is acquired by an existing 26-per-cent specified shareholder need not remain related to the shareholder throughout, as long as they were related on June 20, 1996 and while the person held the share.

Second, subclause 155(8) of this bill includes a special provision with respect to shares that are issued by the corporation to a person related to an existing 26-per-cent specified shareholder, and are then transferred by that person to the shareholder. Such shares are in effect treated in the same way as shares that existed on June 20, 1996.

Finally, subclause 155(9) of this bill makes special provision for partnerships and trusts. Where a trust that existed on June 20, 1996 distributes a share to a person who has been a beneficiary since that date, in satisfaction of that person's capital interest in the trust, the share is deemed for the purposes of these rules to have been owned by the beneficiary during the period from the later of June 20, 1996 and the time the trust last acquired the share, until the time the beneficiary acquires it. This ensures that the beneficiary, who has simply acquired a share in which the beneficiary already had a beneficial interest, will not be treated as having acquired a share that was owned by an unrelated person.

Similar treatment is given in respect of a share (or an interest in a share) that a partnership that ceases to exist distributes to a person who has been a member of the partnership since June 20, 1996.

The definition "specified shareholder" in subsection 248(1) of the Act treats a trust beneficiary as owning some or all of any shares held by the trust, and a member of a partnership as owning a proportionate number of any shares held by the partnership. The final provision in the coming-into-force rules for the amendment to subparagraph 130(3)(a)(vii) extends this deeming principle to the

acquisition of the share. That is, a person who is a trust beneficiary or a partner and who is therefore deemed to own a share is also deemed to have acquired the share, at the later of the time the trust or partnership acquired it and the time the person last became a beneficiary of the trust or member of the partnership. This ensures that share acquisitions by the trust or partnership are appropriately included in determining the person's interest in the corporation.

Clause 156

Definition of Mortgage Investment Corporation

ITA

130.1(6)

Section 130.1 of the Act sets out rules that apply to mortgage investment corporations and their shareholders. Subsection 130.1(6) defines "mortgage investment corporation" for these purposes.

Subparagraph 130.1(6)(f)(i) of the Act refers to "residential property" as defined in the *Residential Mortgage Financing Act*. That Act, which defined "residential property" by reference to definitions contained in the *National Housing Act*, was repealed in 1993. This amendment to subparagraph 130.1(6)(f)(i) therefore replaces the term "residential property" with the corresponding terms in the *National Housing Act*, so that the substance of the paragraph remains unchanged.

This amendment applies as of June 23, 1993, the date on which the *Residential Mortgage Financing Act* was repealed.

Clause 157

Mutual Fund Corporations

ITA

131

Section 131 sets out rules relating to the taxation of mutual fund corporations and their shareholders.

Subclause 157(1)

ITA

131(2)(b)

If a mutual fund corporation has filed its tax return for a taxation year within 3 years from the end of the year and the Minister of National Revenue has not paid a "capital gains refund" upon issuing the assessment of tax for the year, paragraph 131(2)(b) of the Act allows the corporation to make an application for the refund within the period determined under paragraph 152(4)(b) or (c) of the Act within which the Minister can reassess tax payable by the corporation for the year. The amendments to paragraph 131(2)(b) are strictly consequential on the amendments to subsection 152(4) of the Act and effect no substantive changes to this provision. Amended paragraph 131(2)(b) applies after April 27, 1989.

Subclause 157(2)**Dividend Refund to Mutual Fund Corporation**

ITA

131(5)

Subsection 131(5) of the Act treats a mutual fund corporation as a private corporation for the purposes of the refundable tax imposed under Part IV of the Act on private and certain other ("subject") corporations.

This amendment makes two changes to subsection 131(5). First, it simplifies the description of a mutual fund corporation's refundable dividend tax on hand (RDTOH). Second, it restructures the provision to ensure that a mutual fund corporation does not lose access to its RDTOH if it becomes an investment corporation, or if it has ceased to be a subject corporation.

The amendment applies to the 1993 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 157(3)

ITA
131(8)

Subsection 131(8) of the Act sets out the definition of "mutual fund corporation".

The definition is amended so that "interests" in real property, as defined by subsection 248(4) of the Act, are treated in the same manner as real property for the purposes of determining whether a corporation is a mutual fund corporation. Under subsection 248(4), an "interest" in real property includes a leasehold interest in real property.

This amendment applies to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 158**Mutual Fund Trusts**

ITA
132

Section 132 contains special rules relating to the taxation of mutual fund trusts.

Subclause 158(1)

ITA
132(1)(b)

If a mutual fund trust has filed its tax return for a taxation year within 3 years from the end of the year and the Minister of National Revenue has not paid a "capital gains refund" upon issuing the assessment of tax for the year, paragraph 132(1)(b) of the Act allows the trust to make an application for the refund within the period determined under paragraph 152(4)(b) or (c) of the Act within which the Minister can reassess tax payable by the trust for the year. The amendments to paragraph 132(1)(b) are strictly consequential on the amendments to subsection 152(4) and effect no substantive changes

to this provision. Amended paragraph 132(1)(b) applies after April 27, 1989.

Subclauses 158(2) and (3)

Meaning of "Mutual Fund Trust"

ITA

132(6)

Subsection 132(6) of the Act sets out the definition of "mutual fund trust". Under the definition, if a trust becomes a mutual fund trust on or before the day on which it must file its return for its first taxation year, it can elect to be deemed to have been a mutual fund trust from the start of its first taxation year to the day on which it first met the requirements. Consequential to the addition of new subsection 132(6.1) of the Act, the portion of subsection 132(6) providing the election is repealed.

The definition is also amended so that "interests" in real property, as defined by subsection 248(4) of the Act, are treated in the same manner as real property for the purposes of determining whether a trust is a mutual fund trust. Under subsection 248(4), an "interest" in real property includes a leasehold interest in real property.

These amendments apply to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 158(4)

Election to be Mutual Fund

ITA

132(6.1)

New subsection 132(6.1) of the Act provides that where a trust becomes a mutual fund trust at any time before the 91st day after the end of the calendar year in which it was created and the trust elects in its first return of income under Part I, the trust is treated as having been a mutual fund trust from the day it was created. The subsection replaces the election previously available under subsection 132(6) of the Act which required that a trust make such an

election on or before its balance due date for its first taxation year. The amendment applies to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 159

Mutual Fund Reorganizations

ITA
132.2(1)

Section 132.2 of the Act provides for "qualifying exchanges" between mutual funds. In a qualifying exchange, one mutual fund transfers all or substantially all of its property to another mutual fund, and takes back units of the transferee fund. The transferor fund's investors then exchange their shares or units of the transferor for those units of the transferee fund. Both sets of transactions take place on a tax-deferred or "rollover" basis. The qualifying exchange thus allows two mutual funds to be merged with no immediate tax consequence.

Section 132.2 is amended in three respects. First, a new paragraph is inserted (amended paragraph (*p*)) to ensure the appropriate computation of the transferor and transferee fund's capital gains redemptions under subsection 131(6) or 132(4) of the Act for its taxation year that includes the beginning of the qualifying exchange. A fund's capital gains redemptions are that proportion of both its realized and its latent capital gains that is presumed to have been distributed to investors on redemptions as gains on their investments. Since under the present rules the units of the transferee taken back by the transferor on a qualifying exchange have a cost amount of nil for all purposes, the transferor's latent gain on those units will likely be overstated. Similarly, the transferee's capital gains redemptions for its last taxation year beginning before the exchange occurs could be distorted by the inclusion of the value of the units issued by the transferee to the transferor, or by the inclusion of the assets or liabilities assumed by the transferee, on the exchange.

To prevent those potential distortions, amended paragraph (*p*) treats the transferor's total cost amount of all its property as the total of its proceeds of disposition of property it has transferred on the exchange, and its cost amount of property not transferred. The transferee, meanwhile, is treated as not having acquired any of the property it

received on the exchange. These deeming rules apply only for the purposes of computing the funds' capital gains redemptions for their taxation years that include the transfer time.

A consequential amendment to paragraph 132.2(1)(h) of the Act confirms that the special rule in amended paragraph (p) overrides the general rule with respect to the cost of the property taken back on the exchange by the transferor.

The second change to section 132.2 confirms that a qualifying exchange does not constitute a deemed dividend to the investors in the transferor fund.

Where the transferor fund is a corporation, its investors' exchange of their shares for units of the transferee may constitute an acquisition of those shares by the transferor. Subsection 84(3) of the Act provides that on the redemption, acquisition or cancellation of its shares, a corporation is treated as having paid a dividend. Subsection 131(4) of the Act, however, prevents section 84 of the Act from applying to mutual fund corporations. If the transferor fund is a mutual fund corporation when its investors exchange their shares for units of the transferee, then the investors will not be treated as having received a dividend.

To ensure that no deemed dividend arises on a qualifying exchange, paragraph 132.2(1)(o) of the Act is amended to provide that where, as part of a qualifying exchange, an investor disposes of a share of the transferor, for the purposes of subsection 131(4) the transferor will be treated as being a mutual fund at the time of that disposition.

Existing paragraph 132.2(1)(p) of the Act, which precludes the transferor fund from continuing to be treated as a mutual fund, is amended to accommodate the change to paragraph (o), and is renamed as paragraph (q).

Finally, the definition of "qualifying exchange" in subsection 132.2 is amended to accommodate the exercise of statutory dissent rights by investors in the transferor fund. Despite the general rule in

paragraph (b) of that definition, that any person disposing of shares of the transferor within the 60-day period of the exchange may receive only units of the transferee in return, the fact that an investor chooses to exercise dissent rights rather than participating in the exchange will not disqualify the transaction as a qualifying exchange.

These changes apply as of the July 1, 1994 coming-into-force of the qualifying exchange rules, except that funds that have carried out a qualifying exchange before November 1996 may choose not to have new paragraph 132.2(1)(p) apply in respect of their exchange. To make this choice, the funds must jointly elect in writing filed with the Minister of National Revenue before the end of the third month following Royal Assent to this legislation.

Clause 160

Non-Resident-Owned Investment Corporations

ITA

133(6)(b)

If a non-resident-owned investment corporation has filed its tax return for a taxation year within 3 years from the end of the year and the Minister of National Revenue has not paid an "allowable refund" upon issuing the assessment of tax for the year, paragraph 133(6)(b) of the Act allows the corporation to make an application for the refund within the period determined under paragraph 152(4)(b) or (c) of the Act within which the Minister can reassess tax payable by the corporation for the year. The amendments to paragraph 133(6)(b) are strictly consequential on the amendments to subsection 152(4) and effect no substantive changes to this provision. Amended paragraph 133(6)(b) applies after April 27, 1989.

Clause 161**Cooperative Corporations**

ITA

136(1)

Subsection 136(1) of the Act provides that cooperative corporations that would otherwise be private corporations are considered not to be private corporations, except for the purposes of certain provisions of the Act listed in that subsection. Subsection 136(1) is amended to add to the list the definition of "mark-to-market property" in subsection 142.2(1) of the Act. Thus, a cooperative that is a private corporation retains its status for the purpose of that definition and any regulations made under the definition. At present, whether a cooperative is a private corporation is relevant only for proposed subsection 9001(1) of the *Income Tax Regulations*, which prescribes certain small business corporation shares for the purpose of paragraph (e) of the definition of mark-to-market property.

The amendment to subsection 136(1) applies to taxation years that end after February 22, 1994.

Clause 162**Insurer – Not Private Corporation**

ITA

141.1

Section 141.1 of the Act provides that for many purposes an insurance corporation (other than a life insurance corporation) is not treated as a private corporation. The section is amended to include among those the new refundable additional tax on the investment income of Canadian-controlled private corporations, in section 123.2 of the Act.

To coincide with the introduction of section 123.2, this amendment applies to taxation years that end after June 1995.

Clause 163

Definition – "specified debt obligation"

ITA

142.2(1)

A "specified debt obligation" of a taxpayer is the taxpayer's interest in a loan, bond, debenture, mortgage, note, agreement of sale or any other similar indebtedness, or in any debt obligation purchased by the taxpayer. However, it does not include an interest in an income bond, an income debenture, a small business development bond, a small business bond or a prescribed property. The amendment excludes from the definition any instrument issued by or made with a person to whom the taxpayer is related or with whom the taxpayer does not otherwise deal at arm's length, or in which the taxpayer has a significant interest. Such instruments will continue to be dealt with outside the new mark-to-market property rules. The amendment applies to taxation years that end after February 22, 1994.

Clause 164

Income from Specified Debt Obligation

ITA

142.3

Section 142.3 of the Act provides that the amounts included or deducted in respect of a specified debt obligation (as defined in subsection 142.2(1) of the Act) in computing the income of a financial institution are to be determined in accordance with rules set out in the Regulations.

Subclauses 164(1) to (3)**Amounts to be Included and Deducted**

ITA

142.3(1)

Three consequential amendments are made to subsection 142.3(1) of the Act:

- (i) the reference to subsection 142.3(2) of the Act is changed to subsection 142.3(3) as a consequence of the renumbering of that provision;
- (ii) paragraph 142.3(1)(c) of the Act is amended so that it allows new subsection 142.3(2) to apply with respect to the determination of amounts to be included or deducted in respect of specified debt obligations; and
- (iii) subsection 142.3(1) is amended to make it subject to new subsection 142.3(4) of the Act.

The first two amendments apply to taxation years that end after February 22, 1994, except that they do not apply to a debt obligation disposed of before February 23, 1994. The third amendment is applicable to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayers elects to have new paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act apply to those years.

Subclauses 164(4)

ITA

142.3(2) and (3)

Subsection 142.3(2) of the Act provides that subsection 142.3(1) of the Act does not apply to specified debt obligations that are mark-to-market properties, nor does it apply to indexed debt obligations (as defined in subsection 248(1) of the Act). This subsection is renumbered as subsection 142.3(3) of the Act and is amended so that it also applies for the purpose of new subsection 142.3(2). The latter amendment is made because of the

reference in new subsection 142.3(2) to amounts required by subsection 12(3) of the Act to be included in a taxpayer's income in respect of specified debt obligations.

New subsection 142.3(2) applies where a financial institution has failed to include an amount in income in respect of a specified debt obligation, as required by paragraph 142.3(1)(a) of the Act. Subsection 142.3(2) provides that the amount is to be included in computing the financial institution's income for a subsequent taxation year in which it still holds the obligation, except to the extent that the amount has been included in computing income for a preceding taxation year. This rule is similar to the requirement in subsection 12(3) that all interest that has accrued to a taxpayer or was received by the taxpayer to the end of a taxation year be included in computing the taxpayer's income for the year, to the extent that it was not included in computing the taxpayer's income for a preceding taxation year.

Subsection 142.3(2) also applies if a financial institution has not included an amount in income as required by subsection 12(3). This is relevant for specified debt obligations that were acquired before subsection 142.3(1) began to apply to the taxpayer. If a taxpayer failed to report an amount as required by subsection 12(3), that subsection will not apply to later years when the tax treatment of the obligation is governed by subsection 142.3(1).

These amendments apply to taxation years ending after February 22, 1994, except that they do not apply to debt obligations disposed of before February 23, 1994.

Subclause 164(5)

Impaired Specified Debt Obligations

ITA 142.3(4)

New subsection 142.3(4) of the Act provides that subsection 142.3(1) of the Act does not apply to a taxpayer in respect of a specified debt obligation for that part of a taxpayer's taxation year in which the obligation is impaired and an amount in respect thereof is deductible under new subparagraph 20(1)(l)(ii) of the Act by the taxpayer for the

year. Therefore no amount will be included in the income of the taxpayer in respect of the obligation under 142.3(1) for the part of the taxation year in which the obligation is impaired. This is consistent with the new accounting rules which provide that recognition of interest income in accordance with the terms of the original debt obligation ceases on the impairment of the obligation. New subsection 142.3(4) applies to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have the reserve provisions in new paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act apply to those years.

Clause 165

Disposition of Specified Debt Obligation

ITA
142.4

Section 142.4 of the Act contains rules for the measurement and treatment of the gain or loss realized by a financial institution on the disposition of a specified debt obligation (other than a mark-to-market property). The amendments to this section apply to taxation years that end after February 22, 1994.

Subclauses 165(1) and (2)

Definition of "tax basis"

ITA
142.4(1)

Subsection 142.4(1) of the Act defines the tax basis of a specified debt obligation. The tax basis, which is analogous to the adjusted cost base of a capital property, is used to measure the gain or loss from a disposition of the obligation. Paragraphs (b) and (j) of the definition are amended.

Paragraph (b) of the definition adds to the tax basis of a specified debt obligation amounts included by several provisions in respect of the obligation in computing the income of the taxpayer. This

paragraph is amended to add a reference to new subsection 142.3(2) of the Act.

Paragraph (j) of the definition reduces the tax basis of a specified debt obligation to a taxpayer by the amount of a payment received by the taxpayer under the obligation where the payment is in respect of an amount included in the tax basis by any of paragraphs (a) to (f) of the definition and is not proceeds of disposition. Paragraph (j) is amended to provide that the tax basis of a specified debt obligation is reduced by all payments received by the taxpayer under the obligation, other than a payment that is proceeds of disposition or a fee or similar amount.

Subclause 165(3)

Rules Applicable to Disposition

ITA
142.4(3)

Paragraph 142.4(3)(a) of the Act provides that where a taxpayer disposes of a specified debt obligation after February 22, 1994, no amount will be included or deducted in respect of the disposition except as provided by section 142.4 of the Act. Other provisions of the Act do not apply.

Paragraph 142.4(3)(a) of the Act is amended to permit paragraph 79.1(7)(d) of the Act to apply where a taxpayer disposes of a specified debt obligation. Accordingly, where a financial institution forecloses on the security under a loan, the financial institution will be able to claim a deduction under 79.1(7)(d) in respect of any accrued but unpaid interest the financial institution has been required to include in income under paragraph 142.3(1)(a) of the Act.

Subclause 165(4)**Inclusions and Deductions Re Disposition**

ITA

142.4(4)

Subsection 142.4(4) of the Act applies to the disposition of a specified debt obligation after 1994, except a disposition to which subsection 142.4(5) of the Act applies. It requires the taxpayer to include or deduct amounts in respect of the disposition in computing income.

The amendments to subsection 142.4(4) are consequential on the amendment of the definition of "current amount" in subsection 142.4(7) of the Act. They do not change the net amount required by subsection 142.4(4) to be included or deducted in respect of a disposition in computing income. The definition of "current amount" is amended so that it does not include the transition amount in respect of the disposition. Thus, it is just the credit-related component of a gain or loss.

As amended, paragraph 142.4(4)(a) of the Act applies where the transition amount in respect of the disposition of a specified debt obligation is positive. It requires the transition amount to be included in computing the taxpayer's income for the taxation year in which the disposition occurs. Paragraph 142.4(4)(b) of the Act provides for an amount equal to the absolute value of the transition amount to be deducted if the transition amount is negative.

Paragraph 142.4(4)(c) of the Act, which applies where a taxpayer has a gain from the disposition of a specified debt obligation, requires the current amount of the gain to be included in income in the year of disposition, and requires a prescribed part of the residual portion of the gain (as defined in subsection 142.4(8) of the Act) to be included in income each year, starting in the year of disposition. Proposed Part XCII of the *Income Tax Regulations* will contain the rules for amortizing the residual portion of a gain.

Paragraph 142.4(4)(d) of the Act, which is similar to paragraph 142.4(4)(c), provides for deductions where a taxpayer has a loss from the disposition of a specified debt obligation.

Gain or Loss Not Amortized

ITA

142.4(5)

Subsection 142.4(5) of the Act provides that the full gain or loss from the disposition after February 22, 1994 of certain specified debt obligations is to be included or deducted in computing income for the taxation year in which the disposition occurs. This subsection is replaced by a new subsection 142.4(5) that differs from the existing subsection in the following respects:

- a new paragraph 142.4(5)(c) is added;
- existing paragraph 142.4(5)(c) is relabelled as paragraph (d); and
- existing paragraphs 142.4(5)(d) and (e) are replaced by new paragraphs 142.4(5)(e) and (f).

New paragraph 142.4(5)(c) of the Act permits a taxpayer (other than a life insurance corporation) to elect to postpone the commencement of the amortization requirement for gains and losses. If the election is made, subsection 142.4(5) applies to all dispositions of specified debt obligations before 1996. The election must be in writing and filed with the Minister of National Revenue before July 1997.

New paragraph 142.4(5)(e) of the Act provides that the amount to be included in a taxpayer's income in respect of the disposition of a specified debt obligation is the amount, if any, by which the taxpayer's proceeds of disposition exceed the tax basis of the obligation. Paragraph 142.4(5)(f) of the Act contains a similar rule for the measurement and deduction of a loss. Currently, the corresponding provisions in paragraphs 142.4(5)(d) and (e) refer to the gain or loss determined under subsection 142.4(6) of the Act. This amendment to subsection 142.4(5) does not affect the amount of the gains and losses to be recognized, but is made so that subsection 142.4(6) can be simplified.

Subclauses 165(5) and (6)**Gain or Loss from Disposition of Obligation**

ITA

142.4(6)

Subsection 142.4(6) of the Act provides for the determination of a taxpayer's gain or loss from the disposition of a specified debt obligation. The gain or loss is equal to

- the taxpayer's proceeds of disposition

minus

- the tax basis of the obligation to the taxpayer, and
- if subsection 142.4(4) of the Act applies to the disposition, the taxpayer's transition amount (as defined in subsection 142.4(1) of the Act) in respect of the obligation. (If the transition amount is negative, the absolute value of that amount is added.)

Two amendments are made to subsection 142.4(6).

Paragraph 142.4(6)(b) of the Act is amended so that a loss from a disposition is expressed as a positive amount rather than a negative amount. The second amendment, which is made to the description of C in the formula in the subsection, provides for the transition amount to always be taken into account in determining the gain or loss. A related amendment is made to subsection 142.4(5) of the Act so that subsection does not use the gain or loss as determined under subsection 142.4(6), but instead provides a separate determination of the gain or loss for the purpose of that subsection.

Subclause 165(7)**Current Amount**

ITA
142.4(7)

Subsection 142.4(7) of the Act defines the current amount in respect of the disposition of a specified debt obligation by a taxpayer. It is the positive or negative amount equal to the sum of the transition amount in respect of the obligation and the credit-related portion of the gain or loss from the disposition (with the credit-related portion of a loss treated as a negative amount).

Subsection 142.4(7) is amended to define the current amount to be the credit-related portion of the gain or loss from the disposition of a specified debt obligation. The transition amount is not included as part of the current amount. Also, the current amount is a positive amount whether there was a gain or a loss. A related amendment to subsection 142.4(4) of the Act provides for the separate inclusion or deduction of the transition amount in computing income. These amendments do not make any substantive changes to the current rules.

Residual Portion of Gain or Loss

ITA
142.4(8)

Subsection 142.4(8) of the Act defines the residual portion of a taxpayer's gain or loss from the disposition of a specified debt obligation. The amendment to subsection 142.4(8) is consequential on the amendment to subsection 142.4(7) of the Act, and does not change the determination of the residual portion.

Disposition of Part of Obligation

ITA
142.4(9)

Subsection 142.4(9) of the Act provides that where a financial institution disposes of part of a specified debt obligation,

section 142.4 of the Act and the regulations made for the purpose of the section apply as if that part and the retained part were separate debt obligations. This subsection is amended so that it also applies for the purposes of section 142.3 of the Act. In addition, the reference to "regulations" is deleted, since subsection 142.4(9) applies to the *Income Tax Regulations* without explicitly referring to them.

Penalties and Bonuses

ITA

142.4(10)

New subsection 142.4(10) of the Act provides that a penalty or bonus received by a taxpayer in respect of the early repayment of a specified debt obligation is to be treated as part of the proceeds of disposition of the obligation. Subsection 142.4(10) applies instead of subsection 18(9.1) of the Act, where that latter subsection would otherwise apply to deem the amount to be received as interest.

Payments Received On or After Disposition

ITA

142.4(11)

New subsection 142.4(11) of the Act provides that a payment (other than proceeds of disposition) received by a taxpayer under a specified debt obligation on or after the disposition of the obligation shall be considered to have been received immediately before the disposition. Consequently, the payment will be taken into account in determining the tax basis of the obligation to the taxpayer immediately before the disposition, and hence in determining the taxpayer's gain or loss from the disposition.

Clause 166**Mark-to-Market Properties****Transition – Inclusion Re Non-Capital Amounts**

ITA

142.5(5)

Subsection 142.5(5) of the Act applies to a financial institution that has claimed a transition deduction under subsection 142.5(4) of the Act in respect of the introduction of the mark-to-market requirement. It requires a prescribed portion of the deducted amount to be included in income in each taxation year starting with the year that includes October 31, 1994. Subsection 142.5(5) is amended to modify the way in which it confers regulation-making authority. This amendment applies to taxation years that end after October 30, 1994.

Transition – Deduction Re Net Capital Gains

ITA

142.5(6)

Subsection 142.5(6) of the Act is a transition rule that applies with respect to capital property that is deemed to be disposed of on the initial application of the mark-to-market requirement. It permits a financial institution to claim an allowable capital loss not exceeding a prescribed amount. The amendment to subsection 142.5(6) provides that, in the case of a taxpayer not resident in Canada, the allowable capital loss is considered to be from the disposition of taxable Canadian property. This amendment applies to taxation years that end after October 30, 1994.

Transition – Inclusion Re Net Capital Gains

ITA

142.5(7)

Subsection 142.5(7) of the Act applies to a financial institution that has elected to claim an allowable capital loss under subsection 142.5(6) of the Act for its taxation year that includes October 31, 1994. Subsection 142.5(7) deems the financial institution

to have a taxable capital gain for that year and for subsequent years equal to the portion of the elected amount prescribed for the year. Subsection 142.5(7) is amended to modify the way in which it confers regulation-making authority. It is also amended to provide that, in the case of a taxpayer not resident in Canada, the taxable capital gain is considered to be from the disposition of taxable Canadian property. These amendments apply to taxation years that end after October 30, 1994.

Clause 167

Accrued Capital Gains and Losses Election

ITA

142.6(8) to (10)

New subsection 142.6(8) of the Act is a transitional rule that applies to properties held by a financial institution in its last taxation year that ended before February 23, 1994. Where a financial institution holds a capital property (other than a depreciable property) in that year that will be a mark-to-market property or a specified debt obligation under the new mark-to-market property rules and on which there is an accrued capital gain, subsection 142.6(8) permits the financial institution to elect – subject to the limits imposed under new subsection 142.6(9) of the Act – to realize all or any part of that accrued capital gain. Similarly, where a financial institution holds a capital property (other than a depreciable property) in that year that will not be a mark-to-market property or a specified debt obligation under the new mark-to-market property rules and on which there is an accrued capital loss, the financial institution can elect – subject to the limits imposed under new subsection 142.6(10) of the Act – to realize all or any part of that accrued capital loss.

The effect of subsections 142.6(8) to (10) is to permit a financial institution to recognize any capital gains accrued on its assets that were capital properties, and that became mark-to-market properties or specified debt obligations in its first taxation year that ends after February 22, 1994, to offset its capital losses that have been realized or accrued on other properties before the beginning of that year.

New subsection 142.6(9) limits the amount of accrued capital gains a financial institution can elect to realize under subsection 142.6(8). Subsection 142.6(9) will deem an election to realize taxable capital gains under 142.6(8) not to have been made where the election would have the effect of increasing the financial institution's net taxable capital gains – that is, the amount by which the financial institution's taxable capital gains for the year exceed the total of its allowable capital losses for the year and the greatest amount it could claim in the year as a capital loss carryforward.

Subsection 142.6(9) prevents a financial institution from realizing accrued capital gains on mark-to-market properties or specified debt obligations under subsection 142.6(8) unless the financial institution has capital losses (from either actual or elected dispositions) or capital loss carryforwards to offset the elected gains.

Where a financial institution elects to realize an excessive amount of capital gains, the election is deemed not to have been made. However, the financial institution may, within certain time limits, file another election that satisfies the requirements of this subsection (and subsection 142.6(10)).

New subsection 142.6(10) places two limits on the amount of accrued capital losses a financial institution can elect to realize under subsection 142.6(8).

First, under paragraph 142.6(10)(a) of the Act, an election to realize allowable capital losses under subsection 142.6(8) will be valid only if the financial institution's allowable capital losses (including those sought to be realized under the election) and net capital loss carryforwards would not exceed its taxable capital gains (including those sought to be realized under the election) in the year.

Paragraph 142.6(10)(a) restricts the election under subsection 142.6(8) to ensure that a financial institution does not use the election to realize accrued capital losses that it can not use to offset gains in the year in the expectation that it will be able to use those losses in a future year to offset taxable capital gains on other properties while still retaining the capital properties on which the losses accrued.

Second, under paragraph 142.6(10)(b) of the Act, a financial institution can elect to realize capital losses under

paragraph 142.6(8)(b) only to the extent that those losses do not exceed the capital gains it has elected to realize under paragraph 142.6(8)(a) of the Act. In other words, a financial institution may realize accrued losses to offset taxable capital gains only where it elected to realize the gains on properties that will be subject to the mark-to-market rules; an election to realize accrued capital losses will not be permitted simply to offset capital gains from actual dispositions made by the taxpayer in its last taxation year that ended before February 23, 1994.

Where a financial institution elects to realize an excessive amount of capital losses, the election is deemed not to have been made. However, the financial institution may, within certain time limits, file another election that satisfies the requirements of this subsection (and subsection 142.6(9)).

New subsections 142.6(8) to (10) apply to the 1993 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 168

Cost of Tax Shelter Investments

ITA 143.2

New section 143.2 of the Act sets out the rules that apply for the purpose of computing the amount of any expenditure that is, or is the cost or capital cost of, a taxpayer's tax shelter investment. New section 143.2 also applies to the amount of any expenditure of a taxpayer where an interest in the taxpayer is a tax shelter investment. New subsection 143.2(6) of the Act provides that a taxpayer is to reduce the amount of, or the cost or capital cost of, an affected expenditure by any limited-recourse amounts that can reasonably be considered to relate to the expenditure and by the taxpayer's at-risk adjustment in respect of the expenditure. The application of these rules is more fully described in the following commentary.

Definitions

ITA

143.2(1)

New subsection 143.2(1) of the Act provides definitions that apply for the purpose of new section 143.2 of the Act. The terms defined for this purpose are "expenditure", "limited partner", "limited-recourse amount", "taxpayer", and "tax shelter investment". "Limited-recourse amount" means the unpaid principal amount of any indebtedness for which recourse is limited, either immediately or in the future and either absolutely or contingently.

Generally, the definition "tax shelter investment" means a property that is defined to be a "tax shelter" under subsection 237.1(1) of the Act. In certain cases, a taxpayer's interest in a partnership is also considered to be a "tax shelter investment" notwithstanding that the taxpayer's partnership interest is not a "tax shelter" under subsection 237.1(1).

New subsection 143.2(1) generally applies to properties acquired and outlays and expenses made or incurred after November 1994.

At-risk Adjustment

ITA

143.2(2)

New subsection 143.2(2) of the Act provides that an "at-risk adjustment" in respect of an expenditure of a particular taxpayer means any amount or benefit that the particular taxpayer, or another taxpayer not dealing at arm's length with the particular taxpayer, is or may be entitled to receive or obtain. This subsection applies where the amount or benefit is intended to protect the particular taxpayer or the other taxpayer from loss in respect of the taxpayer's expenditure. Under new subparagraph 143.2(6)(b)(ii) of the Act, which generally applies after April 26, 1995, certain expenditures of a taxpayer are reduced by the amount of the taxpayer's at-risk adjustment in respect of the expenditure.

Amount or Benefit Not Included

ITA

143.2(3)

New subsection 143.2(3) of the Act provides circumstances where amounts or benefits are not considered to be amounts or benefits included in a taxpayer's "at-risk adjustment" in respect of an expenditure under new subsection 143.1(2) of the Act. New subsection 143.2(3) provides that new subsection 143.2(2) of the Act does not apply, for example, to the extent that a taxpayer's entitlement to an amount or benefit arises:

- under normal liability insurance protection;
- as a consequence of death of the taxpayer; or
- in respect of an amount not included in the expenditure.

This subsection generally applies after April 26, 1995.

Amount or Benefit

ITA

143.2(4)

New subsection 143.2(4) of the Act provides that, where an amount or benefit referred to in new subsection 143.2(2) of the Act is provided by way of an agreement under which a taxpayer has or may have a right to acquire property, the taxpayer is considered to be entitled at any time to an amount or benefit equal to the fair market value of the property at that time.

This subsection generally applies after April 26, 1995.

Amount or Benefit

ITA

143.2(5)

New subsection 143.2(5) of the Act provides that, for the purpose of the at-risk adjustment in new subsection 143.2(2) of the Act, where a

taxpayer, or a person not dealing at arm's length with the taxpayer, has a borrowing guaranteed or otherwise backed by a security or similar indemnity or covenant, the amount or benefit to which the taxpayer is entitled is considered to be equal to the outstanding balance of the borrowing.

This subsection generally applies after April 26, 1995.

Amount of Expenditure

ITA

143.2(6)

New subsection 143.2(6) of the Act applies to reduce the amount of any expenditure that is, or is the cost or capital cost of, a taxpayer's tax shelter investment by certain amounts. This reduction also applies to the amount of any expenditure of a taxpayer where an interest in the taxpayer is considered to be a tax shelter investment.

New subparagraph 143.2(6)(b)(i) of the Act provides a reduction of the total of all limited-recourse amounts in respect of an affected expenditure. For this purpose, an expenditure's limited-recourse amount refers to such amounts of the taxpayer and all other taxpayers not dealing at arm's length with the taxpayer, where the particular limited-recourse amount can reasonably be considered to relate to the expenditure. This reduction for limited-recourse amounts occurs at the time the expenditure was acquired, made or incurred including where the limited-recourse amount arises after the acquisition, making or incurring of the expenditure.

New subparagraph 143.2(6)(b)(ii) of the Act provides for a reduction of an amount, or cost or capital cost, of an affected expenditure of a taxpayer to the extent of the taxpayer's "at-risk adjustment" in respect of the expenditure.

New subparagraph 143.2(6)(b)(iii) of the Act provides for a reduction of an amount, or cost or capital cost, of an affected expenditure of a taxpayer to the extent of each limited-recourse amount and at-risk amount determined under section 143.2 of each other taxpayer who deals at arm's length with and holds, directly or indirectly, an interest in the taxpayer, that can reasonably be considered to relate to the expenditure.

New subparagraphs 143.2(6)(b)(i) and (iii) generally apply to property acquired and to outlays and expenses made or incurred after November 1994. New subparagraph 143.2(6)(b)(ii) generally applies after April 26, 1995.

Repayment of Indebtedness

ITA

143.2(7)

New subsection 143.2(7) of the Act describes circumstances in which the unpaid principal of indebtedness will be deemed to be a limited-recourse amount. This subsection generally applies after November 1994.

Limited-recourse Amount

ITA

143.2(8)

New subsection 143.2(8) of the Act treats the unpaid principal of an indebtedness relating to a taxpayer's expenditure as a limited-recourse amount where the taxpayer is a partnership and recourse against any member of the partnership in respect of the indebtedness is limited, either immediately or in the future and either absolutely or contingently. This subsection applies after November 1994.

Timing

ITA

143.2(9)

New subsection 143.2(9) of the Act sets out rules applicable upon payment of an amount on account of the principal amount of an indebtedness relating to an expenditure to which a subsection 143.2(2) "at-risk" adjustment previously applied. In such circumstances, the "at-risk" adjustment applies to the expenditure before the time of payment and, to the extent the amount of repayment is not subject to a reduction under new subsection 143.2(6) of the Act, the expenditure is considered to have been made or incurred at the time of, and by the amount of, the repaid amount. Generally, this subsection applies after April 26, 1995.

Timing

ITA
143.2(10)

New subsection 143.2(10) of the Act provides that the payment of a limited-recourse amount results in the repaid amount being an expenditure made or incurred at the time of the payment. The former limited-recourse indebtedness is also considered to be a limited-recourse amount at all times before its repayment. To the extent the amount of the repayment is not subject to a reduction under new subsection 143.2(6) of the Act, the expenditure is considered to have been made or incurred at the time of, and by the amount of, the repaid amount. This subsection applies after November 1994.

Short-Term Debt

ITA
143.2(11)

New subsection 143.2(11) provides an exception to the deemed "limited-recourse" rules in new subsections 143.2(7) and (8) of the Act where the otherwise affected indebtedness is fully repaid no later than 60 days after it arose, except where:

- (a) any portion of the repayment is made with a "limited recourse amount", or
- (b) the repayment is part of a series of loans or other indebtedness and repayments that ends more than 60 days after the indebtedness arose.

Generally, this subsection applies after November, 1994.

Series of Loans or Repayments

ITA
143.2(12)

New subsection 143.2(12) of the Act provides that, for the purpose of new paragraph 143.2(7)(a) of the Act, a debtor is considered not to

have made arrangements to repay an indebtedness within 10 years if the arrangement to repay is part of a series of loans or other indebtedness and repayments that ends more than 10 years after it begins. Generally, this subsection applies after April 26, 1995.

Information Located Outside Canada

ITA

143.2(13)

New subsection 143.2(13) of the Act applies where information relevant in respect of indebtedness is located outside Canada, and the Minister of National Revenue is not satisfied that the indebtedness is not a limited-recourse amount. In such cases, the unpaid principal of the indebtedness shall be considered to be a limited-recourse amount unless:

- the information is provided to the Minister; or
- the information is located in a country with which Canada has a tax treaty that includes a provision under which the Minister can obtain the information.

This subsection applies after November 1994.

Information Located Outside Canada

ITA

143.2(14)

New subsection 143.2(14) of the Act applies where information relevant for the purpose of determining whether a taxpayer is not dealing at arm's length with another taxpayer is located outside Canada, and the Minister of National Revenue is not satisfied that the taxpayers are dealing at arm's length. In such cases, the taxpayers will be deemed not to be dealing with each other at arm's length unless:

- the information is provided to the Minister; or

- the information is located in a country with which Canada has a tax treaty that includes a provision under which the Minister can obtain the information.

This subsection applies after November 1994.

Assessments

ITA

143.2(15)

New subsection 143.2(15) of the Act provides to the Minister of National Revenue the authority to make the assessments, determinations and redeterminations that are necessary to give effect to section 143.2 of the Act, notwithstanding that the taxation year in question is otherwise statute-barred from assessment. This subsection applies after November 1994.

Clause 169

Employee Profit Sharing Plans

ITA

144

Section 144 provides rules applicable to employees profit sharing plans.

Subclause 169(1)

Employee Profit Sharing Plan

ITA

144(1)

Subsection 144(1) of the Act provides a definition of the term "employees profit sharing plan" for the purposes of section 144. This amendment to subparagraph 144(1)(a)(iii) of the English version of the Act replaces the reference to paragraphs (a) and (b), which was inadvertently included when the subparagraph was amended by the Statutes of Canada 1994, chapter 21 (Bill C-27), with the correct

reference to subparagraphs (i) and (ii). This amendment applies to the 1992 and subsequent taxation years, the same period to which the amendment in Bill C-27 applied.

Subclause 169(2)

Unused Portion of a Beneficiary's Exempt Capital Gains Balance

ITA

144(1)

Subsection 144(1) of the Act is amended, applicable to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years, by adding the definition of "unused portion of a beneficiary's exempt capital gains balance" in respect of a trust governed by an employees profit sharing plan. The addition of this definition is consequential on the elimination of the \$100,000 lifetime capital gains exemption for gains arising on dispositions that occur after February 22, 1994 and the introduction of the mechanism in subsection 110.6(19) of the Act for recognizing gains accrued to the end of that day.

This definition is relevant where a beneficiary of a trust governed by an employees profit sharing plan has an exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust and the beneficiary receives property, other than money, in satisfaction of all or a portion of the beneficiary's interests in the trust. Property, other than money, received from the trust is received on the rollover basis set out in paragraphs 144(7.1)(a) and (b) of the Act. Paragraph 144(7.1)(c) of the Act provides that an additional amount may be available to be included in the cost of property received from the trust in satisfaction of all or a portion of the beneficiary's interests in order that the beneficiary be able to make full use of an exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust. This cost inclusion is also available in taxation years ending after 2004, even though exempt capital gains balances expire for such years, in order to be consistent with the adjusted cost base increase available under paragraph 53(1)(p) of the Act in respect of interests in flow-through entities. The total amount available to be included in the cost of properties received in satisfaction of all or a portion of the beneficiary's interests is the "unused portion of a beneficiary's exempt capital gains balance" in respect of a trust governed by an employees profit sharing plan. This defined amount equals, where the property is received before the end

of the beneficiary's 2004 taxation year, the beneficiary's exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust for the year minus the total of all reductions in capital gains in the year under section 39.1 of the Act due to the exempt capital gains balance. Where the property is received after the beneficiary's 2004 taxation year, this defined amount is the amount that would have been the exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust for the beneficiary's taxation year minus any increase under paragraph 53(1)(p) in the adjusted cost base of an interest or a part of an interest of the beneficiary in the trust that was disposed of (other than in a disposition that is part of a transaction in which property was received from the trust in satisfaction of all or a portion of the beneficiary's interests in the trust). The unused portion of the beneficiary's exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust governed by the employees profit sharing plan so determined is available to be allocated to the cost of each property received from the trust in the manner set out under paragraph 144(7.1)(c).

Subclause 169(3)

Where Property Other Than Money Received by Beneficiary

ITA
144(7.1)(b)

Paragraph 144(7.1)(b) of the Act is amended, applicable to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years, to permit an additional amount determined under new paragraph 144(7.1)(c) of the Act to be included in the cost of a property distributed to a beneficiary of an employees profit sharing plan by the trust in satisfaction of all or a portion of the beneficiary's interest in the trust.

Subclause 169(4)

Where Property Other Than Money Received By Beneficiary

ITA
144(7.1)(c)

New paragraph 144(7.1)(c) of the Act is added consequential on the elimination of the \$100,000 lifetime capital gains exemption for gains arising on dispositions that occur after February 22, 1994 and the

introduction of the mechanism in subsection 110.6(19) of the Act for recognizing gains accrued to that date. Where an individual recognizes a capital gain accrued to the end of that date on an interest in, or a share of the capital stock of, a flow-through entity (within the meaning assigned by subsection 39.1(1) of the Act), the amount of the gain is credited to a special account referred to as the individual's exempt capital gains balance in respect of the entity. Claims may be made against this account to reduce gains that are flowed out to the individual by the entity for taxation years before 2005 and gains realized on dispositions of interests in or shares of the entity in those years.

An interest in a trust governed by an employees profit sharing plan is an interest in a flow-through entity on which a beneficiary of the trust may elect under subsection 110.6(19) and establish an exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust. Distributions of property from the trust occur on the rollover basis set out in paragraphs 144(7.1)(a) and (b) of the Act. This rollover does not permit the beneficiary to increase the cost of the property received to the extent of any unused exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust. If the beneficiary ceases to have an interest in the trust, the beneficiary's exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust is deemed to be nil for taxation years beginning after that time pursuant to subsection 39.1(7) of the Act. In such circumstances, it is possible that the beneficiary may not have depleted the exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust even though the property received from the trust had sufficient accrued gains to utilize all or a part of the undepleted exempt capital gains balance.

New paragraph 144(7.1)(c) is available to provide an addition to the cost to the beneficiary of each property determined under paragraph 144(7.1)(b). This cost inclusion is also available in taxation years ending after 2004, even though exempt capital gains balances expire for such years, in order to be consistent with the adjusted cost base increase available under paragraph 53(1)(p) of the Act in respect of interests in flow-through entities. The total amount available to be included under this new paragraph in the cost of properties received on a distribution in these circumstances is set out in the definition "the unused portion of a beneficiary's exempt capital gains balance" in respect of a trust governed by an employees profit sharing plan in subsection 144(1) of the Act. In general, this defined amount is the extent to which a beneficiary of a trust governed by an

employees profit sharing plan has not benefitted from his or her exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust at a particular time. A beneficiary under an employees profit sharing plan who receives a distribution of property, other than money, in satisfaction of all or a portion of the beneficiary's interests in the trust may file an election with Revenue Canada in respect of a particular property received to include a designated amount in the cost to the beneficiary of the property determined under paragraph 144(7.1)(b). The designated amount must not exceed the lesser of two amounts. The first amount is the unused portion of the beneficiary's exempt capital gains balance in respect of the trust minus the total of all other cost inclusions under paragraph 144(7.1)(c) in respect of a property received from the trust in the year. The second amount is the fair market value of the particular property minus the amount deemed to be the cost of the particular property under subparagraph 144(7.1)(b)(iv) of the Act. Thus the cost of a property cannot be bumped to an amount higher than its fair market value. The election in respect of a property received by the beneficiary must be filed in prescribed form by the beneficiary's filing-due date for the taxation year in which the property was received.

New paragraph 144(7.1)(c) applies to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years. A prescribed form filed under paragraph 144(7.1)(c) before the end of the sixth month after the month that the bill that includes this amendment is assented to is deemed to be filed on time.

Clause 170

Registered Retirement Savings Plans

ITA

146

Section 146 of the Act provides rules governing the treatment of registered retirement savings plans (RRSPs).

Subclause 170(1)

ITA

146(1)

"annuitant"

An amendment was made to the English version of the definition "annuitant" in the Fifth Supplement of the Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985 to make that definition gender-neutral. This amendment conforms the English version of the definition to the meaning of the expression before the Fifth Supplement changes became effective.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after November 1991, as these are the taxation years to which the amendment made to the definition "annuitant" in the Fifth Supplement applied.

Subclause 170(2)

ITA

146(1)

"benefit"

Under subsection 146(8) of the Act, amounts received by taxpayers as benefits from RRSPs are included in computing income. Under the definition of "benefit" in subsection 146(1) of the Act, certain amounts already included in computing income are not considered to be a "benefit".

The definition "benefit" is amended so that amounts received from a depositary RRSP that relate to interest or another amount that was credited or accrued after the end of the first calendar year commencing after the death of the annuitant are likewise excluded from the definition of "benefit", if such interest or other amount has been included in computing income otherwise that because of section 146 of the Act.

This amendment applies to deaths occurring after 1992.

Subclause 170(3)

ITA

146(1)

"earned income"

The expression "earned income" is relevant for the purposes of determining the maximum deduction in respect of premiums under an RRSP. New paragraph (*h*) is added to the expression as a consequence of the amendments to subparagraph 14(1)(a)(v) of the Act. Paragraph (*h*), which applies to the 1995 and subsequent taxation years, ensures that an amount determined under subparagraph 14(1)(a)(v) is not included in the determination of "earned income".

Subclause 170(4)

ITA

146(1)

"qualified investment"

The definition "qualified investment" in subsection 146(1) of the Act sets out the types of property that a trust governed by a registered retirement savings plan (RRSP) is permitted to hold. If a trust governed by an RRSP acquires or holds a property that is not a qualified investment, there are generally unfavourable tax consequences for the RRSP annuitant under subsection 146(10) of the Act or the trust under Part XI.1 of the Act.

Paragraph (*c*) of the definition provides that an annuity contract that could have been purchased directly as an RRSP by an RRSP annuitant is a qualified investment for a trust governed by an RRSP. For this paragraph to apply, it is expected that an annuity contract would specify that payments must ultimately be made directly to the RRSP annuitant and not to the trust.

Paragraph (*c*) of the definition is amended by replacing some of the existing words in the paragraph with the expression "licensed annuities provider". The latter expression is now defined in amended subsection 248(1) of the Act, as described in the commentary below. This amendment does not represent a change in policy.

New paragraph (c.1) permits another type of annuity contract to be a "qualified investment" for a trustee RRSP, provided that the annuity contract satisfies two conditions:

- the RRSP trust must be the only person that has the right to receive any annuity payments under the contract (unless the trust disposes of the annuity); and
- the annuity contract must give the holder of the contract an ongoing right to surrender the contract for an amount that, ignoring reasonable sales and administrative charges, approximates the amount that could be required to fund the future periodic payments under the contract.

Paragraph (c.1) is intended to allow an RRSP trust to hold various types of accumulation annuities and segregated fund policies. In addition, a deferred annuity under which periodic payments have begun can continue to be a "qualified investment" under paragraph (c.1), if the holder has a right to surrender the contract after the payments begin.

New paragraph (c.2) of the definition allows a third type of annuity contract to qualify as an investment for an RRSP trust, provided that the annuity meets the following six conditions:

- (1) periodic payments under the annuity contract are required to be made on an annual or more frequent basis;
- (2) the RRSP trust must be the only person that has the right to receive any annuity payments under the contract (unless the trust disposes of the annuity);
- (3) neither the time nor the amount of any payment under the contract can vary because of the length of any life, other than the life of the RRSP annuitant;
- (4) the date on which the periodic payments began or are to begin must be no later than the end of the year in which the RRSP annuitant attains 70 years of age;
- (5) the annuity contract must be either

(a) a life annuity for the life of the RRSP annuitant that does not have a guaranteed period that runs past the end of the year in which the RRSP annuitant attains 90 years of age, except that where the RRSP annuitant had a spouse at the time that the contract was acquired, the guaranteed period, if any, can run up to the end of the year in which the spouse attains 90 years of age (if that is a later year), or

(b) a term annuity with a term equal to either 90 years minus the age of the RRSP annuitant at the date on which the periodic payments start or 90 years minus the age of the RRSP annuitant's spouse as of that date; and

- (6) the periodic payments must be equal unless

(a) they have been adjusted for reasons that would, if the contract were an annuity under a retirement savings plan, be in accordance with the indexing or other options provided under subparagraphs 146(3)(b)(iii) to (v) of the Act, or

(b) they have been uniformly reduced as a consequence of a partial surrender of the right to receive periodic payments under the contract.

Paragraph (c.2) is intended to permit an RRSP trust to hold an annuity that is similar to an annuity described in paragraph (c), except that the annuity can be in pay before the RRSP's maturity date and be paid to the RRSP trust. Paragraph (c.2) does not permit an RRSP trust to hold a life annuity for the joint lives of the RRSP annuitant and the RRSP annuitant's spouse, in order to avoid possible valuation problems on the death of the RRSP annuitant.

These amendments apply after 1996. Similar amendments have also been made to the definition "qualified investment" in subsection 146.3(1) of the Act which applies with respect to registered retirement income funds.

Subclause 170(5)

ITA

146(1)

"refund of premiums"

The definition "refund of premiums" is relevant for the purposes of determining the income inclusion for a deceased RRSP annuitant on death, the amount that is included in computing an RRSP beneficiary's income and the amount that can be transferred by a beneficiary on a tax-deferred basis under paragraph 60(1) of the Act.

This definition is amended to provide that a "refund of premiums" in respect of an RRSP does not include a "tax-paid amount" in respect of the plan. As described in the commentary to that definition, a "tax-paid amount" in respect of an RRSP is an amount received in respect of RRSP income for a taxation year for which that income is not exempt from tax under Part I. Because of the existing wording in the definition "designated benefit" in subsection 146.3(1) of the Act, the amendment also applies for the purposes of the rules for RRIFs.

This amendment applies to deaths occurring after 1992.

Subclause 170(6)

ITA

146(1)

"tax-paid amount"

The definition "tax-paid amount" is added to subsection 146(1) of the Act. A "tax-paid amount" paid to a person in respect of an RRSP is, in the case of a trustee RRSP, an amount paid to the person in respect of the trust's income that is not exempt from tax under Part I because of paragraph 146(4)(c) of the Act. For this purpose RRSP income is computed without regard to subsection 104(6) of the Act. In the case of an RRSP that is a deposit, a "tax-paid amount" paid to the person in respect of the RRSP is an amount paid in respect of RRSP income that accrued or was credited after the end of the first calendar year beginning after the death of the RRSP annuitant. (Under paragraph 146(4)(c), RRSP trust income ceases to be exempt after the first calendar year that begins after the death of the RRSP

annuitant. A similar rule for depositary RRSPs is provided under subsection 146(20) of the Act.)

Under the definition "refund of premiums", a "tax-paid amount" does not qualify as a "refund of premiums". The definition is also relevant for the purposes of amended subsections 146(8.9) and 146.3(6.2) of the Act, under which the income inclusion on death for RRSP and RRIF annuitants is determined.

This amendment applies to deaths occurring after 1992. The first "tax-paid amounts" can be received beginning in 1995 in respect of post-1994 income.

Subclause 170(7)

ITA
146(8.9)

Subsection 146(8.8) of the Act generally requires an amount to be included in computing the income of an RRSP annuitant on death. The amount is equal to the fair market value of the RRSP assets at the time of death. However, subsection 146(8.9) of the Act allows a deduction in computing such income. The maximum deduction is equal to a specified fraction of total refunds of premiums in respect of the plan. To the extent that less than the maximum deduction is claimed on behalf of the deceased annuitant, RRSP amounts can be distributed on a tax-free basis to RRSP beneficiaries.

Before the existing version of subsection 146(8.9) was introduced, an offset equal to the full amount of a "refund of premiums" was available under former paragraph 146(8.8)(b) of the Act or former subsection 146(8.9) and was applied to reduce the income inclusion of the deceased annuitant. In cases where there were different classes of beneficiaries involved (e.g., a spouse and child sharing equally), this resulted in RRSP income that accrued after death and that was part of a "refund of premiums" being used inappropriately to reduce the income inclusion for the deceased annuitant.

Existing subsection 146(8.9) was designed to restrict the deduction available for the deceased in the above circumstances. The effect of subsection 146(8.9) is that the part of an RRSP "refund of premiums" that consists of post-death growth is ignored in calculating the offset

available to the deceased RRSP annuitant. The restriction is designed to have an effect only where there are two different classes of RRSP beneficiaries, referred to below as "qualifying" and "non-qualifying" beneficiaries. A qualifying beneficiary includes a spouse of the deceased RRSP annuitant who receives a "refund of premiums" (including a spouse deemed by subsection 146(8.1) of the Act to receive a "refund of premiums" through the deceased's estate). A qualifying beneficiary also includes a dependent child or grandchild of the deceased annuitant who receives a "refund of premiums" or is deemed by subsection 146(8.1) to receive a "refund of premiums". A non-qualifying beneficiary is any other RRSP beneficiary, including the estate of the deceased annuitant to the extent that amounts received by the estate are not deemed by subsection 146(8.1) to be refunds of premiums.

The description of A in subsection 146(8.9) is amended so that the deduction under subsection 146(8.9) is based not only on refunds of premiums (including deemed refunds of premiums under subsection 146(8.1)), but also amounts that would have been refund of premiums (or could have been deemed refunds of premiums under subsection 146(8.1)) if it were not for the exclusion of "tax-paid amounts" from the determination of refunds of premiums. As described in the commentary on "refund of premiums" and "tax-paid amount", a tax-paid amount in respect of an RRSP is an amount received in respect of RRSP income for a taxation year for which that income is not exempt from tax under Part I.

This amendment applies to deaths occurring after 1992. The following examples illustrate the application of subsection 146(8.9).

EXAMPLE 1

Mary died in 1993. Her unmatured trustee RRSP at the time of her death was \$100,000. It was worth \$120,000 on January 1, 1995 and \$125,000 at the time of its distribution in July 1996. Mary's widower John received the entire distribution.

Results:

1. Mary's legal representatives are entitled to an offset of \$100,000 against the income inclusion otherwise arising for Mary

under subsection 146(8.8). Assuming the full offset is claimed, the income inclusion for John is equal to \$125,000, of which \$120,000 counts as a "refund of premiums" because the \$5,000 paid out in respect of growth after 1995 is a "tax-paid amount". John is entitled to claim a deduction of \$120,000 if it is transferred on a tax-deferred basis under paragraph 60(1).

2. More specifically, Mary's \$100,000 offset under subsection 146(8.9) is determined as follows. First, add the amount of the "refund of premiums" (\$120,000) paid to John and the "tax-paid amounts" ((\$5,000) paid to John. This total is multiplied by a fraction (4/5), which is derived from the formula $(1 - (B + C - D)/(B + C))$ contained in subsection 146(8.9). In this example, the values of the variables in this formula are:

- *B* is nil, as it will be in every case where nothing remains in an RRSP after the distribution of a "refund of premiums";
- *C* is equal to \$125,000, representing the total RRSP distributions; and
- *D* is \$100,000, representing the RRSP value at the time of death.

EXAMPLE 2

Same as example 1, except that \$70,000 was distributed to John and \$55,000 was distributed to Mary's daughter, Karen.

Results:

1. John is a 56-per-cent beneficiary and Karen is a 44-per-cent beneficiary of Mary's RRSP. Consequently, the "tax-paid amount" for John is equal to \$2,800 (56 per cent of \$5,000) and the remaining \$67,200 received by John counts as a "refund of premiums" that can be transferred by John under paragraph 60(1) of the Act.

2. Mary's legal representatives are entitled to offset \$56,000 against the \$100,000 income inclusion otherwise arising for Mary under subsection 146(8.8). This offset is determined by multiplying

the distributions made to John (\$70,000) by the specified fraction (4/5), which is calculated in the same way as in Example 1.

3. Assuming the entire \$56,000 offset is claimed by Mary's legal representatives, the income inclusion for Mary is equal to \$44,000 (\$100,000 – \$56,000). As a consequence, Karen receives \$44,000 of her \$55,000 RRSP distribution on a tax-free basis, because the \$44,000 received by Karen is not an RRSP "benefit" as defined in subsection 146(1) of the Act.

4. In summary, \$44,000 of the total \$125,000 RRSP value at the time of distribution is included in computing Mary's income, \$11,000 is included in computing Karen's income and the remaining \$70,000 is included in computing John's income (\$67,200 of which he can transfer on a tax-deferred basis under paragraph 60(1)).

Subclause 170(8)

Life Insurance Policies – Annuity Contracts

ITA

146(11.1)

Provisions incorporated by reference in subsection 146(11) of the Act deem the acquisition of a life insurance policy by an RRSP trust not to be the acquisition of a "non-qualified investment" in certain cases. When subsection 146(11) was enacted, the Act did not define the term "life insurance policy" and the term took its ordinary meaning, which did not include an annuity contract. However, the term "life insurance policy" was subsequently defined in subsections 138(12) and 248(1) of the Act to include an annuity contract and no consequential amendment was made to subsection 146(11). Accordingly, subsection 146(11) may permit an RRSP trust to acquire and hold an annuity contract in some cases.

Subsection 146(11.1) of the Act is introduced to provide that subsection 146(11) does not apply to annuity contracts issued after 1997. Instead, paragraph (c) and new paragraphs (c.1) and (c.2) of the definition "qualified investment" in subsection 146(1) expressly set out the types of annuity contracts which are qualified investments for trusted RRSPs.

Clause 171

Registered Retirement Income Funds

ITA

146.3

Section 146.3 of the Act contains the rules governing registered retirement income funds (RRIFs).

Subclause 171(2)

ITA

146.3(1)

Subsection 146.3(1) of the Act defines a number of terms for the purposes of the rules governing registered retirement income funds (RRIFs) in section 146.3.

"minimum amount"

Each year, the carrier of a retirement income fund must generally pay to the annuitant not less than a prescribed fraction of the fair market value of the property held in connection with the fund at the beginning of the year. The required payment is determined under the definition "minimum amount". The fraction is prescribed in section 7308 of the *Income Tax Regulations*.

The amendments to the definition "minimum amount" are largely consequential on new paragraphs (b.1) and (b.2) of the definition "qualified investment". As described below, these paragraphs permit a trustee RRIF to hold certain types of annuity contracts. For convenience, an annuity described in new paragraph (b.2) (other than a commutable annuity described in new paragraph (b.1)) is referred to below as a "locked-in annuity".

As a consequence of these amendments, the "minimum amount" for the year under an RRIF is now the total of:

- the prescribed fraction for the year multiplied by the total fair market value of properties (other than locked-in annuities) held in connection with the fund at the beginning of the year, and
- the total of all amounts each of which is either a periodic payment received by the trust in the year under a locked-in annuity or an estimate of a periodic payment the trust would have received under a locked-in annuity held at the start of the year if it had not disposed of the right to the payment during the year.

These amendments avoid the difficulty of determining the fair market value of a locked-in annuity each year and make it practical for a minimum amount to be calculated and distributed where a locked-in annuity is held by an RRIF trust. If an RRIF trust holds only locked-in annuities at the beginning of a year, the minimum amount for the year under the RRIF will never exceed the annuity payments received by the trust in that year.

These amendments also ensure that the carrier of an RRIF will not have to pay out any more in a given year with respect to a locked-in annuity than would be paid under an RRSP annuity acquired to provide a retirement income on the maturity of an RRSP. This is appropriate, given that locked-in annuities are very similar to the types of annuities that can be acquired to provide a retirement income on the maturity of an RRSP.

The definition of "minimum amount" is also amended so that the prescribed fraction, referred to above, is referred to in the definition as a prescribed factor, rather than a prescribed amount. This change has been made for technical clarity, as the expression "amount" in the Act is generally reserved for amounts of a monetary nature. Corresponding changes to section 7308 of the Regulations will be made to reflect this amendment.

As a consequence of these amendments, it is also proposed to amend paragraph (j.1) of the definition of "remuneration" in subsection 100(1) of the *Income Tax Regulations* to ensure that an exemption from withholding on account of Part I tax applies in connection with distributions in a year from an RRIF that would be in respect of the minimum amount under the fund for the year if an assumption were made. The assumption is that each payment, scheduled at the beginning of the year to be paid after the time of the

RRIF distribution and in the year into the fund under an annuity contract held in connection with the fund at the beginning of the year, is paid into the fund in the year.

These amendments generally apply to the 1998 and subsequent taxation years. However, the application of the amendment is subject to grandfathering that preserves some existing grandfathering that applies to certain pre-March 1986 plans.

Subclause 171(2)

"qualified investment"

The definition of "qualified investment" in subsection 146.3(1) of the Act sets out the types of property that a trust governed by an RRIF is permitted to hold. If a trust governed by an RRIF acquires or holds a property that is not a "qualified investment", there are generally unfavourable tax consequences for the RRIF annuitant under subsection 146.3(7) of the Act or the trust under Part XI.1 of the Act. Under the existing rules, an annuity contract is not a qualified investment for a trust governed by an RRIF.

Paragraphs (b.1) and (b.2) of the definition are added, effective after 1996, so that an RRIF trust can hold certain types of annuity contracts as qualified investments.

New paragraph (b.1) permits a trust governed by an RRIF to hold one type of annuity. The conditions that an annuity must satisfy to qualify under paragraph (b.1) are identical to the conditions that an annuity must satisfy under the new RRSP rules for qualified investments, described in the commentary on those provisions. Accordingly, where on maturity a trustee RRSP holds such an annuity, it will be possible to transfer the annuity to an RRIF trust instead of disposing of it. An RRIF trust could also acquire such an annuity directly from an insurer.

New paragraph (b.2) permits an RRIF trust to hold a second type of annuity without penalty where the annuity satisfies six conditions:

- (1) periodic payments under the annuity contract are required to be made on an annual or more frequent basis;

- (2) the RRIF trust must be the only person that has the right to receive any annuity payments under the contract (unless the trust disposes of the annuity);
- (3) neither the time nor the amount of any payment under the contract can vary because of the length of any life, other than the life of the RRIF annuitant, except that where the annuitant under the fund has elected to have the carrier pay the minimum amount each year to the annuitant's spouse after the annuitant's death, the payments under the contract can be based on the joint lives of the annuitant and the annuitant's spouse;
- (4) the date on which the periodic payments began or are to begin must be no later than the end of the year following the year in which the contract was acquired by the trust;
- (5) the annuity contract must be either
 - (a) a life annuity for the life of the RRIF annuitant or, where the RRIF annuitant had a spouse when the contract was acquired, for the joint lives of the RRIF annuitant and the RRIF annuitant's spouse, that does not have a guaranteed period that runs past the end of the year in which the RRIF annuitant attains 90 years of age, except that where the RRIF annuitant had a spouse at the time that the contract was acquired, the guaranteed period, if any, can run up to the end of the year in which the spouse attains 90 years of age (if it is a later year), or
 - (b) a term annuity with a term equal to either 90 years minus the age of the RRIF annuitant at the date on which the periodic payments start or 90 years minus the age of the RRIF annuitant's spouse as of that date; and
- (6) the periodic payments must be equal unless
 - (a) they have been adjusted for reasons that would, if the contract were an annuity under a retirement savings plan, be in accordance with the indexing or other options provided under subparagraphs 146(3)(b)(iii) to (v) of the Act, or

(b) they have been uniformly reduced as a consequence of a partial surrender of the right to receive periodic payments under the contract.

New paragraph (c.2) of the definition "qualified investment" in subsection 146(1) is very similar to new paragraph (b.2) of the definition "qualified investment" in subsection 146.3(1). An annuity that qualifies under paragraph (c.2) will generally qualify under the RRIF rules, thus making it possible to transfer such an annuity to an RRIF on the maturity of the RRSP that holds it.

Subclause 171(3)

ITA

146.3(2)(a)

Subsection 146.3(2) of the Act sets out the conditions that must be satisfied in order to register a retirement income fund.

Paragraph 146.3(2)(a) of the Act describes the payments that may be made out of a RRIF.

When the Statute Revision Commission revised the Act in the Fifth Supplement of the Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985, the reference in paragraph 146.3(2)(a) to paragraph (1)(f), which defined the term "retirement income fund", was erroneously replaced with the term "retirement income" in the English version of the Act. This amendment corrects that error by adding the word "fund" to the term "retirement income". The amendment applies to taxation years that end after November 1991, as these are the taxation years to which the amendment which gave rise to the error applied.

Subclauses 171(4) to (6)

Registration

ITA

146.3(2)(e) to (e.2)

Subsection 146.3(2) of the Act sets out the conditions that a retirement income fund must meet before Revenue Canada will register the fund.

Paragraph 146.3(2)(e) of the Act sets out one condition for registration — that the arrangement between the carrier and the RRIF annuitant give the RRIF annuitant the right to direct the carrier to transfer the property held in connection with the fund to another carrier. However, this condition is subject to paragraph 146.3(2)(e.1) of the Act under which the carrier must retain sufficient property to enable it to pay the "minimum amount" for the year to the annuitant. If this requirement were not imposed, the minimum amount might not be paid in the year of transfer as the original carrier would have no property with which to pay it and the minimum amount for that year in respect of the transferee fund could be nil because the minimum amount is based on the fair market value of the property held by a carrier at the beginning of a year.

Paragraph 146.3(2)(e) is amended to make the RRIF annuitant's right to demand a transfer of the property held in connection with the fund subject to either paragraph 146.3(2)(e.1) or new paragraph 146.3(2)(e.2) of the Act, depending on the circumstances.

Paragraph 146.3(2)(e) is also amended to remove the requirement that the transfer be made in prescribed form and manner. This amendment, which applies to all retirement income funds, is consistent with other types of transfers between registered plans.

Paragraph 146.3(2)(e.1) is amended so that it applies to an RRIF that governs a trust only if the trust was created before 1998 and the trust does not hold an annuity contract as a qualified investment. In any other case where an RRIF governs a trust, new paragraph 146.3(2)(e.2) applies.

Like paragraph 146.3(2)(e.1), new paragraph 146.3(2)(e.2) essentially requires the carrier to retain sufficient property to enable it to pay the "minimum amount" for the year to the annuitant after the transfer. However, paragraph 146.3(2)(e.2) provides special rules dealing with the holding of annuity contracts as qualified investments. While annuities that can be surrendered for cash are treated in the same manner as other RRIF property, in the case of other annuities, the "fair market value" of the retained annuity is ignored. Instead, only the annuity payments estimated to be made after the transfer and in the year of the transfer will effectively be considered to have been retained by the RRIF trust for the purposes of new paragraph 146.3(2)(e.2).

These amendments apply to retirement income funds entered into after July 13, 1990, which is the date on which the withholding requirement under paragraph 146.3(2)(e) first applied. However, the amendment to paragraph 146.3(2)(e) removing the requirement that transfers be made in prescribed form and manner applies to all retirement income funds.

Subclause 171(7)

ITA

146.3(5)

Under subsection 146.3(5) of the Act, amounts received by taxpayers from RRIFs are included in computing income, other than certain amounts already included in computing income.

Subsection 146.3(5) is amended so that amounts received from a depositary RRIF that relate to interest or another amount that accrued after the end of the first calendar year commencing after the death of the annuitant are likewise not included in computing income under subsection 146.3(5), if such interest or other amount has been included in computing income otherwise than because of section 146.3 of the Act.

This amendment applies to deaths occurring after 1992.

Subclause 171(8)

ITA

146.3(6.2)

Subsection 146.3(6) of the Act generally requires an amount to be included in computing the income of the last annuitant under a RRIF on death. The amount is equal to the fair market value of the RRIF assets at the time of death. However, subsection 146.3(6.2) of the Act allows a deduction in computing such income. The maximum deduction is equal to a specified percentage of total "designated benefits" in respect of the fund. To the extent that less than the maximum deduction is claimed on behalf of the deceased annuitant, RRIF amounts can be distributed on a tax-free basis to RRIF beneficiaries. As defined in subsection 146.3(1) of the Act, "designated benefits" in respect of a RRIF are essentially amounts

that would be "refunds of premiums" (or could be deemed to be "refunds of premiums" under subsection 146(8.1) of the Act) if the RRIF were an RRSP.

The description of A in subsection 146.3(6.2) is amended so that the deduction under subsection 146.3(6.2) in respect of a RRIF's assets is based not only on designated benefits, but also on amounts that would be excluded from the definition of "designated benefits" because they would be "tax-paid amounts" if the RRIF were an RRSP. As described in the commentary on "refund of premiums" and "tax-paid amount", a "tax-paid amount" in respect of an RRSP is an amount included in income in respect of RRSP income for a taxation year for which the RRSP income is not exempt from tax under Part I. For further discussion, see the commentary on the amendment to subsection 146(8.9) of the Act.

This amendment applies to deaths occurring after 1992.

Clause 172

Deferred Profit Sharing Plans

ITA

147(19)

Section 147 of the Act contains the rules governing deferred profit sharing plans (DPSPs). Subsection 147(19) of the Act provides for direct transfers of lump sum amounts between DPSPs and to DPSPs from other deferred income plans.

Subparagraph 147(19)(b)(ii) of the Act refers to "a spouse (within the meaning assigned by subsection 146(1.1))" of the Act. That subsection, which described spouses so as to include common-law spouses, was repealed with the enactment of subsection 252(4) of the Act, which also describes spouses so as to include common law spouses for the purposes of the Act. This amendment to subparagraph 147(19)(b)(ii), which applies after 1992, therefore deletes the reference to subsection 146(1.1) of the Act.

Clause 173

Registered Pension Plans – Deemed RPP Registration

ITA

147.1(3)(a)

Paragraph 147.1(3)(a) of the Act deems a pension plan that has been submitted to Revenue Canada for registration to be a registered pension plan until a final determination is made as to the plan's registration. However, it specifically provides that the deemed registered status of a pension plan does not apply for the purposes of certain provisions of the Act that would otherwise allow the tax-free transfer of funds to be made from the plan.

Paragraph 147.1(3)(a) of the Act is amended to provide that it also does not apply for the purposes of new section 147.4 of the Act. In general terms, that section allows an individual to acquire ownership of an annuity contract, in satisfaction of the individual's entitlement to benefits under a registered pension plan, without adverse tax consequences provided certain conditions are satisfied. Thus, an individual cannot acquire ownership of an annuity contract under a pension plan on a tax-neutral basis until the plan is actually registered.

This amendment applies after 1996.

Clause 174

Registered Pension Plans – Deductibility of Contributions

ITA

147.2

Section 147.2 of the Act provides rules that govern the deductibility of employer and employee contributions to registered pension plans (RPPs).

Subclause 174(1)

ITA

147.2(2)(b)

Subsection 147.2(2) of the Act defines "eligible contributions" for the purpose of subsection 147.2(1) of the Act, which provides for the deduction of employer contributions to RPPs. Under subsection 147.2(2), an employer contribution to a defined benefit provision of an RPP is an eligible contribution where the contribution is made pursuant to the recommendation of an actuary, in whose opinion the contribution is required to fund the benefits provided under the provision, and the recommendation is approved by the Minister of National Revenue on the advice of the Superintendent of Financial Institutions.

Paragraph 147.2(2)(b) of the Act is amended to delete the requirement that the Minister obtain the advice of the Superintendent in order to approve an actuarial recommendation. This amendment, which applies after March 1996, is consequential on the transfer of the Pension Advice Section of the Office of the Superintendent of Financial Institutions to the Department of National Revenue.

Subclause 174(2)

ITA

147.2(4)(b)(iii)

Paragraph 147.2(4)(b) of the Act allows an individual to deduct past service contributions made to an RPP in respect of pre-1990 service when the individual was not an RPP contributor. The amount that may be deducted is subject to a cumulative limit imposed by subparagraph 147.2(4)(b)(iii) of the Act. For the purpose of calculating the limit, past service additional voluntary contributions (AVCs) deducted under subparagraph 8(1)(m)(ii) of the Act are included in the amount Z in the formula in subparagraph 147.2(4)(b)(iii).

The description of Z is amended to refer to past service AVCs that were deducted in computing income for taxation years before 1987, and to refer to subparagraph 8(1)(m)(ii) as it read in the year in which the deductions were claimed. This amendment is made because

subparagraph 8(1)(m)(ii) did not permit the deduction of past service AVCs after the 1986 taxation year.

This amendment applies to the 1991 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 174(3)

Deductible Contributions

ITA

147.2(6)

Paragraphs 147.2(4)(b) and (c) of the Act allow a taxpayer to deduct, within limits, contributions made to an RPP in respect of service before 1990.

Paragraph 147.2(4)(b) allows a taxpayer to deduct contributions in respect of pre-1990 service during which the taxpayer was not a contributor to an RPP. It limits the deduction in any given year to \$3,500, and limits the cumulative amount that can be deducted to \$3,500 times the number of years of such service.

Paragraph 147.2(4)(c) allows a taxpayer to deduct contributions in respect of pre-1990 service during which the taxpayer was an RPP contributor. It limits the deduction in any given year to \$3,500 minus other RPP contributions deducted in the year, but imposes no cumulative limit on the amount that can be deducted.

Both paragraphs allow contributions that are not deducted in one year to be carried forward and deducted in a subsequent year, subject to the relevant limits.

New subsection 147.2(6) of the Act modifies paragraphs 147.2(4)(b) and (c) for the year in which a taxpayer dies and for the preceding year. It provides that, in determining the amounts that can be deducted under those paragraphs for those years, the \$3,500 annual limits are disregarded. Subsection 147.2(6) does not change the cumulative limit on deductions under paragraph 147.2(4)(b).

This amendment, which applies to taxpayers who die after 1992, ensures that RPP contributions which a taxpayer was unable to deduct

prior to death – because of the \$3,500 annual limits – can generally be deducted on death.

Clause 175

Registered Pension Plans – Transfers

ITA

147.3

Section 147.3 of the Act provides rules governing the transfer of funds from registered pension plans (RPPs) to registered retirement savings plans (RRSPs), registered retirement income funds (RRIFs) and other RPPs.

Subclause 175(1)

Taxation of Amount Transferred

ITA

147.3(10)(a)

Subsection 147.3(10) of the Act provides rules that apply where an amount is transferred on behalf of an individual from an RPP to an RRSP, a RRIF or another RPP otherwise than in accordance with subsections 147.3(1) to (7) of the Act. In these circumstances, paragraph 147.3(10)(a) of the Act deems the amount to have been paid from the RPP directly to the individual, as a result of which it is included in the individual's income under paragraph 56(1)(a) of the Act. Paragraph 147.3(10)(a) specifically provides that it applies notwithstanding section 254 of the Act which, under certain circumstances, may have applied to exempt the amount from immediate taxation.

Paragraph 147.3(10)(a) is amended to delete the reference to section 254. This amendment is consequential on the introduction of new section 147.4 of the Act and the amendments to section 254. For further details, see the commentary on those provisions.

This amendment applies to transfers occurring on or after July 31, 1997.

Subclause 175(2)**Annuity Contract Commencing After Age 69**

ITA

147.3(15)

Subsection 147.3(15) of the Act contains rules relating to annuities acquired by individuals before 1997 to provide benefits in lieu of their entitlement to benefits under an RPP. The rules apply in the event that payment of the annuity does not begin by the end of the year in which the individual turns 69 years of age. As a consequence of the introduction of section 147.4 of the Act, which contains other provisions dealing with individually-owned annuity contracts, subsection 147.3(15) is renumbered as subsection 147.4(4) of the Act.

This amendment applies from the time of the introduction of subsection 147.3(15) (after 1996).

Clause 176**RPP Annuity Contracts**

ITA

147.4

Section 147.4 of the Act provides a new set of rules that deal primarily with individuals acquiring ownership of annuity contracts in satisfaction of their entitlement to benefits under an RPP.

Subsection 147.4(1) of the act replaces, in modified form, the mechanism provided under paragraph 254(a) of the Act for individuals to acquire annuities under superannuation or pension funds or plans without adverse consequences. It restricts the application of the relief previously afforded by paragraph 254(a) to annuities acquired under RPPs.

Subsections 147.4(2) and (3) of the Act provide rules that apply where an annuity contract to which subsection 147.4(1) or paragraph 254(a) applies is amended or replaced.

Subsection 147.4(4) of the Act is simply a renumbering of existing subsection 147.3(15).

Subclause 176(1)

RPP Annuity Contract

ITA

147.4(1)

Subsection 147.4(1) of the Act applies where an individual acquires ownership of an annuity contract in satisfaction of the individual's entitlement to benefits under an RPP. This might occur, for example, where a plan discharges its benefit obligations with respect to an individual either by transferring ownership of an existing annuity contract held in connection with the plan to the individual or by purchasing an annuity contract under which the individual is both the annuitant and the owner. Under these circumstances, the individual is deemed not to have received an amount from the RPP as a result of acquiring the annuity and any amounts received under the contract are deemed to be amounts received under the RPP. As a consequence, there is no immediate taxation on acquisition of the annuity and any payments under the contract are included in the recipient's income in the year in which they are received.

Subsection 147.4(1) provides that these deeming rules apply with respect to the acquisition of an RPP annuity contract only if the following conditions are met:

- the rights provided for under the contract are not materially different from those provided for under the RPP;
- the contract does not provide for any further premiums to be paid after it is acquired by the individual; and
- at the time of acquisition, the registration of the plan is not revocable. However, under subsection 147.4(1), the Minister of National Revenue has the authority to ignore the fact that the registration of the plan is revocable. It is generally expected that the Minister would do so where there is no connection between the cause of the plan being revocable and the benefits being provided by way of the annuity.

Also, subsection 147.4(1) provides that the deeming rules do not apply where an individual acquires an interest in an annuity contract by way of a transfer to an RRSP or RRIF. In such cases, the rules governing inter-plan transfers in section 147.3 of the Act apply.

Subsection 147.4(1) is intended to protect annuity acquisitions only where the rights provided for under the annuity contract are the same as the rights provided for under the RPP (ignoring any immaterial differences). It is not intended to allow a plan member to reconfigure the amount or modify the form of the benefits provided for under the plan. Plan members who want such flexibility can achieve this by transferring the value of their pension entitlements to an RRSP or RRIF (within the constraints of section 147.3 of the Act).

Where an individual acquires ownership of an annuity contract under an RPP otherwise than in accordance with subsection 147.4(1), the individual is considered to have received a payment in kind from the RPP and is required to include the value of the contract in income under paragraph 56(1)(a) of the Act.

Subsection 147.4(1) applies to contract acquisitions occurring on or after July 31, 1997.

The following are examples of RPP annuity acquisitions that do not satisfy the conditions for the deeming rules in subsection 147.4(1) to apply.

EXAMPLE 1

On retirement, Catherine, a member of a defined benefit RPP is entitled to an indexed pension of \$20,000 per year. Under the terms of the plan, Catherine is given the option of either transferring the value of her benefits to a locked-in RRSP (subject to the transfer limits) or acquiring from a life insurance company an indexed annuity of \$20,000 per year. Catherine elects the annuity option, but foregoes the indexing in exchange for additional lifetime annuity payments of \$5,000 per year (an option that was not provided for under the plan). Subsection 147.4(1) does not protect the acquisition of the annuity contract since it provides for rights that are materially different from those provided for under the RPP.

It should be noted that, had the plan allowed Catherine to give up indexing in exchange for higher lifetime retirement benefits, Catherine's pension adjustments under the plan would have been calculated based on those higher lifetime retirement benefits.

EXAMPLE 2

A money purchase RPP has not been amended to reduce the latest time for a member's pension to commence from the end of the year in which the member turns 71 years of age to the end of the year in which the member turns 69 years of age. At retirement, a 65 year old member, David, acquires ownership of an annuity contract that provides for commencement at age 71. Since the plan is revocable for failing to comply with the registration requirements for pension commencement, David's acquisition of the annuity is not protected by subsection 147.4(1). This is not a situation in which Revenue Canada would be expected to ignore the fact that the registration of the plan is revocable.

Amended Contract

ITA

147.4(2)

New subsection 147.4(2) of the Act contains rules relating to amendments to annuity contracts to which subsection 147.4(1) of the Act or paragraph 254(a) of the Act applies. The rules apply if the rights provided for under the contract are materially altered as a consequence of the amendment. In such a case, an individual with an interest in the contract immediately before the amendment is deemed to have received an amount from a pension plan equal to the fair market value of that interest. By virtue of paragraph 56(1)(a) of the Act, the individual is required to include this amount in income.

Subsection 147.4(2) also deems the amended contract to be a separate annuity contract. Consequently, paragraph 147.4(1)(g) or 254(a) cease to apply to payments made under the contract. The contract is also deemed not to have been issued pursuant to or under a superannuation or pension fund or plan. This ensures that the amended contract is not a prescribed annuity contract by virtue of paragraph 304(1)(a) of the *Income Tax Regulations* and may thus be subject to the accrual rules in section 12.2 of the Act. Finally, an

individual with an interest in the amended contract is deemed to have acquired the interest at the time of the amendment at a cost equal to the fair market value of that interest immediately after the amendment. This establishes the date of acquisition and the adjusted cost basis for purposes of the accrual rules.

Subsection 147.4(2) does not apply where an annuity contract is amended to provide for an earlier annuity commencement date in order to avoid the application of subsection 147.4(4) of the Act.

Subsection 147.4(2) applies to contract amendments occurring on or after July 31, 1997.

New Contract

ITA 147.4(3)

New subsection 147.4(3) of the Act contains rules relating to annuity contracts that replace contracts to which subsection 147.4(1) or paragraph 254(a) of the Act applies. As long as the rights provided for under the new contract are not materially different from those provided for under the original contract, the new contract is considered to be the same contract as the original contract. As a result, any annuity payments received under the new contract will be treated as superannuation or pension benefits by virtue of paragraph 147.4(1)(g) or 254(a) of the Act.

However, where the rights are materially different, an individual with an interest in the original contract is deemed to have received an amount from a pension plan equal to the fair market value of that interest. By virtue of paragraph 56(1)(a) of the Act, the individual is required to include this amount in income. Since the replacement contract is a new contract, neither subsection 147.4(1) nor paragraph 254(a) applies with respect to annuity payments received under the contract. As a result, the new contract is subject to the tax treatment that would normally apply to an annuity contract that is not issued pursuant to a pension plan.

New subsection 147.4(3) applies to contract replacements occurring on or after July 31, 1997.

Annuity Contract Commencing After Age 69

ITA

147.4(4)

Subsection 147.3(15) of the Act is renumbered as subsection 147.4(4) of the Act. Subsection 147.3(15) deals with individually-owned RPP annuity contracts that were acquired before 1997 and under which payments do not begin by the end of the year in which the individual turns 69 years of age. This renumbering is consequential on the introduction of section 147.4 of the Act.

Clause 177**Eligible Funeral Arrangements**

ITA

148.1

Section 148.1 of the Act, in conjunction with paragraph 149(1)(s.1) of the Act provides for the tax-free build-up of income earned on contributions made under an "eligible funeral arrangement". The contribution limit under the existing law is \$15,000 per arrangement.

Subclauses 177(1) to (5)

ITA

148.1(1) and (2)

The expression "cemetery care trust" is introduced in subsection 148.1(1) of the Act. It is defined as a trust established pursuant to an Act of a province for the care and maintenance of a cemetery. (Such trusts are sometimes known as perpetual care funds.) New paragraph 149(1)(s.2) of the Act ensures that income earned in a cemetery care trust is expressly exempt from taxation. However, under the definition "eligible funeral arrangement", contributions to such trusts are relevant for the purposes of determining whether an arrangement with a cemetery operator is considered to be an "eligible funeral arrangement". If an arrangement with a cemetery operator is not an "eligible funeral arrangement", any

income earned under a pre-needs cemetery contract that is part of such an arrangement would be subject to taxation.

The definition "eligible funeral arrangement" is amended so that the contribution limit for an arrangement that only covers "cemetery services" is \$20,000, rather than \$15,000. "Cemetery services" is defined as property and services that relate directly to cemetery arrangements in Canada, including property and services to be funded out of a cemetery care trust. (However, the postamble to the definition "eligible funeral arrangement" ensures that payments made for the immediate acquisition of burial rights or of any interest in a building or structure for the placement of human remains is ignored for the purposes of the contribution limit, to the extent that such payments are not applied as a contribution to a cemetery care trust.)

The definition "eligible funeral arrangement" is also amended so that the contribution limit for an arrangement that combines funeral and cemetery arrangements is \$35,000. This amendment is necessary because, in some provinces, funeral and cemetery services can be provided by the same operator.

The definition "funeral services" is amended so that "cemetery services" are no longer included within the definition. The existing definition "funeral services" is effectively replaced within subsections 148.1(1) and (2) of the Act by the new definition "funeral or cemetery services", which is defined as "funeral services" or "cemetery services" with respect to an individual, or any combination of such services. The definitions "custodian", "qualifying person" and "relevant contribution" in subsection 148.1(1) are also amended, strictly as a consequence of the new definition "funeral or cemetery services".

These amendments apply to the 1993 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 177(6)**Income Inclusion on Return of Funds**

ITA

148.1(3)

Subsection 148.1(3) of the Act provides for an income inclusion in the event that there is return of funds from an eligible funeral arrangement. It is amended so that, for this purpose, any transactions with, or balances under, a cemetery care trust are ignored. As cemetery care trusts are irrevocable under provincial law, it is not necessary that growth under such trusts be considered for the purposes of this subsection.

This amendment applies to the 1993 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 178**Exemptions from Tax**

ITA

149

Section 149 of the Act exempts certain taxpayers from tax under Part I of the Act and provides special rules for such taxpayers.

Subclause 178(1)

ITA

149(1)(d) to (d.5)

Paragraph 149(1)(d) of the existing Act exempts from tax the taxable income of any corporation, commission or association at least 90 per cent of the shares or capital of which is owned by the federal government, a provincial government or a Canadian municipality. This exemption also applies to a wholly-owned subsidiary of such a corporation, commission or association.

The amendment to paragraph 149(1)(d) and new paragraphs 149(1)(d.1) to (d.5) of the Act clarify the scope of the

exemption in various situations where an entity or a combination of entities owns either 100 per cent or at least 90 per cent of the shares or capital of a corporation, commission or association.

Revised paragraph 149(1)(d) exempts from tax under Part I a corporation, commission or association if 100 per cent of its shares or capital are owned by Her Majesty in right of Canada or a province.

New paragraph 149(1)(d.1) provides a similar exemption where at least 90 per cent of the shares or capital of the corporation, commission or association are owned by Her Majesty in right of Canada or of a province.

New paragraph 149(1)(d.2) exempts from tax under Part I a wholly-owned corporation subsidiary to a corporation, commission or association all of the shares or of the capital of which is owned by Her Majesty in right of Canada or a province, as well as any wholly-owned corporation that is subsidiary to such a wholly-owned subsidiary.

New paragraph 149(1)(d.3) exempts from tax under Part I a corporation, commission or association if not less than 90 per cent of its shares or capital are owned by Her Majesty in right of Canada or a province, a corporation, commission or association that is tax-exempt under paragraph 149(1)(d), a wholly-owned corporation subsidiary to such corporation, commission or association or by one or more municipalities in combination with any such entity.

New paragraph 149(1)(d.4) exempts from tax under Part I a corporation the shares or capital of which are owned by a corporation, commission or association that is, itself, exempt under any of paragraphs 149(1)(d) to (d.3) or a corporation to which new paragraph 149(1)(d.4) already applies.

New paragraph 149(1)(d.5) includes a geographical restriction to ensure that the tax exemption for a municipal subsidiary corporation applies only where no more than 10 per cent of its income is earned from activities carried on outside the geographical boundaries of the municipalities owning the shares or capital of the corporation. Finally, the requirement in paragraph 149(1)(d) that no person other than a government or municipality may have a right to acquire shares

or capital of an otherwise eligible corporation, commission or association is moved to new subsection 149(1.1).

Subclause 178(2)

Pension Corporations

ITA

149(1)(o.1)

Paragraph 149(1)(o.1) of the Act provides an exemption from tax under Part I of the Act for corporations incorporated and operated solely for the administration of a registered pension plan, where the corporation has been accepted by the Minister of National Revenue as a funding medium for the purposes of the registration of a pension plan.

Paragraph 149(1)(o.1) is amended, applicable to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years, to provide that such corporations may also act as trustees and administrators of trusts governed by retirement compensation arrangements, where those arrangements provide for benefits supplementary to those provided under the registered pension plan.

Subclause 178(3)

Cemetery Care Trust

ITA

149(1)(s.2)

New paragraph 149(1)(s.2) of the Act provides that a "cemetery care trust", as defined by subsection 148.1(1) of the Act, is exempt from tax under Part I of the Act on its taxable income. For further detail, see the commentary on subsection 148.1(1).

This amendment applies to the 1993 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 178(4)

ITA

149(1.1) to (1.3)

New subsection 149(1.1) of the Act is consequential on the amendments to paragraph 149(1)(d) of the Act and the introduction of paragraphs 149(1)(d.1) to (d.5) of the Act. It contains the requirement that, in order for a corporation, commission or association to benefit from the exemption provided under any of those provisions, only the federal government, a province or a municipality can have the right to acquire shares or capital of the corporation, commission or association.

New subsection 149(1.2) of the Act is consequential on the introduction of new paragraph 149(1)(d.5). It excludes certain income from the determination of whether more than 10 per cent of the income of a corporation, commission or association to which that paragraph applies is derived from activities carried on outside the geographical boundaries of the municipality or municipalities that own the corporation, commission or association. Specifically, income derived from activities carried on pursuant to an agreement in writing with Canada, a province, or a municipality, within its geographical boundaries, are not included in the determination.

New subsection 149(1.3) of the Act provides that, for the purposes of new paragraph 149(1)(d.5) and subsection (1.2), 90 per cent of the capital of a corporation is to be considered to be owned by a person only if that person is entitled to at least 90 per cent of the votes associated with the shares of the corporation.

All these amendments apply to taxation years and fiscal periods commencing after 1997.

Subclauses 178(5) and (6)

ITA

149(10)

Subsection 149(10) of the Act sets out the tax treatment of a corporation that either becomes or ceases to be exempt from tax under Part I of the Act (otherwise than because of paragraph 149(1)(i)

of the Act, which exempts certain farmers' and fishers' insurers). In broad terms, subsection 149(10) provides for:

- a taxation year-end;
- the mandatory deduction of available reserves;
- the fair market value disposition and reacquisition of the corporation's property;
- the preservation of latent recapture on depreciable property; and
- a limitation on loss carry-forwards.

The principle underlying subsection 149(10) is that where a corporation's tax status changes, it ought to be treated more or less as though it had begun a new existence. This amendment applies that "fresh start" principle more comprehensively, drawing a clearer line between a corporation's tax position before it becomes or ceases to be exempt, and its position once that has happened. This is accomplished chiefly by broadening the deemed disposition and reacquisition rule in paragraph 149(10)(b) of the Act and by substantially reworking the portion of the subsection that follows that paragraph.

Paragraph 149(10)(a) of the Act is amended to allow a corporation that becomes or ceases to be tax-exempt to establish a new fiscal period for taxation years that begin after that change in its status.

The deemed disposition and reacquisition rules in paragraph 149(10)(b) are made more complete by deleting the existing exception for the resource properties of a corporation that ceases to be tax-exempt. A corporation will be treated as having disposed of all of its property for proceeds equal to its fair market value, at the "disposition time" – that is, the time immediately before the time immediately before it becomes or ceases to be exempt.

Next, the amendment replaces existing paragraphs 149(10)(c) and (d) of the Act. Paragraph 149(10)(c) currently applies where the corporation's capital cost of a depreciable property exceeds the property's fair market value. To ensure that on a later disposition of the property the corporation is subject to the recapture of any

excess capital cost allowance it claimed before its status changed, the paragraph preserves the property's capital cost, and treats the excess as having been allowed as capital cost allowance. In keeping with the more complete separation between the tax history of a corporation before its status changes and its treatment afterwards, this rule is deleted.

New paragraph 149(10)(c), which is unrelated to the existing provision, provides that a corporation that becomes or ceases to be exempt from tax is to be treated for certain purposes of the Act as a new corporation the first taxation year of which began with its change in status. Those purposes include: the scientific research and experimental development deduction and credit under sections 37 and 127.3, the resource property rules in sections 65 to 66.4 and 66.7, loss carryovers under section 111, foreign tax credits under section 126, and investment tax credits under subsections 127(5) to (26) of the Act. New paragraph 149(10)(c) thus precludes a corporation whose tax status changes from subsequently using any of the listed deductions and credits it may have accumulated before the change, and vice versa.

Existing paragraph 149(10)(d) limits a corporation's use of losses incurred before its tax status changed. Since new paragraph 149(10)(c) denies any carryover of losses across a change in status, existing paragraph (d) is superfluous. It is replaced with a rule requiring the corporation to realize any latent loss in respect of its cumulative eligible capital (CEC). Where, immediately before the disposition time, the corporation's CEC in respect of a business exceeds the total of $\frac{3}{4}$ of the fair market value of the business's eligible capital property and the CEC amount otherwise deducted under paragraph 20(1)(b) of the Act for the corporation's last taxation year before its tax status changes, the excess is to be deducted in computing the corporation's income for that year.

These changes to subsection 149(10) apply where a corporation becomes or ceases to be exempt from tax under Part I of the Act after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 178(7)

ITA

149(11)

Subsection 149(11) of the Act provides that subsection 149(10) of the Act does not apply to a corporation that becomes or ceases to be exempt from tax because its control is acquired, if the acquisition of control takes place pursuant to an agreement in writing entered into on or before November 12, 1981. With the passage of time, this transitional rule has become redundant. The subsection is repealed on Royal Assent to this legislation.

Clause 179**Charities – Disbursement Quota**

ITA

149.1(1)

Section 149.1 of the Act contains rules relating to registered charities. Definitions for purposes of these rules are found in subsection 149.1(1) of the Act.

The definition "disbursement quota" in subsection 149.1(1) means an amount determined by a formula which requires that a charity spend a specified proportion of donations for which tax receipts are issued, and in the case of charitable foundations a specified percentage of the value of investment assets, on charitable activities or gifts to other charities.

This formula was introduced by the Statute Revision Commission in the Fifth Supplement of the Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985, to replace the then-existing narrative description of the disbursement quota. The formula erroneously departed from the underlying structure of the disbursement quota, by failing to properly account for the mathematical relationship between gifts received by a charitable foundation and the amount that such a foundation is required to disburse. This amendment to the definition, which generally applies to taxation years that end after November 1991, restores the correct relationship between these two factors.

Clause 180

Returns

ITA

150

Section 150 of the Act sets out the requirements relating to the filing of tax returns.

Subclause 180(1)

ITA

150(1)(d)(ii)(A)

Subsection 150(1) of the Act requires taxpayers to file their income tax returns by certain dates. Clause 150(1)(d)(ii)(A) of the Act is amended to replace the reference to "tax shelter" with "tax shelter investment" consequential on the enactment of the definition "tax shelter investment" in new subsection 143.2(1) of the Act. Generally, this amendment applies to the 1995 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 180(2)

Death of Partner or Proprietor

ITA

150(4)

Subsection 150(4) of the Act allows an individual's legal representative to file a separate return in the event that an individual dies after the end of a fiscal period of a business, in circumstances where a second fiscal period ends in the year because of the individual's death. (In contrast, where a second fiscal period does not end, subsection 70(2) of the Act may apply to the value of any "rights or things" receivable at the time of death in respect of the business.) Concurrent to the addition of new subsections 34.1(9) and 34.2(8) of the Act, subsection 150(4) is expanded in scope,

- to allow the representative to report the balance of the individual's reserve in respect of December 31, 1995 income in a separate return; and
- where the individual reports business income according to the "alternative fiscal period method" (i.e. with an off-calendar year-end), to permit a deduction in that separate return for any amount that is required to be included in income in the year of death on the subsection 150(1) return pursuant to new subsection 34.1(9).

New subsection 150(4) is applicable to 1996 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 181

Assessments

ITA

152

Section 152 of the Act contains rules relating to assessments and reassessments of tax, interest and penalties payable by a taxpayer and to determinations and redeterminations of amounts of tax deemed to have been paid by a taxpayer.

Subclause 181(1)

Provisions Applicable

ITA

152(1.2)

Subsection 152(1.2) of the Act provides for the application of paragraphs 56(1)(l) and 60(o) and Divisions I and J as they relate to assessments and to various determinations and redeterminations made under Part I of the Act. An exception is made, however, to ensure that subsections 152(1) and (2) of the Act do not apply to determinations made under subsections 152(1.1) and (1.11) of the Act.

This amendment to subsection 152(1.2) provides for a new exception: subsection 164(4.1) of the Act will not apply in respect of determinations and redeterminations made under new subsection 152(1.4) of the Act, which deals with partnerships. (For further information, reference may be made to the commentary on that provision.) Therefore, where a Court, on the disposition of an appeal of a determination or redetermination in respect of a partnership, orders the Minister of National Revenue to make a redetermination, the Minister will have discretion not to make the redetermination or to refund any resulting overpayment immediately, but to wait until all rights of appeal have expired.

The amendment applies to determinations made after Royal Assent.

Subclause 181(2)

ITA
152(1.4) to (1.8)

New subsections 152(1.4) to (1.8) of the Act provide rules to deal with partnerships. These new subsections apply to determinations made after Royal Assent.

Determination in Respect of a Partnership

ITA
152(1.4)

New subsection 152(1.4) of the Act provides the Minister of National Revenue with the authority to determine any income or loss of a partnership for a fiscal period within three years after the later of the day on which an information return in respect of the partnership for the fiscal period is required to be filed under section 229 of the *Income Tax Regulations* and the day on which the return is actually filed. This determination is made at the partnership level. The Minister will also have the authority to determine any deduction, amount or matter at the partnership level or relating to the partnership and that is considered relevant in determining the tax liability of, and various amounts payable by, or refundable to, the members of the partnership under the Act for any taxation year. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Notice of Determination

ITA

152(1.5)

Under new subsection 152(1.5) of the Act, the Minister of National Revenue must send a notice of the determination made under subsection 152(1.4) of the Act in respect of the fiscal period of a partnership to the partnership as well as to each person who was, during that fiscal period, a member of the partnership.

Absence of Notification

ITA

152(1.6)

New subsection 152(1.6) of the Act clarifies that a determination made under subsection 152(1.4) of the Act in respect of a partnership will still be valid even though one or more members of the partnership do not receive a notice of the determination. This could happen, for example, where the address of a member changed since the last filing of the partnership return under section 229 of the *Income Tax Regulations*.

Binding Effect of Determination

ITA

152(1.7)

New subsection 152(1.7) of the Act provides that a determination or redetermination made by the Minister of National Revenue in respect of a partnership under subsection 152(1.4) of the Act is binding on the Minister and all the members of the partnership in spite of the fact that the determination or redetermination was made at the partnership level. The Minister will then have one year after the expiration of the right to object or to appeal of a designated member of the partnership, as provided under new subsection 165(1.15), to assess the tax liability of, or to determine any amount deemed to have been paid or to have been an overpayment by, any member of the partnership and any other affected taxpayer (such as a member's spouse). Such assessment or determination can only be made to the extent that it is necessary to give effect to the determination or

redetermination that was previously made at the partnership level or to a decision of a court in respect of that determination or redetermination.

Time to Assess

ITA
152(1.8)

New subsection 152(1.8) of the Act will come into play where the Minister of National Revenue makes a determination at the partnership level but it is subsequently demonstrated that there is no partnership or that a taxpayer in respect of which an assessment or determination was made on the basis that the taxpayer was a member of the partnership is not, in fact, a member of the partnership. In such cases, the one year time limit for the Minister to assess the tax liability of, or to determine any amount deemed to have been paid or to have been an overpayment by, any taxpayer will start not after the day on which all rights of objection and appeal in respect of the determination made at the partnership level expired or are determined (as it would otherwise be under new paragraph 152(1.7)(b) of the Act), but after the day where it is demonstrated that there is no partnership or that the taxpayer is not a member of the partnership.

The authority for the Minister to make an assessment or determination under subsection 152(1.8) is restricted to the extent that the assessment or determination must be related to the same issues that triggered the making of a determination at the partnership level under subsection 152(1.4) of the Act and to the finding that no partnership existed or that the taxpayer is not a member of the partnership.

Subclause 181(3)

Definition of "normal reassessment period"

ITA
152(3.1)

The time within which the Minister of National Revenue may generally reassess is known as the "normal reassessment period", as defined by subsection 152(3.1) of the Act. More specifically, the

normal reassessment period is the 3 or 4-year period beginning after the day of mailing of a notice of an original assessment for a taxation year or the day of mailing of a notification that no tax is payable for the year. Subsection 152(3.1) is amended so that the definition of normal reassessment period applies for the purpose of new subsection 152(4.01). That provision limits the matters in respect of which the Minister can reassess, where a reassessment to which paragraph 152(4)(a) or (b) of the Act applies is made beyond the normal reassessment period for a taxpayer in respect of a taxation year. A similar limitation was previously found in subsections 152(4) and (5) of the Act. Subsection 152(3.1) is also amended to clarify that the normal reassessment period begins to run from the time that is the earlier of the day of mailing of an original assessment and the day of mailing of a notification that no tax is payable. Subsection 152(3.1) applies after April 27, 1989.

Subclause 181(4)

Assessment and Reassessment

ITA

152(4)

In general terms, subsection 152(4) of the Act provides that the Minister of National Revenue may not reassess tax payable by a taxpayer for a taxation year after the normal reassessment period for the taxpayer in respect of the year unless certain conditions described in paragraph 152(4)(a) or (b) of the Act have been met. More specifically, paragraph 152(4)(a) provides that the Minister may reassess at any time in cases of misrepresentation or fraud or where a waiver has been filed within the normal reassessment period for the taxpayer in respect of the year. Paragraph 152(4)(b) allows the Minister to reassess a taxpayer within 3 years after the end of the normal reassessment period for the taxpayer in respect of the year, where the reassessment is required because of an adjustment described in subsection 152(6) of the Act, such as the carryback of a loss, or is made as a consequence of certain other matters described in that paragraph.

Subsection 152(4) is amended as a consequence of the addition of new subsection 152(4.01) of the Act. That provision limits the matters in respect of which the Minister may reassess, where a

reassessment to which paragraph 152(4)(a) or (b) applies is made beyond the normal reassessment period for a taxpayer in respect of a taxation year. A similar limitation was previously found in subsections 152(4) and (5). This amendment applies after April 27, 1989.

Subparagraph 152(4)(b)(v) of the Act is introduced to allow the Minister to reassess a taxpayer within 3 years after the end of the normal reassessment period where the reassessment is made as a consequence of a reduction under subsection 66(12.73) of the Act of an amount purported to be renounced under section 66 in respect of a flow-through share. This amendment applies to the 1996 and subsequent taxation years.

**Assessment to which par.
152(4)(a) or (b) applies**

ITA
152(4.01)

New subsection 152(4.01) of the Act limits the matters in respect of which the Minister of National Revenue can reassess, where a reassessment to which paragraph 152(4)(a) or (b) of the Act applies is made beyond the normal reassessment period for a taxpayer in respect of a taxation year. In general terms, such a reassessment can be made only to the extent that it can reasonably be regarded as relating to a misrepresentation, fraud or waiver, or a matter specified in any of subparagraphs 152(4)(b)(i) to (v) of the Act, because of which the Minister is able to reassess beyond the normal reassessment period. This limitation replaces similar ones in subsections 152(4) and (5) of the existing Act. New subsection 152(4.01) applies after April 27, 1989, except that the reference to subparagraph 152(4)(b)(v) dealing with adjustments to flow-through share renunciations applies only to the 1996 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 181(5)**Limitation on Assessments**

ITA

152(5)

Subsection 152(5) of the Act provides that where the Minister of National Revenue reassesses a taxpayer's tax for a taxation year beyond the normal reassessment period for the taxpayer in respect of the year in a case of fraud or misrepresentation or on the authority of a waiver filed by the taxpayer, the reassessment shall not include in income any amount not previously included in respect of which the taxpayer did not commit a fraud or misrepresentation or that does not relate to a matter specified in the waiver. Subsection 152(5) is amended as a consequence of the addition of new subsection 152(4.01) of the Act. New subsection 152(4.01) will henceforth limit the matters in respect of which the Minister may reassess, where a reassessment to which paragraph 152(4)(a) or (b) of the Act applies is made beyond the normal reassessment period for a taxpayer in respect of a taxation year. Subsection 152(5) will, however, continue to circumscribe the Minister's power to reassess beyond the normal reassessment period where, for example, a reassessment is made pursuant to subsection 165(3) of the Act as a consequence of an objection filed by a taxpayer to a notice of assessment. This amendment applies after April 27, 1989.

Subclause 181(6)

ITA

152(6)

Subsection 152(6) of the Act provides for the reassessment of tax payable for a taxation year where a deduction or credit is being claimed as the result of a carryback from a subsequent taxation year.

The subsection is amended to require the Minister of National Revenue to reassess a deceased taxpayer's return for the year prior to the year of death where a deduction is claimed for that prior year under subsection 147.2(4) of the Act as modified by new subsection 147.2(6) of the Act.

Subsection 147.2(4) allows a deduction for contributions to a registered pension plan, subject to certain limits where the contributions are in respect of service before 1990.

Subsection 147.2(6) relaxes these limits for the year in which the taxpayer dies and for the preceding year.

This amendment to subsection 152(6) applies to taxpayers who die after 1992.

Clause 182

Withholding

ITA

153

Section 153 authorizes the withholding of tax from any of the payments described in subsection (1). Paragraph 153(1)(d.1) of the Act is amended to add a reference to the *Unemployment Insurance Act*, which was repealed by Bill C-12. This amendment is deemed to have come into force on June 30, 1996.

Clause 183

Tax Transfer Payments

ITA

154(2)

Subsection 154(2) of the Act permits the Minister of National Revenue to make a tax transfer payment in respect of an individual to the government of a province in certain cases where the individual has filed a return under the Act.

Paragraph 154(2)(a) of the Act is amended to clarify that the return filed with the Minister must be a return of income under Part I of the Act.

This amendment applies to the 1996 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 184**Instalment Payments – Corporations**

ITA

157

Section 157 of the Act sets out the required payment dates for corporate income tax instalments and for any balance of corporate income tax payable.

Subclause 184(1)**Special Case**

ITA

157(2)(c)

Subsection 157(2) of the Act sets out conditions under which a co-operative corporation or a credit union is permitted to make only one payment of the whole of its tax payable for a taxation year, rather than having to make instalments.

Subsection 157(2) is amended to ensure that these conditions apply to credit unions on a year-by-year basis. It is also amended to eliminate unnecessary words in existing paragraph 157(2)(a) of the Act.

These amendments apply to taxation years that end after February 22, 1994.

Subclause 184(2)

ITA

157(3)

Subsection 157(3) of the Act provides a reduction of the amount to be paid by instalments of tax for a year by certain corporations entitled to claim amounts deemed by the Act to have been paid on account of their taxes for the year.

This subsection is amended to add new paragraph 157(3)(e) which will allow the reduction of instalments to take into consideration the

deemed payment under subsection 127.1(1) of the Act in respect of the taxpayer's refundable investment tax credit for the year and under subsection 125.5(3) in respect of the taxpayer's film and video production services tax credit for the year.

This amendment generally applies to taxation years that end after February 22, 1994.

Clause 185

Acting For Another

ITA

159(1),(2) and (3)

Subsections 159(1), (2) and (3) of the Act provide that:

- a person required to file a tax return for another (in this note referred to as a "taxpayer") must make payments on behalf of the taxpayer,
- a responsible representative who acts in a fiduciary or representative capacity for a taxpayer must obtain a certificate before distributing the property of the taxpayer, certifying that liability under the Act has been satisfied, and
- such a person may be held personally liable to pay the taxpayer's liability, to the extent of the value of property under the person's control that is distributed without obtaining a certificate.

The amendments to subsections 159(1), (2) and (3) first change references to "persons required to file a return" and to "responsible representatives" to a uniform reference to legal representative. A new definition of "legal representative" is concurrently added to subsection 248(1) of the Act.

Amended subsection 159(1) provides that the legal representative of a taxpayer is jointly liable with the taxpayer to pay any amount payable by the taxpayer and to perform any duty or obligation imposed under the Act. This clarifies that, for all purposes of the Act (including assessments, objections and appeals as well as collection,

administration and enforcement), the legal representative is considered to be the taxpayer's agent; for example, where the legal representative carries on the business of the taxpayer, the representative will be required to deduct, withhold and remit amounts that the taxpayer would have been required to deduct, withhold and remit. Further, actions and proceedings under this Act taken by the representative (in that capacity) or taken by the Minister against the representative, will be binding on the taxpayer. For example, the issuance of a notice of assessment against a legal representative of the taxpayer (say a parent corporation that wound up its subsidiary and acquired its assets) will have the same effect as if it had been issued against the dissolved taxpayer at that time, assuming it had been in existence at the time. Conversely, the Minister will be bound by and the legal representative will benefit from, the same time limitations and safeguards as would have applied to an assessment made against the taxpayer.

Under new subparagraph 159(1)(a)(i) of the Act, the liability of the legal representative to pay an amount extends to any amount payable by the taxpayer under the Act at or before the time legal representative is called upon for a payment. Important safeguards exist in subparagraphs 159(1)(a)(i) and (ii) of the Act against too broad an application of the joint and several liability rules. The liability of the legal representative acting in good faith is limited to the property in the possession or control of the legal representative when that person is called upon to make a payment on behalf of the taxpayer, or to any proceeds of disposition and replacement property obtained by the legal representative from that property. Moreover, the legal representative is only liable to perform those obligations and duties under the Act that can reasonably be considered to relate to his responsibilities as representative. For example, a representative who has a general power of attorney will have broader responsibilities than one whose authority is limited to certain assets of the taxpayer.

These amendments clarify that the Minister of Revenue may reassess the legal representative of a taxpayer during the normal reassessment period notwithstanding that the taxpayer may have been dissolved and liquidated. Thus, where the Minister issues a reassessment in the name of a dissolved taxpayer against a legal representative of the taxpayer in the normal reassessment period, the reassessment would be valid as against the taxpayer and the liability to pay would accrue to the legal representative.

A special deeming rule is provided in new subsection 159(3.1) of the Act to deal with the situation where the legal representative acquires or otherwise appropriates property instead of distributing it. In such a case, a distribution is deemed to have occurred for purposes of the rules in subsections 159(2) and (3), and a certificate must be obtained by the legal representative if personal liability is to be avoided. This ensures that the rules in 159(2) and (3) are not defeated where assets are allocated to a related person in the course of a voluntary winding-up, for example.

These amendments apply on Royal Assent.

Clause 186

Tax Liability – Non-arm’s Length Transfers of Property

ITA

160

Section 160 of the Act imposes joint and several liability for tax on certain transfers of property between persons who do not deal at arm’s length with each other.

Subclause 186(1)

Joint Liability Where s. 69(11) Applies

ITA

160(1.1)

New subsection 160(1.1) of the Act provides that where subsection 69(11) of the Act applies to deem a disposition of property to have occurred at fair market value, both the person disposing of the property and the person acquiring the property are jointly and severally liable for the payment of each other’s liabilities arising under the Act as a result of that disposition. Essentially, each person’s liability for any taxation year affected by the disposition is the excess of the amount payable under the Act by that person for that year over the amount that would have been payable by that person for that year had subsection 69(11) not applied to the disposition. New subsection 160(1.1) of the Act applies to

dispositions deemed by subsection 69(11) to have occurred after April 26, 1995.

Subclause 186(2)

ITA

160(2) and (3)

Subsections 160(2) and (3) of the Act set out rules for the assessment, payment and extinguishment of the joint and several liabilities arising under subsection 160(1) of the Act. These subsections are replaced with new subsections 160(2) and (3), which apply both to subsection 160(1) and new subsection 160(1.1) of the Act and continue to apply to the assessment, payment and extinguishment of the liabilities arising under these subsections. New subsection 160(2) allows the Minister to assess a taxpayer at any time in respect of liabilities arising under section 160 and such an assessment will have the same effect as if it had been made under section 152 of the Act. New subsection 160(3) provides that where a particular taxpayer becomes jointly and severally liable with another taxpayer under subsection 160(1) or (1.1) with respect to a tax liability of the other person, a payment by the particular taxpayer on account of the particular taxpayer's tax liability will discharge the joint liability to the extent of the payment. However, a payment by the other taxpayer on account of the other taxpayer's tax liability, will reduce the particular taxpayer's liability only to the extent that the total tax liability of the other taxpayer is reduced below the amount of the joint and several liability. New subsections 160(2) and (3) of the Act apply on Royal Assent.

Clause 187

Interest

ITA

161

Section 161 of the Act provides for the payment of interest on outstanding amounts of tax payable under Part I, as well as on late or deficient instalments in respect of such tax.

Subclauses 187(1) to (4)

ITA
161(7)

Subsection 161(7) of the Act provides that, where the amount of tax payable for a taxation year is reduced because of certain deductions or exclusions arising from the carryback of losses or tax credits or from events in subsequent years, interest on any unpaid tax for the taxation year is calculated without regard to the reduction until the latest of several dates.

Paragraph 161(7)(a) is amended to include in the list of deductions and exclusions a deduction claimed under subsection 147.2(4), as modified by new subsection 147.2(6), because of the death of the taxpayer in the subsequent year. Subsection 147.2(4) allows a deduction for contributions to a registered pension plan, subject to certain limits where the contributions are in respect of service before 1990. Subsection 147.2(6) relaxes these limits for the year in which the taxpayer dies and for the preceding year. This amendment to paragraph 161(7)(a) applies to taxpayers who die after 1992.

Paragraph 161(7)(a) is further amended to clarify that the consequences of the deduction or exclusion of an amount referred to in the subparagraphs that follow must not be taken into consideration in the determination of taxes payable by a taxpayer for the taxation year. Paragraph 161(7)(b) is also amended as a result of the wording change in paragraph (a). These amendments apply to amounts that become payable after December 1995.

Subclause 187(5)

ITA
161(11)

Subsection 161(11) of the Act requires the payment of interest on penalties imposed under the Act. Subsection 161(11) is amended to add new paragraph (b.1) which applies in the case of a penalty payable under new subsection 237.1(7.4) of the Act. New subsection 237.1(7.4) is analogous to repealed subsection 162(9), which provides a penalty where a person fails to comply with the reporting requirements in respect of tax shelters under section 237.1.

This amendment applies after December 1, 1994.

Subclause 187(6)

ITA

161(12)

New subsection 161(12) of the Act allows the interest on a penalty under new subsection 237.1(7.4) of the Act to be assessed against a partnership and applies the provisions of the Act relating to assessments, payments and appeals with respect to interest on those penalties as if the partnership were a corporation. This subsection applies after December 1, 1994.

Clause 188

Penalties – Tax Shelter

ITA

162

Section 162 of the Act imposes penalties for failing to comply with various information and filing requirements.

Subclause 188(1)

Failure to Provide Information on Form

ITA

162(5)

Subsection 162(5) of the Act provides a penalty for the failure of any person to provide any information required on a prescribed form made pursuant to the Act or a regulation. Paragraph 162(5)(a) of the Act is amended to add a reference to a partnership and is consequential on the amendments made to section 237 of the Act.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Subclause 188(2)**Failure to Provide Identification Number**

ITA

162(6)

Subsection 162(6) of the Act provides a penalty for failure by an individual to provide on request their Social Insurance Number to any person who is required to make an information return in respect of the individual. Subsection 162(6) is amended to extend the penalty for failure by any person or partnership to provide their business number when required.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Subclause 188(3)**Rules Where Partnership Liable to a Penalty**

ITA

162(8.1)

Subsection 162(8.1) of the Act allows various penalties imposed under section 162 of the Act to be assessed against a partnership and applies the provisions of the Act relating to assessments, objections and appeals with respect to those penalties as if the partnership were a corporation. Subsection 162(8.1) is amended to apply to penalties levied under subsections 162(5) and (6) of the Act.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Subclause 188(4)**Penalties – Tax Shelters**

ITA

162(9)

Subsection 162(9) of the Act imposes a penalty for failure to comply with the reporting requirements in respect of tax shelters in section 237.1 of the Act. The repeal of subsection 162(9), applicable

after December 1, 1994, is consequential on the introduction of new subsection 237.1(7.4) of the Act.

Clause 189

Penalties

ITA

163

Section 163 of the Act imposes penalties in respect of serious failures to comply with the Act, such as making false statements or omitting to report income.

Subclause 189(1)

False Statements or Omissions

ITA

163(2)

Subsection 163(2) of the Act imposes a penalty where a taxpayer knowingly, or in circumstances amounting to gross negligence, participates in or makes a false statement for the purposes of the Act.

Subsection 163(2) is amended to clarify that taxpayers who volunteer false information for the purposes of the Act are liable to a penalty.

This amendment applies after June 20, 1996.

Subclause 189(2)

ITA

163(2)(g)

Subsection 163(2) of the Act imposes a penalty where a taxpayer knowingly or in circumstances amounting to gross negligence, participates in or makes a false statement or omission, in a return, form, certificate, statement or answer. New paragraph 163(2)(g) of the Act is added to apply to amounts deemed to be paid pursuant to

new subsection 125.5(3) (the film or video production services tax credit).

This amendment applies after October 1997.

Subclause 189(3)

ITA

163(4)

Subsection 163(2) of the Act imposes a penalty where a taxpayer, knowingly or through gross negligence, understates income for a taxation year. Subsection 163(4) of the Act clarifies that, in determining the understatement of income, certain deductions and exclusions arising from events in subsequent years are disregarded.

Subsection 163(4) is amended to include in the list of deductions and exclusions to be disregarded a deduction claimed under subsection 147.2(4) of the Act, as modified by new subsection 147.2(6) of the Act, because of the death of the taxpayer in the subsequent year. Subsection 147.2(4) allows a deduction for contributions to a registered pension plan, subject to certain limits where the contributions are in respect of service before 1990. Subsection 147.2(6) relaxes these limits for the year in which the taxpayer dies and for the preceding year.

This amendment to subsection 163(4) applies to taxpayers who die after 1992.

Clause 190

Refunds

ITA

164

Section 164 of the Act contains rules relating to refunds of taxes, including provisions dealing with repayments, application to other debts, and interest.

Subclause 190(1)

ITA

164(1)(a)(i)

Subsection 164(1) of the Act provides rules governing refunds of overpayments of tax.

Subparagraph 164(1)(a)(i) of the Act is amended to correct the references to elements of the definition "refundable investment tax credit" in subsection 127.1(2) of the Act consequential on the amendments to that definition which apply to taxation years that end after December 2, 1992.

This amendment applies to taxation years that end after December 2, 1992.

Subclause 190(2)

ITA

164(1)(b)

If a taxpayer has filed the tax return for a taxation year within 3 years from the end of the year, the Minister of National Revenue may refund any overpayment of tax for the year. Where no such refund is made, paragraph 164(1)(b) of the Act allows the taxpayer to make an application for the refund within the period determined under paragraph 152(4)(b) or (c) of the Act within which the Minister may reassess tax payable by the taxpayer for the year. The amendments to paragraph 164(1)(b) are strictly consequential on the amendments to subsection 152(4) and effect no substantive changes to this provision. Amended paragraph 164(1)(b) applies after April 27, 1989.

Subclause 190(3)**Request to Pay Refund to Province**

ITA

164(1.8)

New subsection 164(1.8) of the Act authorizes Revenue Canada, at the request of an individual to pay all or part of the individual's tax

refund for a taxation year to the government of a prescribed province. The individual must make the request in the individual's tax return for the year. Any amount paid to the province in accordance with the request is considered to be paid to the individual when the original assessment notice (or a notice that no tax is payable) is sent to the individual. Initially, it is intended that Ontario will be prescribed under the *Income Tax Regulations* for the purposes of this provision. The provision applies to requests made by taxpayers after 1997 for the 1997 and subsequent taxation years.

Subclause 190(4)

Application to Other Debts

ITA
164(2)

Subsection 164(2) of the Act deals with cases in which a taxpayer who is entitled to a refund or a repayment under section 164 of the Act is, or is about to become, indebted to Her Majesty in Right of Canada. In such cases, subsection 164(2) allows Revenue Canada to apply the refund or repayment to the debt instead of making the refund or repayment to the taxpayer. Subsection 164(2) is amended to provide that it applies not only to amounts owed to Her Majesty in Right of Canada but also to those owed to Her Majesty in Right of a province.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Subclause 190(5)

ITA
164(2.1)

Subsection 164(2) of the Act provides that, where a taxpayer is liable or about to become liable for other income tax payments, the Minister may apply the amount of an overpayment to the other tax liability rather than make a refund. Subsection 164(2.1) of the Act provides for such an offset in the case of Goods and Services Tax credit payments. Subsection 164(2.1) is amended so that, when the applicable return is filed on time, the offset occurs on the day the amount would have been paid to the individual if the offset had not

occurred. When the individual's return for the year is not filed on time, the offset occurs on the day the amount is actually applied. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Subclauses 190(6) and (7)

ITA

164(5) and (5.1)

Subsection 164(5) of the Act provides that, where the tax payable for a taxation year is reduced because of certain deductions or exclusions arising from the carryback of losses or tax credits or from events in subsequent years, interest payable to a taxpayer on any resulting overpayment of tax is to be calculated as if the overpayment had arisen on the latest of several dates.

Subsection 164(5) is amended to include in the list of deductions and exclusions a deduction claimed under subsection 147.2(4) of the Act, as modified by new subsection 147.2(6) of the Act, because of the death of the taxpayer in the subsequent year. Subsection 147.2(4) allows a deduction for contributions to a registered pension plan, subject to certain limits where the contributions are in respect of service before 1990. Subsection 147.2(6) relaxes these limits for the year in which the taxpayer dies and for the preceding year.

Subsection 164(5.1) of the Act, which deals with interest payable in the case of a repayment of an amount in dispute, contains a rule analogous to that in subsection 164(5). The amendment to subsection 164(5.1) is similar to the amendment to subsection 164(5).

The amendments to subsections 164(5) and (5.1) apply to taxpayers who die after 1992.

Subclause 190(8)

ITA

164(6)(c)

Subsection 164(6) of the Act allows a deceased taxpayer's legal representative to elect to treat certain capital losses or terminal losses of the taxpayer's estate for its first taxation year as capital losses or terminal losses of the taxpayer for the taxpayer's last taxation year.

Under paragraph 164(6)(c) of the Act the election is limited to the amount by which the estate's capital losses exceed its capital gains for that year.

Paragraph 164(6)(c) is amended to ensure that subsection 112(3) of the Act does not apply to reduce a deceased taxpayer's loss which was transferred under that paragraph.

This amendment applies to deaths that occur after 1993.

Clause 191

Transitional Provision

Subsection 164(6) of the Act allows a deceased taxpayer's legal representative to elect to treat certain capital losses of the taxpayer's estate for its first taxation year to be capital losses of the taxpayer's last taxation year. Under paragraph 164(6)(c) of the Act the election must be made within a prescribed time and under paragraph 164(6)(e) of the Act the legal representative must file an amended return of income for the deceased taxpayer's last taxation year within the time prescribed for the election.

This transitional rule will provide a limited opportunity for an estate to transfer a capital loss arising from the disposition of a share of the capital stock of a corporation to the taxpayer's last taxation year even though the election was not made within the prescribed time, or the disposition occurred after the end of the estate's first taxation year. For this rule to apply, the estate's first taxation year must have ended after April 26, 1995 and before 1997 and the loss in respect of the share must have arisen from a disposition occurring before 1997. In conjunction with the coming-into-force provisions for the amended stop-loss rules in subsections 112(3) to (3.32) of the Act, the capital loss that can be transferred under subsection 164(4) of the Act by an estate will not be reduced by the tax-free dividends received by the estate on the share.

The transitional rule is applicable where the legal representative files a written election with the Minister of National Revenue within six months after the month in which this Act receives Royal Assent. Where a valid election is filed, the timing requirements under

paragraphs 164(6)(c) and (e) will be considered fulfilled provided that the paragraph 164(6)(c) election and the amended return referred to in paragraph 164(6)(e) of the Act are filed within the time allowed for the election above.

Clause 192

Objections to Assessments

ITA

165

Section 165 of the Act provides rules governing a taxpayer's right to object to an assessment or determination by the Minister of National Revenue of tax, interest, penalties and certain other amounts.

Subclauses 192(1) and (2)

Limitation of Right to Object to Assessments or Determinations

ITA

165(1.1)

Where the Minister of National Revenue has issued a notice of assessment or determination, subsection 165(1.1) of the Act restricts, in certain cases, the matters to which a taxpayer may object to those matters which gave rise to the assessment or redetermination. The amendments to subsection 165(1.1) are consequential to the introduction of subsection 152(1.8) of the Act, which allows the Minister to assess the tax liability of, or to determine any amount deemed to have been paid or to have been an overpayment by, a taxpayer who was believed to be a member of a partnership or any other affected persons. Such an assessment or determination may only be made to give effect to a determination made under subsection 152(1.4) of the Act in respect of the entity that was believed to be a partnership.

The right of a taxpayer who was believed to be a member of a partnership to object to an assessment or determination made in respect of that partnership under new subsection 152(1.8) will be restricted to the matters that were relevant in the making of a

determination at the partnership level or that result from the finding that the taxpayer is not a member of the partnership or that there is no such partnership.

These amendments apply to determinations made after Royal Assent.

Subclause 192(3)

Partnership

ITA
165(1.15)

New subsection 165(1.15) of the Act provides that only the member of a partnership designated by all the members of the partnership in the partnership return filed annually under section 229 of the *Income Tax Regulations* can exercise the right to object to a determination made by the Minister of National Revenue under new subsection 152(1.4) of the Act. For that purpose, the Minister will request the members of a partnership to indicate, in the partnership return, the name and address of the member that has been designated by the partnership and its members as representative of the partnership. Only one person may be so named. If no member has been so designated, the authority to initiate legal proceedings is vested in any member expressly authorized to act on behalf of the partnership in respect of the proceedings.

New subsection 165(1.15) applies to determinations made after Royal Assent.

Subclause 192(4)

ITA
165(3.1) and (3.2)

Subsections 165(3.1) and (3.2) of the Act deal with referrals to the Minister of National Health and Welfare of notices of objections to determinations relating to the eligibility criteria for the child tax benefit. These subsections are repealed, after August 27, 1995, as the Minister of National Revenue will be entirely responsible for the child tax benefit provisions.

Subclause 192(5)**Validity of Reassessment**

ITA

165(5)

Subsection 165(5) of the Act provides that the Minister of National Revenue may reassess tax for a year after receiving a notice of objection from a taxpayer, even though the reassessment is made beyond the period provided for under paragraph 152(4)(b) or (c) of the Act for making a reassessment. This subsection is amended as a consequence of the amendments to subsection 152(4) and the addition of new subsection 152(4.01) of the Act. It effectively provides that the limitations imposed by these subsections as to, respectively, the time within which the Minister may reassess and the scope of such reassessments are not applicable to a reassessment made pursuant to a notice of objection filed by a taxpayer. Subsection 152(5) of the Act will, however, continue to circumscribe the Minister's power to reassess beyond the normal reassessment period in such cases. Subsection 165(5) applies after April 27, 1989.

Clause 193**Appeals**

ITA

169(2)

Subsection 169(2) of the Act restricts, in certain cases, the matters with respect to which a taxpayer may appeal to those matters which gave rise to the assessment or determination that is under appeal. The amendments to subsection 169(2) are consequential to the introduction of subsection 152(1.8) of the Act, which allows the Minister to assess the tax liability of, or to determine any amount deemed to have been paid or to have been an overpayment by, a taxpayer who was believed to be a member of a partnership or any other affected persons. Such an assessment or determination may be made only to give effect to a determination made under subsection 152(1.4) of the Act in respect of the entity that was believed to be a partnership.

The right of a taxpayer who was believed to be a member of a partnership to appeal an assessment or determination made in respect of that partnership under new subsection 152(1.8) will be restricted to the matters that were relevant in the making of a determination at the partnership level or that result from the finding that the taxpayer is not a member of the partnership or that there is no such partnership.

These amendments apply to determinations made after Royal Assent.

Clause 194

Large Corporations Tax

ITA

181.1(7)

A corporation may deduct, in computing its Part I.3 tax liability for a taxation year, an amount equal to the total of its Canadian surtax payable for the year and such amount as it chooses of its unused surtax credits for the seven preceding and three following taxation years that end after 1991. In general terms, a corporation's Canadian surtax payable is that portion of its corporate surtax that is attributable to its Canadian activities, and an unused surtax credit is the amount by which a corporation's Canadian surtax payable exceeds its tax payable under Part I.3.

Subsection 181.1(7) of the Act restricts the amount deductible in respect of a corporation's unused surtax credits where control of the corporation has been acquired between the year in which the credits arose and the year in which they are sought to be claimed. Currently, subsection 181.1(7) provides that a corporation's unused surtax credits for a taxation year ending before control is acquired are deductible (pursuant to the carry-over provisions of Part I.3) in a taxation year ending after control is acquired only if the business to which the credits relate is carried on throughout the later year, and only against that proportion of the corporation's Part I.3 tax payable for the later year that its income from the continued business or similar businesses in the later year is of the corporation's total taxable income in such later year. Similar restrictions apply in deducting an unused surtax credit for a taxation year ending after the time at which control of a corporation has been acquired in computing a

corporation's tax payable under Part I.3 for a taxation year ending before that time.

This amendment to subsection 181.7 changes the carry-over rules so that the portion of unused surtax credits that can be carried through a change of control will be based on the income from the continued business in the taxation year in which the surtax credits arise, and not the year against which the credits are sought to be applied.

Specifically, paragraph 181.1(7)(a) of the Act is amended to provide that unused surtax credits for a particular taxation year ending before an acquisition of control may be deducted in a taxation year that ends after that time only to the extent of that proportion of its Canadian surtax payable for the earlier year that its income from the business or a similar business for the earlier year is of its total taxable income for that year. As before, the carryover of unused surtax credits is limited to the situation where the pre-change-of-control business is carried on throughout the subsequent year to which the unused surtax credits are being applied. Similar restrictions will apply where unused surtax credits are being carried back to pre-change-of-control years (see new paragraph 181.1(7)(b) of the Act).

These amendments apply to acquisitions of control that occur after April 26, 1995.

Clause 195

Large Corporations Tax – Calculation of Capital

ITA

181.2(3)

In general terms, a corporation is required to compute amounts relevant in determining its tax payable under Part I.3 of the Act using generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP).

The Canadian Institute of Chartered Accountants' Handbook (the "Handbook"), which is the principal source of GAAP in Canada, requires that the carrying values of foreign-denominated monetary assets and liabilities reflect unrealized foreign exchange gains and losses on such items. The Handbook also requires that certain of

these unrealized foreign exchange gains and losses be deferred and amortized into income over the life of the monetary item.

New paragraph 181.2(3)(b.1) of the Act applies to specifically include in capital unrealized foreign exchange gains that have been deferred in accordance with GAAP. Conversely, new paragraph 181.2(3)(k) of the Act permits deferred unrealized foreign exchange losses to be deducted from a corporation's capital. An amendment to paragraph 181.2(3)(g) of the Act provides similar treatment of a corporation's share of any deferred unrealized foreign exchange gains and losses of a partnership of which it is a member.

These amendments apply to the 1995 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 196

Large Corporations Tax – Taxable Capital of Financial Institutions

ITA

181.3(3)(d)(i)

Subsection 181.3(3) of the Act contains the rules for determining the capital of a financial institution for the purpose of Part I.3.

Paragraph 181.3(3)(d) of the Act applies to a non-resident insurer.

Subparagraph 181.3(3)(d)(i) of the Act provides that the capital of a non-resident insurer includes the greater of its surplus funds derived from operations and its attributed surplus.

Subparagraph 181.3(3)(d)(i) is amended to take into account amounts on which the insurer has paid branch tax under Part XIV of the Act, and amounts on which it was not required to pay that tax because of an election under subsection 219(5.2) of the Act. These amounts for preceding taxation years are subtracted from surplus funds derived from operations. A current year amount is also subtracted if it arises because of the transfer of an insurance business where subsection 138(11.5) or (11.92) of the Act has applied to the transfer.

This amendment applies to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 197**Large Corporations Tax – Taxable Capital of Non-Residents**

ITA

181.4(d)(i)

Section 181.4 of the Act provides rules for determining the taxable capital employed in Canada of a non-resident corporation (other than a financial institution) for the purposes of Part I.3 of the Act. Paragraph 181.4(d) of the Act excludes from this amount the carrying value of an asset that is a ship or an aircraft operated by a non-resident corporation in international traffic, or that is personal property used in its business of transporting passengers or goods in international traffic, where the country in which the corporation is resident does not impose a capital tax on similar assets, or a tax on the income therefrom, of any corporation resident in Canada. Subparagraph 181.4(d)(i) of the Act is amended to clarify that personal property, other than ships and aircraft, is excluded only where that property is used in the business of transporting passengers or goods by ship or aircraft in international traffic.

This amendment applies to the 1995 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 198**Large Corporations Tax – Related Corporations**

ITA

181.5(6)

Section 181.5 of the Act sets out rules for determining a corporation's capital deduction for a taxation year, for the purposes of Part I.3 of the Act. Generally, under section 181.5 the members of a group of related corporations that are associated with one another share a single \$10,000,000 deduction. For the most part, the Act's ordinary tests will apply in determining whether corporations are related for this purpose. Subsection 181.5(6) of the Act provides an exception: two corporations that would be related only because of the control of a corporation by Her Majesty or a right referred to in paragraph 251(5)(b) of the Act will not be treated as being related.

This exception in turn contains an exception: if a taxpayer has a right referred to in paragraph 251(5)(b) with respect to shares, and it can reasonably be considered that the taxpayer acquired the right to avoid a limitation on a corporation's capital deduction, the corporations will be treated as being in the same relationship to each other as if the taxpayer owned the shares.

As a consequence of the amendment of paragraph 251(5)(b), the exception to the subsection 181.5(6) rule is amended. Rather than being treated as though the taxpayer in question owned the shares, the corporations will be treated as if the right the taxpayer acquired to avoid the limitation were an immediate and absolute right, and as if the taxpayer had exercised it. This ensures that the provision deals not only with rights to acquire shares, but also with rights to affect shares' voting rights.

This amendment applies after April 26, 1995.

Clause 199

Large Corporations Tax – Application to Crown Corporations

ITA
181.71

New section 181.71 of the Act, which applies to taxation years that end after June 1989, confirms that a prescribed federal Crown corporation is liable to tax under Part I.3 of the Act. Specifically, the new section provides that section 27 of the Act applies to Part I.3 with whatever modifications may be necessary. The main effects of section 27 are to treat income and property of Her Majesty that is administered by a Crown corporation that is an agent of Her Majesty as though they were the corporation's own, and to provide that the exemption in paragraph 149(1)(d) of the Act does not apply.

Clause 200**Part IV Tax – Exempt Corporations**

ITA

186.1(b)

Section 186.1 of the Act exempts certain corporations from the requirement to pay the special refundable Part IV tax on dividend income. Paragraph 186.1(b) of the Act lists a number of types of corporations to which the exemption applies, including corporations described in paragraphs 39(5)(b) and (c) of the Act (banks and trust companies). Section 186.1 is amended, as a consequence of amendments to subsection 39(5), to replace the reference to paragraphs 39(5)(b) and (c) by the descriptions that were contained in those paragraphs. This amendment applies after February 22, 1994.

Clause 201**Part IV.1 Tax – Crown Corporations**

ITA

187.61

New section 187.61 of the Act, which applies after 1987, confirms that a prescribed federal Crown corporation is liable to tax under Part IV.1 of the Act. Specifically, the new section provides that section 27 of the Act applies to Part IV.1 with whatever modifications may be necessary. The main effects of section 27 are to treat income and property of Her Majesty that is administered by a Crown corporation that is an agent of Her Majesty as though they were the corporation's own, and to provide that the exemption in paragraph 149(1)(d) does not apply.

Clause 202**Tax on Capital of Financial Institutions – Calculation**

ITA

190.1(6)

Part VI of the Act levies a tax on the taxable capital employed in Canada of large financial institutions. Section 190.1 of the Act establishes the rate of that tax.

A financial institution is permitted to reduce its Part VI tax payable by an amount equal to the total of its Part I tax liability for the year and such amount as it chooses of its unused Part I tax credits and unused surtax credits for the seven preceding and three following taxation years that end after 1991 (or after 1990, where a special election is made). In general terms, a corporation's unused Part I tax credit is the amount by which its Part I tax payable for a year exceeds the sum of its Part VI tax payable and Canadian surtax payable for the year, and its unused surtax credit is the amount by which its Canadian surtax payable exceeds its tax payable under Part I.3 of the Act for the year.

Subsection 190.1(6) of the Act restricts the amount deductible under Part VI in respect of a corporation's unused surtax and Part I tax credits where control of the corporation has been acquired between the year in which the credits arose and the year in which they are sought to be claimed. Currently, subsection 190.1(6) provides that a corporation's unused surtax and Part I tax credits for a taxation year ending before control is acquired are deductible (pursuant to the carryover provisions of Part VI) in a taxation year ending after control is acquired only if the business to which the tax relates is carried on throughout the later year and only against that proportion of the corporation's Part VI tax payable for the later year that its income from the continued business or similar businesses in the later year is of the corporation's total taxable income in such later year. Similar restrictions apply in deducting a credit in respect of Part I tax for a taxation year ending after the time at which control of a corporation has been acquired in computing a corporation's tax payable under Part VI for a taxation year ending before that time.

This amendment to subsection 190.1(6) changes the carry-over rules so that the portion of unused surtax and Part I tax credits that can be carried through a change of control will be based on the income from the continued business in the taxation year in which the Part I tax credits arise, and not the year against which the credits are sought to be applied. Specifically, paragraph 190.1(6)(a) of the Act is amended to provide that unused surtax and Part I tax credits for a particular taxation year that ends before an acquisition of control may be deducted in a taxation year that ends after that time only to the extent of that proportion of its Part I tax payable for the earlier year that its income from the business or a similar business for the earlier year is of its total taxable income for that year. As before, the carryover of unused surtax and Part I tax credits is restricted to the situation where the pre-change-of-control business is carried on throughout the subsequent year to which the unused surtax and Part I tax credits are being applied. Similar restrictions will apply where unused surtax and Part I tax credits are being carried back to pre-change-of-control years (see new paragraph 190.1(6)(b) of the Act).

These amendments apply to acquisitions of control that occur after April 26, 1996.

Clause 203

Determination of Capital of Financial Institutions

ITA

190.13(c)(i)

Section 190.13 of the Act contains the rules for determining the capital of a financial institution for the purpose of Part VI of the Act. Paragraph 190.13(c) of the Act applies to a non-resident insurer. Subparagraph 190.13(c)(i) of the Act provides that the capital of a non-resident insurer includes the greater of its surplus funds derived from operations and its attributed surplus.

Subparagraph 190.13(c)(i) is amended to take into account amounts on which the insurer has paid branch tax under Part XIV of the Act, and amounts on which it was not required to pay that tax because of an election under subsection 219(5.2) of the Act. These amounts for preceding taxation years are subtracted from surplus funds derived

from operations. A current year amount is also subtracted if it arises because of the transfer of an insurance business where subsection 138(11.5) or (11.92) of the Act has applied to the transfer.

This amendment applies to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 204

Tax on Capital of Financial Institutions – Related Corporations

ITA

190.15(6)

Section 190.15 of the Act sets out rules for determining the capital deduction, for the purposes of Part VI of the Act, of a corporation that is a financial institution. Generally, under section 190.15 the members of a group of related financial institutions share a single \$10,000,000 deduction. For the most part, the Act's ordinary tests will apply in determining whether corporations are related for this purpose. Subsection 190.15(6) of the Act provides an exception: two corporations that would be related only because of the control of a corporation by Her Majesty or a right referred to in paragraph 251(5)(b) of the Act will not be treated as being related. This exception in turn contains an exception: if a taxpayer has a right referred to in paragraph 251(5)(b) with respect to shares, and it can reasonably be considered that the taxpayer acquired the right to avoid a limitation on a corporation's capital deduction, the corporations will be treated as being in the same relationship to each other as if the taxpayer owned the shares.

As a consequence of the amendment of paragraph 251(5)(b), the exception to the subsection 190.15(6) rule is amended. Rather than being treated as though the taxpayer in question owned the shares, the corporations will be treated as if the right the taxpayer acquired to avoid the limitation were an immediate and absolute right, and as if the taxpayer had exercised it. This ensures that the provision deals not only with rights to acquire shares, but also with rights to affect shares' voting rights.

This amendment applies after April 26, 1995.

Clause 205**Tax on Capital of Financial Institutions –
Application to Crown Corporations**

ITA
190.211

New section 190.211 of the Act, which applies after May 23, 1985, confirms that a prescribed federal Crown corporation is liable to tax under Part VI of the Act. Specifically, the new section provides that section 27 of the Act applies to Part VI with whatever modifications may be necessary. The main effects of section 27 are to treat income and property of Her Majesty that is administered by a Crown corporation that is an agent of Her Majesty as though they were the corporation's own, and to provide that the exemption in paragraph 149(1)(d) of the Act does not apply.

Clause 206**Computation of Taxable Capital Employed in Canada**

ITA
Part VI

Subsection 190.1(1.1) of the Act imposes an additional temporary Part VI tax on the taxable capital employed in Canada of life insurance corporations. This tax was set at a rate which, when combined with basic Part VI tax, would generate an appropriate amount of tax from the industry. Whether deferred realized gains and losses on investment properties are required to be included in or excluded from the Part VI tax base is determined in accordance with the provisions of Part VI. Deferred realized gains on investment properties would, if included in the base for the period during which the additional tax is in effect, impose a level of tax on the life insurance industry that was higher than intended. Thus, this amendment excludes such gains and losses from taxable capital employed in Canada for the period between February 25, 1992 and 1999 – that is, while the additional Part VI tax on life insurance corporations applies.

Clause 207

Agreement Respecting Liability for Tax

ITA

191.3

Section 191.3 of the Act allows a corporation to transfer its Part VI.I tax liability to a related corporation provided a joint agreement for the transfer is filed with the Minister of National Revenue. Such transfers are beneficial where the transferor corporation does not have sufficient Part I tax to utilize the deduction for Part VI.I tax that is provided under paragraph 110(1)(k) of the Act.

Among other conditions in subsection 191.3(1) of the Act, the transferor corporation must be related to the transferee corporation throughout both the transferor's taxation year for which the tax sought to be transferred would be payable, and the last taxation year of the transferee corporation ending at or before the end of that taxation year of the transferor. Where the transferee was incorporated in that taxation year of the transferor, the transferee will be unable to satisfy the requirement that it be related to the transferor throughout that year. A similar problem arises where the transferor is incorporated during the last taxation year of the transferee corporation. Paragraphs 191.3(1)(a) and (b) of the Act are amended to allow tax transfers in such circumstances provided that the transferor and transferee are related throughout the balance of each company's taxation year in which the transferor or transferee, as the case may be, were incorporated. This amendment applies to taxation years of the transferor corporation that begin after 1994. A special transitional rule extends the time limit for corporations to file an agreement to transfer a Part VI.I tax liability under subsection 191.3(2) of the Act where that agreement arises because of the amendment to paragraph 191.3(1)(a) or (b).

Section 191.3 is also amended so that corporations related only by reason of being controlled by Her Majesty will not be permitted to transfer their Part VI.I tax liability to one another. This amendment applies only to taxation years of the transferor corporation that end after April 26, 1995.

Clause 208**Part VI.1 – Application to Crown Corporations**

ITA

191.4(3)

New subsection 191.4(3) of the Act, which applies after 1987, confirms that a prescribed federal Crown corporation is liable to tax under Part VI.1 of the Act. Specifically, the new section provides that section 27 of the Act applies to Part VI.1 with whatever modifications may be necessary. The main effects of section 27 are to treat income and property of Her Majesty that is administered by a Crown corporation that is an agent of Her Majesty as though they were the corporation's own, and to provide that the exemption in paragraph 149(1)(d) of the Act does not apply.

Clause 209**Labour-Sponsored Venture Capital Corporations**

ITA

204.8

"specified active business"

Section 204.81 of the Act sets out the conditions for the registration of labour-sponsored venture capital corporations (LSVCCs). Under section 127.4 of the Act, individuals acquiring Class A shares issued by LSVCCs are entitled to a tax credit. Registered LSVCCs must ultimately invest sufficient amounts in qualifying securities issued by eligible business entities (as defined by section 204.8 of the Act), in order to avoid penalty taxes levied under section 204.82 of the Act. One of the requirements for a corporation or partnership to qualify as an "eligible business entity" is that it, or a related entity, carries on a "specified active business".

"Specified active business" is defined in section 204.8 as an active business (as defined by subsection 248(1) of the Act) carried on in Canada, where at least 50 per cent of the full-time employees of the business are employed in Canada and at least 50 per cent of the

wages and salaries paid to employees of the business are attributable to services rendered in Canada by employees.

The definition of "specified active business" in section 204.8 is amended to clarify that qualification at any time as a "specified active business" is determined with reference to those individuals employed at that time in respect of the business. This amendment is made only to be consistent with the wording of the proposed definition of "specified active business" in subsection 206(1) of the Act.

This amendment applies after 1988.

Clause 210

Foreign Property Tax

ITA
206

Section 206 of the Act imposes a tax on the amount of "foreign property" (as defined in subsection 206(1) of the Act) held by pension funds and others in excess of defined limits.

Subclauses 210(1) to (4)

ITA
206(1)

"foreign property"

"Foreign property" is defined in subsection 206(1) of the Act. Under paragraph (*d.1*) of the definition, foreign property includes certain shares and debts issued by Canadian corporations, if shares of the corporation may reasonably be considered to derive their value primarily from "portfolio investments" in foreign property. Under paragraph (*e*) of the definition, foreign property includes, except as prescribed by regulation, shares of the capital stock of mutual fund corporations (other than investment corporations or registered investments).

Paragraph (d.1) of the definition is amended to provide that any share or debt issued by a corporation that is a Canadian corporation is, subject to the exceptions described below, considered to be foreign property where shares of the corporation can reasonably be considered to derive their value primarily from foreign property (whether or not the foreign property is a "portfolio investment"). The purpose of this amendment and the exceptions described below are to remove the uncertainty regarding the application of the foreign property rules in cases where a Canadian corporation acquires minority or controlling interests in corporations deriving their value from foreign property. This amendment applies to property acquired after 1995.

Paragraph (d.1) of the definition is also amended so that shares and debts issued by a corporation that is a Canadian corporation are not considered as foreign property under that paragraph where the Canadian corporation has a substantial presence in Canada. The determination of substantial Canadian presence is set out in new subsection 206(1.1) of the Act.

Paragraph (d.1) of the definition is also amended so that it does not apply to shares or debts issued by mutual fund corporations, investment corporations or registered investments. Mutual fund corporations and investment corporations that are not registered investments are subject to a stricter foreign property regime as a consequence of amended paragraph (e) of the definition and Part L of the *Income Tax Regulations*. A "registered investment" is a trust or a corporation that is subject to tax under Part XI of the Act with respect to its own investments, so it is not appropriate for shares or debts issued by registered investments to be considered as foreign property.

Paragraph (d.1) of the definition is also amended so that certain shares, described in the new definition of "excluded share" in subsection 206(1), are not considered to be foreign property under paragraph (d.1). An "excluded share" is defined as:

- a share that is of a class of shares listed on a prescribed stock exchange in Canada, where no share of that class has been issued after December 4, 1985 (otherwise than pursuant to an agreement in writing entered into before 5:00 p.m. Eastern Standard Time on December 4, 1985),

- a share last acquired after 1995 that is of a class of shares listed on a prescribed stock exchange in Canada, where
 - the share would, if paragraph (d.1) of the definition of "foreign property" applied only in respect of portfolio investments, not be foreign property, and
 - no share of that class has been issued after July 20, 1995 (otherwise than pursuant to an agreement in writing made before July 21, 1995), and
- a share last acquired after 1995 as a consequence of the exercise of a right acquired before 1996 where the share would, if paragraph (d.1) of the definition of "foreign property" applied only in respect of portfolio investments, not be foreign property.

The first part of the "excluded share" definition corresponds to grandfathering formerly provided in paragraph (d.1) of the definition. The second part extends similar grandfathering for shares acquired after 1995 that are affected by the expansion of "foreign property" under amended paragraph (d.1) of the definition. The third part extends grandfathering with respect to shares acquired after 1995 pursuant to the exercise of a right acquired before 1996.

Except as noted above, the amendments to paragraph (d.1) of the definition apply to shares and debts that were acquired after December 4, 1985 (otherwise than pursuant to an agreement in writing made before 5:00 p.m. Eastern Standard Time on December 4, 1985). This coming-into-force provision corresponds to the coming-into-force with respect to the introduction of paragraph (d.1) of the definition.

Paragraph (e) of the definition is amended to provide that, except as prescribed by regulation, a share issued by an investment corporation (as defined by subsection 130(3)) is considered to be "foreign property", unless it was acquired before October 14, 1971. For this purpose, existing subsections 5000(3) and (4) of the Regulations set out the circumstances where such a share is not considered to be foreign property. This amendment, which is consequential to the repeal of subsection 206(3) of the Act, applies to months that end after June 1995.

Paragraph (g) of the definition "foreign property" is amended by adding the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development and the African Development Bank to the list of non-resident organizations the indebtedness of which is exempt from the definition of "foreign property". This amendment applies to months after March 1991, except that the exemption for the African Development Bank does not apply to months before 1997.

ITA

206(1)

"affiliate"

"carrying value"

"designated value"

"excluded share"

"investment activity"

"qualified property"

"significant interest"

"specified active business"

"specified proportion"

Subsection 206(1) of the Act is amended to introduce definitions of "affiliate", "carrying value", "designated value", "investment activity", "qualified property", "specified active business" and "specified proportion". These definitions are used in new subsections 206(1.1) and (1.2) of the Act, which are discussed in the commentary below.

Subsection 206(1) is also amended to introduce the definition of "excluded share", which is used only in amended paragraph (d.1) of the definition "foreign property" in subsection 206(1). It is discussed in the commentary above.

Subsection 206(1) is also amended to introduce the definition of "significant interest", which is used only in the new definition "investment activity". It is discussed in the commentary below on paragraph 206(1.1)(d) of the Act.

ITA

206(1.1)(a) to (c) and (1.2)

Paragraphs 206(1.1)(a) to (c) of the Act provide relief from the application of paragraph (d.1) of the definition "foreign property" with respect to shares and debts issued by corporations that are

Canadian corporations and have a substantial Canadian presence, in accordance with the tests below. Each of the paragraphs provides a test for substantial Canadian presence. Paragraphs 206(1.1)(d) and (e) of the Act, discussed in the commentaries below, provide additional tests for substantial Canadian presence.

In this context, a share or debt obligation issued by a corporation will not be considered to be foreign property of a taxpayer under paragraph 206(1.1)(a) where, at any time in any of the last 15 months beginning before the acquisition of the share or debt or at any time in the calendar year that includes the acquisition time, the "designated value" of "qualified property" of the corporation and "affiliates" of the corporation exceeded \$50 million. Definitions of these expressions are provided in amended subsection 206(1).

The \$50 million test is designed to be a one time test. If a share or debt satisfies the \$50 million test, a change in the circumstances of the issuing corporation will not result in the share or debt being reclassified as foreign property of the purchaser while continuously held by the purchaser.

Even if the \$50 million test is not met, paragraph 206(1.1)(b) allows a share or debt issued by a corporation to be temporarily considered as not being foreign property for up to 15 months after the acquisition. This relief applies in respect of shares or debts issued by a corporation, where the total "designated value" of "qualified property" of the corporation (and other corporations controlled by the corporation) exceeds 50 per cent of the lesser of the fair market value of all the corporation's property and its "carrying value" (as defined in subsection 206(1)). This test must be satisfied at any time in any of the last 15 months beginning before the time of the acquisition. As described below, a share or debt that is excluded from foreign property classification under paragraph 206(1.1)(b) can continue to be so excluded under paragraph 206(1.1)(c).

Paragraph 206(1.1)(c) also allows for a share or debt issued by a corporation to be excluded from foreign property classification for a taxpayer. In order for a share or debt to be so excluded at a particular time, it must satisfy the 50-per-cent test described above at any time in any of the first 15 months beginning after the time of acquisition. (In the event that a share or debt initially excluded from foreign property because of paragraph 206(1.1)(b) becomes foreign

property because it fails to satisfy paragraph 206(1.1)(c), relief is provided under existing subparagraph 206(2)(a)(iii) of the Act. This relief has the effect of ignoring such foreign property for 24 months for the purposes of computing the Part XI tax.)

Subsection 206(1.2) of the Act provides a specific rule, relevant for the purposes of applying the tests in paragraphs 206(1.1)(a) to (c) above, to take into account partnerships. For the purposes of these paragraphs, a member of a partnership is deemed not to own any interest in the partnership at any time. Instead, the member is deemed to own the member's "specified proportion" (for the first fiscal period ending at or after that time) of each partnership property owned at that time. The "specified proportion" of a member of a partnership for a fiscal period of the partnership, as defined in subsection 206(1), is the proportion that the member's share of the total income or loss of the partnership for the partnership's fiscal period is of the partnership's total income or loss for that period. However, where such income or loss for a period is nil, the "specified proportion" is computed as if the partnership had income for that period in the amount of \$1 million. The "carrying value" of the member's specified proportion of partnership property is likewise deemed to be the member's specified proportion of the carrying value of the partnership's property.

These amendments apply after December 4, 1985.

ITA

206(1.1)(d) and (1.3)

New paragraph 206(1.1)(d) of the Act provides the fourth of the five tests for substantial Canadian presence for a Canadian corporation. Unlike the other tests under paragraphs 206(1.1)(a) to (c) of the Act, this test is designed to apply on an ongoing basis. However, should a corporation cease to qualify under the criteria established in this paragraph, relief is provided under existing subparagraph 206(2)(a)(iii) for up to 24 months. Under paragraph 206(1.1)(d), a share or a debt obligation issued by a corporation will not be considered to be a foreign property of a taxpayer at a particular time where the particular time is after 1995 and three further conditions are met.

The first condition is satisfied where the issuing corporation was incorporated or otherwise formed under the laws of Canada or a province. Alternatively, where the corporation was not required to maintain an office under the laws under which it was incorporated, this condition is satisfied where the maintenance of an office in Canada is required under the constitutional documents of the corporation. (A corporation continued under the laws of Canada or a province is deemed to have been incorporated under the laws of Canada or the province pursuant to paragraph 250(5.1)(a) of the Act.)

The second condition is satisfied if the corporation actually does maintain an office in Canada.

The third condition is satisfied where any of the following criteria is met:

- the corporation employs more than 5 individuals in Canada full time otherwise than in connection with certain specified activities,
- another corporation that is controlled by the corporation employs more than 5 individuals in Canada full time otherwise than in connection with certain specified activities,
- the total amount incurred by the corporation for the services (other than services relating to an "investment activity" of the corporation or another corporation with which the corporation does not deal at arm's length) of employees and other individuals rendered in Canada in any calendar year that ends in the any of the last 15 months that end before the particular time exceeds \$250,000,
- the total amount incurred by another corporation that is controlled by the corporation for the services (other than services relating to an "investment activity" of the other corporation or another corporation with which the other corporation does not deal at arm's length) of employees and other individuals rendered in Canada in any calendar year that ends in the any of the last 15 months that end before the particular time exceeds \$250,000, or
- the corporation was incorporated or otherwise formed or continued from a jurisdiction outside Canada in the calendar year that includes the particular time and the total amount incurred by the corporation for the services (other than services relating to an

investment activity of the corporation or another corporation with which the corporation does not deal at arm's length) of employees and other individuals rendered in Canada in that calendar year exceeds \$250,000.

For the purposes of the third condition, it is relevant whether or not the issuing corporation or a corporation controlled by it (referred to below as the "relevant corporation") is considered to carry on an "investment activity". As defined in subsection 206(1), an investment activity generally includes any business the principal purpose of which is to derive income from, or to derive profits from the disposition of, a number of listed properties (shares, trust interests, indebtedness, etc.) set out in the definition. If the corporation is not considered to carry on a business for tax purposes, the holding of such properties for such purposes likewise would generally be considered to be an "investment activity".

However, there is an important exception from this definition where the properties so held are shares and debts issued by other corporations in which the relevant corporation has a "significant interest". Where this is the case, such shares and debts are ignored, provided that the primary activity of the other corporation is not an "investment activity". Under the definition "investment activity", a relevant corporation has a significant interest in another corporation where

- the relevant corporation is related (otherwise than because of a right referred to in paragraph 251(5)(b) of the Act) to the other corporation, or
- the relevant corporation holds shares of the capital stock of the other corporation and those shares represent at least 10 per cent of the fair market value of, and the votes at an annual general meeting associated with, all issued shares of the other corporation.

Subsection 206(1.3) of the Act also provides a relieving rule relevant in applying the third condition, above. For this purpose, an employee of a corporation is deemed to be employed in Canada if the corporation's permanent establishment (as defined by regulation) to which the employee principally reports is situated in Canada. In addition, services are deemed to be rendered in Canada to a corporation where the permanent establishment for which the services

are rendered is situated in Canada. Note, in this regard, that it is contemplated that services could be rendered to a corporation directly (i.e., where the relevant corporation employs the individual or contracts directly with the individual) or indirectly (e.g., where the relevant corporation engages another corporation the employees of which render services to the relevant corporation). For this purpose, it is proposed to define "permanent establishment" in the manner set out in draft section 8201 of the Regulations.

These amendments apply after 1995.

ITA

206(1.1)(e)

New paragraph 206(1.1)(e) of the Act provides the last of the five tests for substantial Canadian presence for a Canadian corporation. As under paragraph 206(1.1)(d) of the Act, this test is designed to apply on an ongoing basis. Should a corporation cease to qualify for relief under this paragraph, relief is provided under existing subparagraph 206(2)(a)(iii) of the Act for up to 24 months. Under paragraph 206(1.1)(e), a share or a debt obligation issued by a corporation will not be considered to be a foreign property of a taxpayer at a particular time where the particular time is after 1995 and all or substantially all of the property of the corporation is not foreign property.

This amendment applies after 1995.

ITA

206(1.4)

Paragraphs (f) and (h) of the definition "foreign property" in subsection 206(1) of the Act apply in the event that a taxpayer has a right to, or a non-ownership interest in, another property.

Paragraph (f) also generally applies where a taxpayer has property that is convertible into, or exchangeable for, another property. In these circumstances, the property owned by a taxpayer is generally treated as foreign property if the other property is foreign property.

New subsection 206(1.4) of the Act provides that, in these circumstances, the determination of whether property owned by a taxpayer is foreign property at any time is based on whether the other

property would be foreign property if it had been acquired immediately before that time. This provision is necessary because the tests in new paragraphs 206(1.1)(a) to (c) of the Act are predicated on there being an acquisition of a share or debt obligation.

This amendment applies after December 4, 1985.

ITA

206(1.5)

Subsection 206(1.5) of the Act is a rule which is provided for administrative convenience and ensures that properties owned by a single taxpayer are treated consistently for the purposes of the foreign property rules.

Subsection 206(1.5) provides that, where a share or debt obligation issued by a Canadian corporation (or an interest in or right to a share issued by a Canadian corporation) is excluded from classification as a foreign property of a taxpayer, any identical property held by the taxpayer is likewise excluded. This provision would be relevant, for example, if a taxpayer acquired shares of a corporation at the time the \$50 million test was satisfied and subsequently the same taxpayer acquired shares when the \$50 million test was not satisfied. In addition, this provision may also be relevant in the event that identical properties are acquired before 1996 and after 1995 and the property acquired before 1996 is not foreign property because of the timing of its acquisition.

Subsection 206(1.5) also provides that, where a taxpayer has an interest in or right to a share or debt issued by a Canadian corporation (or property that is exchangeable for or convertible into a share or debt issued by a Canadian corporation), the interest, right or property is not considered to be foreign property because of paragraph (f) or (h) of the definition "foreign property" in subsection 206(1) of the Act if the taxpayer actually owns another property identical to the share or debt that is not considered to be foreign property. This would be relevant, for example, where a taxpayer has an option to acquire a share issued by a Canadian corporation and also has an identical share that is not classified as foreign property because of subsection 206(1.1) of the Act. Where this is the case, there would be no need to test the classification of

the option as a foreign property on an on-going basis under new subsection 206(1.4) of the Act.

These amendments apply after December 4, 1985.

Subclause 210(4)

Registered Investments

ITA

206(2.01)

Subsection 206(2) of the Act imposes a 1 per cent per month tax on deferred income plans and certain other taxpayers, including "registered investments" (corporations and trusts registered under Part X.2 of the Act). The 1 per cent per month is generally applied to the cost of such a taxpayer's foreign property holdings that is in excess of 20 per cent of the cost of their total property. A registered investment is subject to Part XI tax because shares and interests issued by a registered investment are expressly excluded from other taxpayers' foreign property for the purposes of Part XI, no matter what the level of the registered investment's foreign content.

New subsection 206(2.01) provides limited relief for registered investments from the Part XI tax otherwise determined under subsection 206(2) of the Act. It is expected that registered investments will make use of the new rule only where they have significantly over-invested in foreign property, without regard to their status as registered investments. The rule is not designed to encourage registered investments to invest more in foreign property.

Relief for a registered investment from Part XI tax is provided only where there are interests in the registered investment (or shares of the capital stock of the registered investment where the registered investment is a corporation) that are held by taxpayers other than:

- deferred income plans, registered investments and other taxpayers described in paragraphs 205(a) to (f) of the Act,
- mutual fund corporations, investment corporations and mutual fund trusts, and

- trusts and partnerships to be prescribed, as set out below.

As a consequence of subsection 206(2.01), the maximum tax payable under Part XI by a registered investment in respect of a month is limited to the greater of:

- \$5,000 plus a specified percentage of the tax otherwise determined in subsection 206(2) of the Act in respect of the month. (The specified percentage is the percentage that the total fair market value of all interests/shares in the registered investment that are held by the taxpayers listed above is of the total fair market value of all the interests/shares in the registered investment.); and
- 20 per cent of the tax otherwise determined under subsection 206(2) in respect of the month.

It is intended to amend Part L of the *Income Tax Regulations* to prescribe certain trusts and partnerships so that they are included in the list of taxpayers above. A trust will be prescribed for this purpose where it is a pooled fund trust (as defined by subsection 5000(7) of the Regulations), it would be a mutual fund trust if the 150 beneficiary requirement set out in paragraph 4801(b) of the Regulations were ignored or it is a resource property trust (as defined by subsection 5000(7) of the Regulations) or a master trust described in paragraph 149(1)(o.4) of the Act. A partnership will be prescribed where it is a qualified limited partnership (as defined by subsection 5000(7) of the Regulations).

These amendments apply to months that end after 1992.

Subclause 210(6)

ITA
206(3)

Subsection 206(3) of the Act provides that, except as prescribed, a share of the capital stock of an investment corporation (other than a registered investment) acquired after October 13, 1971 by a taxpayer is deemed to be a foreign property of the taxpayer.

Subsection 206(3) is being repealed, strictly as a consequence of amended paragraph (e) in the definition "foreign property".

This amendment applies to months that end after June 1995.

Clause 211

Tax in Respect of Acquisition of Shares

ITA

206.1

Section 206.1 of the Act imposes a penalty tax on a pension fund or other deferred income plan that enters into an agreement to purchase shares at a price that may differ from their fair market value at the time that the purchase is to take place. The penalty is equal to 1 per cent of the fair market value of the shares for each month that the agreement is outstanding. The provision is intended to discourage tax-exempt entities from temporarily transferring shares to persons who may be able to receive dividends on those shares on a tax-favoured basis. The provision is also intended to apply where the same result could be achieved by a delay in the acquisition of a share by the tax-exempt entity. However, the policy underlying this provision is respected when no dividends are paid while the agreement to purchase is outstanding or when the dividends paid are actually received by the tax-exempt entity.

Section 206.1 is amended to replace the 1-per-cent penalty tax with a tax equal to the amount of dividends paid during each month that the tax-exempt entity is a party to the agreement minus the amount of the dividends that are received by the tax-exempt entity.

Amended section 206.1 applies to agreements entered into after 1992. A transitional rule for agreements entered into after 1992 and before April 26, 1995 limits the tax to the lesser of 1 per cent of the fair market value of the shares for each month that the agreement is outstanding and the amount of dividends paid on the shares during that time.

Clause 212**Retirement Compensation Arrangements – Transfers**

ITA

207.6(7)

New subsection 207.6(7) of the Act provides for the transfer of amounts between retirement compensation arrangements (RCAs) on a tax-neutral basis. It achieves this by providing that there is no inclusion required, or deduction permitted, in computing the income of any taxpayer under Part I of the Act where a lump sum amount is transferred directly from one RCA (the "transferor plan") to another RCA (the "transferee plan").

This means that, where such a transfer constitutes a payment out of the transferor plan to an employer or an individual, there is no requirement for the employer or the individual to include the payment in income under paragraph 12(1)(n.3) of the Act or under paragraph 56(1)(x) or (z) of the Act. Also, the individual is denied a deduction under paragraph 60(t), although consequential amendments to paragraphs 60(t) and (u) of the Act allow for the deduction when payments are ultimately received out of the transferee plan. (See the commentary on paragraphs 60(t) and (u) for further details.)

Similarly, where such a transfer constitutes a contribution to the transferee plan by an individual or an employee, subsection 207.6(7) denies any deduction that might otherwise be available under paragraph 8(1)(m.2) or 20(1)(r) of the Act.

Subsection 207.6(7) also clarifies that, for purposes of the 50-per-cent refundable RCA tax imposed under Part XI.3, an amount transferred under that subsection is considered to be a distribution from the transferor plan and a contribution to the transferee plan. This ensures that the obligation for the tax is transferred from the transferor plan to the transferee plan.

Amendments to the *Income Tax Regulations* will be proposed to provide that, where an amount is transferred under subsection 207.6(7), there is no withholding on the amount when it is paid out of the transferor plan or when it is paid into the transferee plan.

Subsection 207.6(7) applies to amounts that are transferred after 1995. However, it does not apply where the transferee plan has a non-resident custodian or is a foreign plan deemed by subsection 207.6(5) of the Act to be an RCA in respect of Canadian residents participating in the plan.

Clause 213

Tax on Investment Income of Life Insurers

ITA

211.1(3) and (4)

Part XII.3 of the Act levies a tax on the estimated investment income of life insurance companies. Subsection 211.1(3) of the Act provides a formula to determine an insurer's Canadian life investment income or loss for this purpose. Amounts A and D in this formula are determined by multiplying an annual interest rate by the maximum reserves that may be claimed by the insurer in respect of certain policies. Thus, these amounts include a full 12 months of imputed interest, regardless of the length of the insurer's taxation year.

The amendments provide for the proration of the imputed interest amounts where an insurer has a short taxation year. Specifically, amounts A and D in subsection 211.1(3) are amended to make them subject to new subsection 211.1(4) of the Act. Subsection 211.1(4) provides that where an insurer's taxation year is less than 51 weeks in length, the amounts otherwise determined for A and D are multiplied by the ratio of the number of days in the year (not including February 29th) to 365.

These amendments apply to the 1992 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 214**Tax on Investment Income of Life Insurers – Instalments**

ITA

211.3

Section 211.3 of the Act requires a life insurer to pay quarterly instalments of Part XII.3 tax. These instalments are based on the lesser of the insurer's Part XII.3 tax for the current taxation year and its Part XII.3 tax for the preceding year. The instalment rules are being amended to take into account the length of the insurer's taxation years, and to require monthly instalments. These amendments, which apply to taxation years that begin after 1995, will bring the instalment rules into closer conformity with the instalment rules for taxes payable under other Parts of the Act.

Existing section 211.3 is replaced by new subsections 211.3(1) and (2) of the Act. Subsection 211.3(1) requires a life insurer to pay monthly instalments of Part XII.3 tax equal to 1/12 of the lesser of (i) the estimated amount of annualized Part XII.3 tax payable by the insurer for the year, and (ii) the annualized tax payable by the insurer for the preceding year.

It should be noted that, in determining the instalments for the first taxation year of a life insurer formed by the amalgamation of two or more corporations, the Part XII.3 tax payable by those predecessor corporations for their last taxation years will be used in paragraph 211.3(1)(b) of the Act. This follows from the continuity rule in subsection 87(2.2) of the Act. Similarly, the continuity rule in paragraph 88(1)(g) of the Act will apply where a subsidiary that is an insurer is wound-up into its parent, and the continuity rule in paragraph 138(11.5)(k) of the Act will apply where an insurer transfers its business on a rollover basis to a Canadian corporation.

New subsections 211.3(1) and 211.5(2) of the Act refer to the annualized Part XII.3 tax payable by an insurer for a taxation year. New subsection 211.3(2) of the Act specifies how the annualized tax is to be calculated. If the insurer's taxation year is at least 51 weeks in length, its annualized tax is equal to its Part XII.3 tax for the year. Otherwise, the insurer's annualized tax is computed by multiplying its

Part XII.3 tax for the year by the ratio of 365 to the number of days in the year (other than February 29th).

Clause 215

Tax on Investment Income of Life Insurers – Interest on Instalments

ITA
211.5

Section 211.5 of the Act provides that certain provisions of Part I of the Act relating to assessments, interest, penalties, objections and appeals are also applicable to Part XII.3 of the Act. This section is renumbered as subsection 211.5(1).

New subsection 211.5(2) of the Act contains a rule relating to the application of subsection 161(2) and section 163.1 of the Act to instalments payable under Part XII.3. Subsection 161(2) provides for interest in respect of the late or deficient payment of instalments, while subsection 163.1 imposes a penalty in respect of late or deficient payments in some circumstances. New subsection 211.5(2) provides that, for the purpose of determining any interest or penalty, a life insurer is deemed to have been liable to pay monthly instalments based on the lesser of its annualized tax for the year and its annualized tax for the previous year. This differs from the instalment requirement in subsection 211.3(1) of the Act, in that the actual tax for the current year is used in place of the taxpayer's estimate of the tax.

The amendments to section 211.5 apply to taxation years that begin after 1995.

Clause 216**Tax on Income of Non-Residents**

ITA

212

Section 212 of the Act is the principal provision of the Act dealing with the 25-per-cent non-resident withholding tax. It enumerates the various payments to non-residents that are subject to this tax.

Subclause 216(1)**RCA Benefits to Non-Residents**

ITA

212(1)(j)

Paragraph 212(1)(j) of the Act imposes a 25-per-cent withholding tax on certain amounts including an amount paid or credited to a non-resident person on account of, or in satisfaction of, an amount described in paragraph 56(1)(x) of the Act. Paragraph 56(1)(x) refers to amounts received from a retirement compensation arrangement by a person (other than an employer) that can reasonably be considered to be in respect of a person's office or employment.

Paragraph 212(1)(j) is amended so that there is no requirement to withhold on amounts transferred after 1995 from one retirement compensation arrangement to another in accordance with subsection 207.6(7) of the Act.

Subclause 216(2)**Exemptions**

ITA

212(9)

Subsection 212(9) of the Act provides an exemption from withholding tax under Part XIII of the Act with respect to certain amounts of a trust's income that are paid or credited to a non-resident beneficiary under the trust and that would otherwise be

subject to withholding tax under paragraph 212(1)(c) of the Act. The exemption applies only to the extent that the trust's income derives from dividends or interest received by the trust from a non-resident-owned investment corporation or from certain artistic royalties. If no Part XIII tax would have been payable with respect to the dividends, interest or royalties if they had been paid directly to the beneficiary, no Part XIII tax is payable with respect to distributions from trust income to non-resident beneficiaries deriving from such dividends, interest or royalties.

Subsection 212(9) is amended so that the exemption also applies with respect to all interest allocated to a non-resident beneficiary that is received by a mutual fund trust maintained primarily for the benefit of non-resident beneficiaries, provided no Part XIII tax would have been payable with respect to the interest if it had been paid directly to the non-resident beneficiary.

This amendment applies to amounts paid or credited after April 1995 to non-resident persons.

Clause 217

Optional Method of Payment

ITA
216(4)

Section 216 of the Act allows a non-resident person to elect to be taxed under Part I of the Act on that person's net income from Canadian real property and timber royalties in lieu of paying Part XIII tax on the gross amount of such payments.

Subsection 216(4) of the Act permits an agent of a non-resident person to withhold on the basis of the net amount of such rents or royalties where the non-resident person has filed an undertaking with the Minister of National Revenue to file a return of income for the year under Part I. Where the non-resident person fails to fulfil the undertaking or pay the proper amount of tax within the time provided for payment, the non-resident's agent becomes liable for the Part XIII tax which should have been withheld.

The amendment to this subsection corrects an error made in the Fifth Supplement of the Revised Statutes of Canada, 1985 which referred to the non-resident recipient of the payments, rather than the person receiving such payments on the non-resident's behalf, as the one having the obligations described in paragraphs 216(4)(a) and (b) of the Act. This amendment also clarifies that an agent's liability will arise where a non-resident member of a partnership fails to fulfil the member's obligations under subparagraph 216(4)(b)(i) or (ii) of the Act.

Amended subsection 216(4) applies to amounts paid or credited after November 1991.

Clauses 218 and 219

Branch Tax

ITA

219

Part XIV of the Act imposes what is commonly known as the "branch tax" on corporations, other than Canadian corporations, carrying on business in Canada. Together with the amendment of section 219.1 of the Act (see the following commentary on section 219.1), this amendment to section 219 of the Act simplifies Part XIV and better conforms it to the general scheme of the Act. This amendment applies to taxation years that begin after 1995.

A non-resident corporation may carry on business in Canada either through a subsidiary corporation or by operating a branch here. Dividends paid by a subsidiary to its non-resident parent company are subject to non-resident withholding tax under Part XIII of the Act, as modified by any applicable tax treaty. In the case of a branch, Part XIV imposes what is intended to be a generally comparable tax: in broad terms, any after-tax Canadian earnings that are not reinvested in the corporation's Canadian business are subject to the branch tax.

The branch tax currently applies to every corporation carrying on business in Canada that is not a Canadian corporation. Under subsections 89(1) and 250(5.1) of the Act, a corporation is a

Canadian corporation only if it both: (1) is resident in Canada; and (2) was incorporated in (or continued into) Canada or has been resident here since June 18, 1971. As a result, a corporation may be resident in Canada without being a Canadian corporation, and thus be subject to the branch tax.

Subclause 219(1)

ITA
219(1)

Subsection 219(1) of the Act imposes liability to branch tax and describes the tax base. This amendment modifies subsection 219(1) so that the branch tax applies only to non-residents. The amendment also makes certain changes to the branch tax base.

The opening words of subsection 219(1) are amended to apply the tax only to corporations that are non-resident in a taxation year. It should be noted that the tax may apply to a non-resident corporation whether or not the corporation is carrying on business in Canada, although in most cases only Canadian-source business income and related taxable capital gains will be subject to tax.

The general structure of the branch tax base remains the same: the base is the amount, if any, by which the total of certain amounts, now listed in paragraphs 219(1)(a) through (g) of the Act, exceeds the total of other amounts, now listed in paragraphs 219(1)(h) through (l) of the Act. The following notes describe each of these provisions in turn, while the accompanying table shows the relationship between the current and the new rules.

Unless otherwise noted, all paragraphs referred to form part of subsection 219(1).

Part XIV base computation under existing and new 219(1)

Existing	Effect	New	Notes
219(1)(a)	Inclusion: amount taxable ("base amount")	219(1)(a)	
(a.1)	Inclusion: dividends deducted under 112	—	Unnecessary — 219(1) applies to non-residents only
(a.2)	Inclusion: dividends deducted under 115	(b)	
(a.3)	Inclusion: amounts deducted under 20(1)(v.1)	(c)	
—	Inclusion: non-taxable portion of gains on TCP used in Canadian business	(d)	New
—	Inclusion: grants, credits, etc. re. amount deducted under (k) (existing (j))	(e)	New
(a.4)	Inclusion: deferred gain on transfer of branch property	(f)	Can now transfer to any "qualified related corporation" — see 219(8)
(b)	Inclusion: previous year's investment allowance	(g)	

(c)	Inclusion: previous year's claim for dividends paid while resident	–	Unnecessary – 219(1) applies to non-residents only
(d)	Deduction: (where non-resident throughout year) net TCG from non-business TCP	–	Unnecessary – new 219(1.1) includes in Part XIV base only gains relating to Canadian business property
(e)	Deduction: federal taxes	(h)	Combines existing (e) and (f)
(f)	Deduction: provincial taxes	(h)	
(f.1)	Deduction: non-deductible tax interest and penalties	(i)	
(g)	Deduction: foreign tax credits	–	Unnecessary – 219(1) applies to non-residents only
(h)	Deduction: investment allowance	(j)	
(i)	Deduction: dividends paid while resident	–	Unnecessary – 219(1) applies to non-residents only
(j)	Deduction: non-deductible Crown royalties, etc.	(k)	
(k)	Deduction: excess of FMV of property transferred over PUC increase + "boot"	(l)	Can now transfer to any "qualified related corporation" – see 219(8)

Inclusions

Paragraph (a), which is substantively unchanged, includes in a non-resident corporation's branch tax base the corporation's taxable income earned in Canada for the year. This amount is cited in several other paragraphs, and is described for the purposes of subsection 219(1) as the corporation's "base amount". Paragraph (b) includes the amount of any dividends deducted because of section 112 and paragraph 115(1)(d.1) of the Act in computing the corporation's base amount. Paragraph (c) includes any amount deducted under paragraph 20(1)(v.1) of the Act, other than a portion of such an amount deductible because of the corporation's membership in a partnership.

New paragraph (d) adds a new inclusion to the branch tax base. In general, the taxable portion of any net gain realized by a non-resident corporation on the disposition of a taxable Canadian property used in a Canadian business will be included in the corporation's base amount. This provision adds to the base the non-taxable portion of any such gain. This further conforms the branch tax to Part XIII of the Act: when a Canadian subsidiary dividends the exempt portion of its capital gains to its non-resident parent, non-resident withholding tax will normally be imposed.

The other new inclusion in the branch tax base is new paragraph (e). Under the Act, certain royalties, tax payments and deemed proceeds of disposition in respect of natural resources are either included in a taxpayer's income or not permitted to be deducted. Where such an amount has increased the taxable income earned in Canada of a corporation subject to the branch tax, and is not otherwise deductible in computing the corporation's branch tax base, paragraph (k) allows the corporation to deduct the amount. In some cases, however, a corporation may receive a grant or credit in respect of such an amount. New paragraph (e) adds these grants and credits to the corporation's base amount for the year they are received, unless they have already been included in the base amount for that or another year.

Paragraph (f) is triggered by a non-resident corporation's disposition under paragraph (l) of its Canadian business property to a Canadian corporation. Any excess of the fair market value of the property over the corporation's proceeds of disposition is included in the

corporation's branch tax base. It should be noted that while the present paragraph (k) requires that the transferee be a subsidiary wholly-owned corporation of the non-resident transferor, paragraph (l) will allow the transferee to be any other "qualified related corporation" as defined in amended subsection 219(8) of the Act.

Paragraph (g) brings into the branch tax base any "investment allowance" claimed by the corporation under paragraph (j) for the previous taxation year.

Deductions

Paragraphs 219(1)(h) through (l) of the Act, which describe the deductions available in computing the amount subject to branch tax, are substantively the same as the corresponding provisions in the current subsection 219(1). Paragraph (h) allows a deduction for federal and provincial income taxes payable for the year (as well as for taxes under Parts I.3 and VI of the Act). Since new subsection 219(1.1) of the Act excludes from the branch tax base taxable capital gains on non-business property, the deduction in paragraph (h) is reduced by the portion of a corporation's taxes that may be considered to relate to such gains. Expressed as a ratio, the deductible portion of the taxes in question is to their total as the corporation's base amount is to the amount that would be its base amount if subsection 219(1.1) did not apply.

Non-deductible interest and penalties paid in the year under the Act or under a provincial income tax law are also deducted from the branch tax base, under paragraph (i). For simplicity these amounts are, unlike taxes, not prorated for the excluded portion of taxable capital gains.

Paragraph (j) provides a deduction for a corporation's "investment allowance". Section 808 of the *Income Tax Regulations* prescribes the amount of a corporation's allowance for a taxation year in respect of its investment in property in Canada: in very broad terms, the allowance is the total of the cost amount of the corporation's Canadian business property and its liquid business assets, less related debts and unpaid tax liabilities. Although its general form will remain unchanged, this Regulation will be revised to reflect the amendment of subsection 219(1) of the Act.

Paragraph (k) allows a corporation to deduct in computing the branch tax base certain royalties, tax payments and deemed proceeds of disposition in respect of natural resources that are non-deductible or are included in income under Part I of the Act. Such an amount may be deducted to the extent it is not already deductible from the base either as a tax or as part of the investment allowance.

If a corporation that is subject to the branch tax transfers property used in its Canadian business to another corporation, that property will cease to figure in the transferor corporation's investment allowance, and the transferor's branch tax liability will increase. To allow a non-resident corporation to switch from carrying on business through a branch to carrying on business through a subsidiary, without facing this increase in its branch tax, paragraph (l) provides a special deduction from the branch tax base.

Three conditions must be met in order to use the paragraph (l) deduction. First, the property disposed of must have been used by the transferor corporation immediately before the disposition for the purpose of gaining or producing income from a business it carried on in Canada. Second, the purchaser of the property must be a Canadian corporation that was, immediately after the disposition, a qualified related corporation of the transferor. This represents a modification of the current rule, which requires that the purchaser be a subsidiary wholly-owned corporation of the non-resident. Finally, the consideration taken back by the transferor on the disposition must include a share (currently shares) of the purchaser corporation.

Where these conditions are met, the transferor corporation can deduct under paragraph (l) an amount equal to any excess of (i) the fair market value of the transferred property over the total of (ii) any increase in the purchaser's paid-up capital as a result of the disposition, and (iii) the fair market value of any non-share consideration taken back by the transferor. As noted above, at the same time, paragraph (f) includes in the branch tax base any excess of the transferred property's fair market value over the transferor corporation's proceeds of disposition.

The amendments to subsection 219(1) apply to taxation years that begin after 1995. A transitional rule ensures that the provision operates appropriately despite the renaming of its paragraphs. In computing the tax base for a year beginning in 1996, the previous

year's investment allowance will normally have been deducted under current paragraph (*h*), rather than under new paragraph (*j*). The transitional rule, which applies to taxation years that begin in 1996, therefore adds a reference to paragraph (*h*) as it read in its application to the 1995 taxation year.

ITA

219(1.1)

Under subsection 219(1) of the Act, a non-resident corporation's taxable income earned in Canada for a taxation year (which the subsection terms the corporation's "base amount") is one of the elements of the corporation's branch tax base. In determining a non-resident's taxable income earned in Canada, paragraph 115(1)(*b*) of the Act provides that the only taxable capital gains and allowable capital losses to be taken into account are those arising from dispositions of what is defined as "taxable Canadian property" (TCP).

New subsection 219(1.1) of the Act restricts the definition of TCP for purposes of computing a non-resident corporation's branch tax base under subsection 219(1). For those purposes, paragraph 115(1)(*b*) is to be read without reference to subparagraphs (i) and (iii) to (xii). This includes in the subsection 219(1) base amount only those gains and losses that arose on capital property used in carrying on the non-resident corporation's business in Canada.

This new provision applies to taxation years beginning after 1995.

Subclause 219(2)

ITA

219(8)

"qualified related corporation"

Subsection 219(8) of the Act defines the term "qualified related corporation" for purposes of the special treatment of non-resident insurers under Part XIV of the Act. The amendment to this definition extends its application beyond corporations related to insurers, to apply for other purposes of Part XIV as well. This is particularly relevant to the transfer of Canadian business property by a non-resident under amended paragraphs 219(1)(*f*) and (*l*) of the Act, which require that the transfer be to a qualified related corporation.

With this amendment to subsection 219(8), a corporation resident in Canada is a qualified related corporation of a particular corporation if all of its shares (other than directors' qualifying shares) are owned by any one or more of:

- the particular corporation;
- a subsidiary wholly-owned corporation of the particular corporation;
- a corporation of which the particular corporation is itself a subsidiary wholly-owned corporation; or
- a subsidiary wholly-owned corporation of a corporation of which the particular corporation is itself a subsidiary wholly-owned corporation.

The term "subsidiary wholly-owned corporation" of a given corporation, as defined in subsection 248(1) of the Act, includes only a subsidiary all of the shares of which (other than directors' qualifying shares) are held directly by that corporation. In this context, however, the term has a broader meaning. If C Ltd. is a subsidiary wholly-owned corporation of B Ltd., and B Ltd. is itself a subsidiary wholly-owned corporation of A Ltd., then C Ltd. will also be a subsidiary wholly-owned corporation of A Ltd., for the purposes of subsection 219(8).

This amendment applies to taxation years that begin after 1995.

Clause 220

Corporate Emigration

ITA

219.1

Section 219.1 of the Act currently imposes a tax under Part XIV of the Act (commonly known as the "departure tax") where a corporation ceases to be a Canadian corporation. For the 1996 and subsequent taxation years, this amendment to section 219.1 applies the tax not to corporations that cease to be Canadian corporations,

but rather to corporations that cease to be resident in Canada. This ensures a better matching of the departure tax and the "branch tax" imposed under subsection 219(1) of the Act and, together with the amendments to that provision (see the commentary on subsection 219(1)), simplifies Part XIV and better conforms it to the general scheme of the Act.

Paragraph 128.1(4)(a) of the Act treats an emigrating corporation's taxation year as having ended immediately before the corporation ceased to be resident in Canada. Under amended section 219.1, such a corporation will be required to pay the 25-per-cent departure tax by the day it is required to file its return of income under Part I of the Act for that taxation year. The tax is payable on the fair market value of the corporation's property minus the total of the paid-up capital in respect of all of the corporation's shares immediately before year-end (paragraph 219.1(b) of the Act) and the corporation's debts and obligations, other than amounts payable in respect of dividends and amounts payable under section 219.1 itself (paragraph 219.1(c) of the Act). New paragraph 219.1(d) of the Act deducts a further amount in calculating the departure tax base where a corporation has paid tax under subsection 219(1) or section 219.1 for a taxation year that began before 1996. The need for paragraph 219.1(d) and its operation are explained below.

Pre-1996 Part XIV Tax – Paragraph 219.1(d)

The amendments to sections 219 and 219.1 of the Act shift the focus of both the subsection 219(1) branch tax and the section 219.1 departure tax in Part XIV of the Act from a corporation's status as a Canadian or other corporation to its residence. In most cases, this change will operate appropriately. In a few special circumstances, however, special relief is necessary to ensure that a corporation is not in effect taxed twice on the same amount.

For example, a corporation that is resident in Canada but not a Canadian corporation may have paid branch tax on any Canadian-source taxable income that was not reinvested in its Canadian business. If the corporation ceases to be resident in Canada after 1995, it will be subject to departure tax on the difference between the fair market value of its property and the total of its paid-up capital and its debts. To avoid taxing surplus on which the

corporation has already been taxed under Part XIV, the corporation's departure tax base should be reduced.

Similarly, a corporation that before 1996 ceases to be a Canadian corporation – perhaps by continuing abroad – and then ceases to be resident after 1995 will be subject to departure tax twice (and may be subject to branch tax in the interim as well). Again, the corporation's departure tax base on ceasing to be resident in Canada should be reduced to reflect the amounts on which it has already been taxed.

Paragraph 219.1(d) of the Act is intended to accommodate such cases, by applying to any corporation resident in Canada that has paid either the subsection 219(1) branch tax or the section 219.1 departure tax for a taxation year beginning before 1996 and after the corporation last became resident in Canada. In effect, paragraph 219.1(d) reduces the emigrant corporation's departure tax base by the total of the amounts on which the corporation has paid branch tax or departure tax.

More specifically, paragraph 219.1(d) reduces a corporation's departure tax base by 4 times the total of the amounts that the corporation would have paid under subsection 219(1) or section 219.1 for the years in question if sections 219.2 and 219.3 of the Act and any applicable international agreement or convention did not apply. By multiplying by 4 the (25 per cent) tax that would have been payable but for tax treaties and sections 219.2 and 219.3 (which reduce the rate of Part XIV tax to the relevant treaty rate), the provision establishes the base on which the tax was paid.

Clause 220.1

Effect of Tax Treaty

ITA

219.3

Section 219.3 of the Act reduces the rate of the departure tax imposed under section 219.1 of the Act. Section 219.3 applies where a corporation that is subject to the tax has become resident in a country whose tax treaty with Canada limits the rate of tax Canada may impose on dividends paid by a wholly-owned subsidiary in

Canada to its parent in that country. The provision limits the departure tax to that rate for dividends, unless it can reasonably be concluded that one of the main reasons the corporation became resident in that country was to reduce the tax payable under Parts XIII or XIV.

Section 219.3 is amended to reflect the amendment of section 219.1, under which that provision applies when a corporation ceases to be resident in Canada, rather than when it ceases to be a Canadian corporation. Section 219.3 is also simplified and updated.

This amendment applies to the 1996 and subsequent taxation years.

Clauses 221

Administration and Enforcement

ITA
220

Section 220 of the Act sets out a number of rules relating to the administration and enforcement of the Act.

Subclause 221(1)

Administration – Delegation

ITA
220(2.01) and 221(1)

New subsection 220(2.01) is added to the Act to provide that the Minister of National Revenue may administratively delegate the Minister's powers and duties under the *Income Tax Act* or *Income Tax Regulations* to an officer or class of officers in the Department. This new subsection replaces the requirement that such delegation be done by a regulation (Part IX of the *Income Tax Regulations*). This amendment will allow a more timely revision of the delegation of the Minister's powers and duties required by an amendment to the Act or a reorganization within the Department.

As a consequence of the addition of new subsection 220(2.01) to the Act, paragraph 221(1)(f) of the Act, which authorizes the making of regulations to delegate the Minister's powers and duties under the Act or Regulations, is repealed.

These amendments apply on Royal Assent.

Subclause 221(2)

Assessments

ITA

220(3.4)

Subsection 220(3.4) of the Act requires the Minister of National Revenue to reassess each taxation year of any taxpayer to take into consideration a late, amended or revoked election permitted by subsection 220(3.2) of the Act, even if the normal reassessment period for that year has expired. Subsection 220(3.4) is amended strictly as a consequence of the addition of new subsection 152(4.01) of the Act, and ensures that subsection 220(3.4) operates despite the limitations imposed by new subsection 152(4.01) on the Minister's power to reassess under subsection 152(4) of the Act beyond the normal reassessment period. Subsection 220(3.4) applies to elections in respect of the 1985 and subsequent years.

Clause 222

Regulations

ITA

221

Section 221 of the Act provides for the making and publication of regulations under the Act.

Subclause 222(1)

ITA

221(1)(d.1)

Paragraph 221(1)(d.1) of the Act enables the Governor in Council to make regulations requiring any person to provide their Social Insurance Number and other relevant information to any class of persons who are required to make an information return.

Paragraph 221(1)(d.1) is amended to extend this regulatory power to require any person or partnership to provide certain information, including their business number.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Subclause 222(2)

ITA

221(1)(f)

New subsection 220(2.01) of the Act authorizes the making of regulations to delegate the powers and duties of the Minister of National Revenue under the Act or the *Income Tax Regulations*.

As a consequence of the addition of new subsection 220(2.01), paragraph 221(1)(f) of the Act, which provides the same authority, is repealed.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Subclause 222(3)**Regulations – Incorporation by Reference**

ITA

221(4)

Subsection 221(1) of the Act provides the Governor in Council with regulatory-making powers to carry out the purposes of the Act. For greater certainty, new subsection 221(4) of the Act will expressly provide that regulations may give legal effect to documents (either legislative or non-legislative instruments) and other laws not included

directly in the *Income Tax Regulations* but that are incorporated as amended from time to time.

This amendment will come into force on Royal Assent and applies to all regulations made under the Act, whether made before, on or after that date.

Clause 223

Court Costs

ITA
222.1

New section 222.1 is added to the Act to ensure that where an amount is payable to Her Majesty because of an order, judgment or award of a court in respect of the cost of litigation relating to a matter to which the Act applies, various relevant provisions of the Act apply to that amount as if it were a debt owing by the person on account of tax payable under the Act. New section 221.1 applies to amounts that are payable after Royal Assent, including where those amounts became payable before Royal Assent.

Clause 224

Amounts Payable

ITA
223

Section 223 allows Revenue Canada to register with the Federal Court a certificate specifying an amount payable by a taxpayer under the Act. Paragraph 223(1)(b) of the Act is amended to add a reference to the *Unemployment Insurance Act*, which was repealed by Bill C-12.

This amendment is deemed to have come into force on June 30, 1996.

Clause 225

Collection Restrictions

ITA

225.1(1)

Section 225.1 of the Act imposes certain limits on Revenue Canada's collection of unpaid amounts for which a taxpayer has been assessed under the Act. In general, collection actions are limited for 90 days after the date of assessment, or until any objection or appeal by the taxpayer has been disposed of. Some special assessments, however, cannot be objected to by the taxpayer. These include reassessments under subsections 152(4.2) (to determine a refund or reduction of an amount payable), 169(3) (to dispose of an appeal with the taxpayer's consent), and 220(3.1) (to account for the cancellation of interest or penalties) of the Act. This amendment to subsection 225.1(1) excludes amounts owing under these special provisions from the collection limitations in section 225.1. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 226

Withholding Taxes

ITA

227

Section 227 of the Act provides special rules relating to source deductions and non-resident withholding tax under sections 153 and 215 of the Act respectively, and also deals with the application of certain Parts of the Act to particular persons and entities.

Subclause 226(1)

ITA

227(4) and (4.1)

Subsection 227(4) of the Act provides that amounts withheld from payments made by a payer in respect of taxes payable by the recipient are deemed to be held in trust for Her Majesty separate and

apart from the payer's own moneys and give rise to a lien and charge on property of the payer, from the time these amounts are withheld, whether or not they are kept separate and apart and whether or not the payer is in receivership, bankruptcy or liquidation.

Subsection 227(4) is amended effective June 15, 1994 to clarify that the Crown's deemed trust claim is a priority claim. The reference to the lien and charge on the property and assets of the payer is removed to ensure that the tracing requirements in relation to the property of the trust continue to be met in keeping with the jurisprudence on the priority status of the deemed trust, as it did before the enactment of the June 15, 1994 income tax technical amendments. New subsection 227(4.1) of the Act will provide that the deemed trust for the amounts withheld from payments, applies only to property of the payer equal in value to any such amount deemed to be held in trust and that was not paid to Her Majesty as and when required.

In addition, this change also clarifies that the deemed trust takes priority over a security interest of any secured creditor as defined in subsection 224(1.3) of the Act unless the security interest is a prescribed security interest. A prescribed security interest will include a mortgage interest in real estate. The proposed amendments respond to the recent decision of the Supreme Court of Canada in Her Majesty the Queen v. Royal Bank of Canada, which held that the current rules in the Act creating a deemed trust do not give priority to the Crown over certain assignments of inventory and that clearer language is required to assign absolute priority to the Crown. These amendments apply from June 15, 1994.

Similar amendments are made to the *Canada Pension Plan* and the *Unemployment Insurance Act* and a reference to new subsection 227(4.1) of the Act is added to the deemed trust exception in the *Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act* and the *Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act* at the same time as similar clarifications are made to the priority status of equivalent provincial deemed trusts.

Subclause 226(2)

Penalty

ITA
227(9.1)

Subsection 227(9.1) of the Act restricts the application of the penalty contained in subsection 227(9) of the Act for late or deficient remittances. Subsection 227(9.1) is amended to add a reference to the *Unemployment Insurance Act*, which was repealed by Bill C-12. This amendment is deemed to have come into force on June 30, 1996.

Subclause 226(3)

Assessment

ITA
227(10)

Subsection 227(10) of the Act empowers the Minister of National Revenue to assess a person for various amounts, including penalties and other amounts payable by the person in respect of the failure to comply with the various provisions of the Act. Subsection 227(10) is amended to apply to a person or partnership that is required to pay a penalty for failure to comply with the reporting requirements in respect of tax shelters under new subsection 237.1(7.4) of the Act.

This subsection applies after December 1, 1994.

Clause 227

Electronic Records

ITA
230(4.1) and (4.2)

Subsection 230(1) of the Act compels every person who carries on a business and every person who is required to pay or collect taxes to keep records and books of account. New subsection (4.1) requires a

person who keeps records in an electronic format to retain them in that format for the retention period referred to in subsection 230(4). New subsection (4.2) enables the Minister to exempt a person or a class of persons from the requirement to keep their records in an electronic format under such terms and conditions as are acceptable to the Minister.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 228

Definitions

ITA

231

"document"

The definition of "document" in section 231 of the Act is amended to remove certain items, which are now found in the definition of "record" in subsection 248(1) of the Act. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 229

Copies as Evidence

ITA

231.5(1)

Subsection 231.5(1) of the Act permits the making of copies of documents obtained in certain circumstances, and states that the copy made has the same probative force as the original document. This subsection is amended to enable the making of a print-out of an electronic document and sets out that this print-out has the same probative force as the original document.

This amendment applies to copies and print-outs made after Royal Assent.

Clause 230**Solicitor-Client Privilege – Examination of Documents**

ITA

232(3.1)

Subsection 232(3.1) of the Act provides a requirement to set aside and conserve a document in respect of which a lawyer has claimed solicitor-client privilege. This amendment clarifies that this requirement applies both to a claim made in the course of an on-site inspection under section 231.1 of the Act and to a claim made following a requirement in writing under section 231.2 of the Act. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 231**Information Return**

ITA

233.1

Section 233.1 of the Act requires every corporation resident in Canada or carrying on business in Canada in a taxation year to file an information return within six months from the end of the year. The return contains prescribed information regarding transactions with non-resident non-arm's length persons. A separate information return is required to be filed in respect of each such non-resident person.

Section 233.1 is amended in order to extend these filing requirements to partnerships and individuals (including trusts).

Subclause 231(1)

ITA

233.1(1)

New subsection 233.1(1) of the Act sets out a number of definitions for the purposes of the filing requirements in proposed new subsections 233.1(2) to (4) of the Act.

Reporting Person's Information Return

ITA

233.1(2)

New subsection 233.1(2) of the Act provides that a reporting person (see the definition in proposed new subsection 233.1(1) of the Act) must file an information return for a taxation year in respect of the reportable transactions (see the definition in proposed new subsection 233.1(1)) in which the reporting person and a non-resident non-arm's length person (or a partnership of which that non-resident person is a member) participated in the year. The return must be filed by the reporting person's filing-due date for the year. A separate return is required to be filed for each such non-resident person (or partnership).

New subsection 233.1(2) applies to taxation years and fiscal periods that begin after 1997.

Reporting Partnership's Information Return

ITA

233.1(3)

New subsection 233.1(3) of the Act provides that a reporting partnership (see the definition in proposed new subsection 233.1(1) of the Act) must file an information return for a fiscal period in respect of the reportable transactions (see the definition in proposed new subsection 233.1(1)) in which the reporting partnership and a non-resident non-arm's length person (or a partnership of which that non-resident person is a member) participated in the period. An information return must also be filed by a reporting partnership under this subsection if a member of the reporting partnership does not deal at arm's length with such a non-resident person.

The due date for filing the return is the same as the due date for filing a partnership information return under section 229 of the *Income Tax Regulations*. If no section 229 return is required to be filed, the reporting partnership's information return under proposed new subsection 233.1(3) must be filed by the day by which the section 229 return would be required to be filed if that section did apply to the reporting partnership.

Proposed new subsection 233.1(3) applies to taxation years and fiscal periods that begin after 1997.

De Minimis Exception

ITA

233.1(4)

New subsection 233.1(4) of the Act provides an exception to the reporting requirements in new subsections 233.1(2) and (3) of the Act. More specifically, it provides that a reporting person or partnership is not required to file an information return for a taxation year or fiscal period, unless the total of all amounts, each of which is the total fair market value of the property or services that relate to reportable transactions in which the reporting person or partnership and any non-resident non-arm's length person (or a partnership of which the non-resident person is a member) participated in the year or period, exceeds \$1,000,000. Also included in determining whether a reporting partnership has exceeded the \$1,000,000 threshold, is the value of property or services that relate to reportable transactions in which the reporting partnership and any non-resident person (or a partnership of which the non-resident person is a member) participated, where a member of the reporting partnership does not deal at arm's length with the non-resident person (or the partnership).

New subsection 233.1(4) applies to taxation years and fiscal periods that begin after 1997.

Deemed Member of Partnership

ITA

233.1(5)

New subsection 233.1(5) of the Act provides that, for the purpose of new subsection 233.1 of the Act, where a person is a member of a partnership which in turn is a member of a second partnership, the person is considered to be a member of both the first and the second partnership.

New subsection 233.1(5) applies to taxation years and fiscal periods that begin after 1997.

Clause 232**Foreign Reporting**

ITA

233.2(1) and (4)

Subsection 233.2 of the Act requires residents of Canada to file an information return with Revenue Canada, under certain conditions, if they have transferred or lent property to a non-resident trust. One of the conditions is that the trust be a "specified foreign trust" as defined in subsection 233.2(1). A trust is defined to be a specified foreign trust if it is non-resident and it either has a "specified beneficiary" or its terms permit the addition of beneficiaries who could be residents of Canada at the time of being so added.

Subsection 233.2(1) is amended to expand the definition of specified foreign trust to mean a non-resident trust where the terms or conditions of the trust or any arrangement in respect of the trust, such as a letter of wishes, permit any persons to become, because of the exercise of any discretion by anyone, beneficially interested in the trust at a later time. Whether or not such persons could be residents of Canada at the time they become beneficially interested in the trust is no longer relevant.

The amended definition of specified foreign trust in subsection 233.2(1) applies after November 1997.

Subsection 233.2(4) of the Act generally requires residents of Canada to file an information return where they have transferred or lent property to a "specified foreign trust", as defined in subsection 233.2(1) of the Act, and a "non-arm's length indicator" described in subsection 233.2(2) of the Act applies in respect of the transfer or loan. However, a non-arm's length indicator in respect of transfer or loan to a trust is not required where paragraph (b) of the definition "specified foreign trust" applies in respect of the trust. In general, a trust is a specified foreign trust if it is non-resident and it either has a "specified beneficiary" resident in Canada or its terms permit the addition of beneficiaries who may be resident in Canada at the time of being so added.

An "exempt trust" is excluded from the definition "specified foreign trust". Under paragraph (b) of the definition "exempt trust" in subsection 233.2(1), an exempt trust includes a trust established in connection with a superannuation, pension or retirement fund or plan or any fund or plan established to provide employee benefits. This exemption only applies where the trust is exempt from income tax imposed by the country of its residence and the trust is maintained primarily for the benefit of non-resident individuals.

Paragraph (b) of the definition "specified foreign trust" is amended, effective after November 1997, so that a non-resident trust (other than an exempt trust) will be a specified foreign trust whenever its terms or conditions allow persons to become beneficially interested in the trust because of the exercise of any discretion. Whether or not such persons can be resident in Canada at the time they become beneficially interested in the trust is no longer relevant. Similarly, where there is an arrangement (typically evidenced by a letter of wishes) in respect of such a trust which contemplates persons becoming beneficially interested in the trust because of the exercise of any discretion, the trust will likewise be a "specified foreign trust" under the amended definition.

Paragraph (b) of the definition "exempt trust" is amended so that a non-resident trust does not lose its status as an exempt trust under that paragraph only because the trust is maintained primarily for the benefit of Canadian resident individuals, provided that the trust is governed by an employees profit sharing plan. The expression "employees profit sharing plan" is defined in subsection 144(1) of the Act. This amendment applies to returns in respect of trusts' taxation years that begin after 1995.

Paragraph 233.2(4)(c) is amended so that, in all cases, a "non-arm's length indicator" is required in respect of a transfer or loan by a person in order for the person to be required to file an information return in respect of a specified foreign trust under subsection 233.2(4). Whether or not paragraph (b) of the definition "specified foreign trust" applies is no longer relevant. This amendment applies after November 1997.

Clause 233**Social Insurance Number**

ITA

237

Section 237 of the Act obliges every individual who is required to file an income tax return and does not have (and has not already applied for) a Social Insurance Number, to apply for a Social Insurance Number for the purpose of filing the return.

Section 237 of the Act has been restructured. Subsection 237(1) of the Act is amended to apply only to oblige such an individual to obtain a Social Insurance Number. New subsection 237(1.1) of the Act provides that the taxpayer's Social Insurance Number, as well as the taxpayer's business number (if applicable), must be provided in any return filed under the Act or at the request of any person required to make an information return in which either number is required.

Subsection 237(2) of the Act provides that any person making an information return has to make a reasonable effort to obtain the Social Insurance Number from the individual to whom the return relates. As a result of new subsection 237(1.1) of the Act, subsection 237(2) is amended to also require any person making an information return to make a reasonable effort to obtain, where applicable, the business number of the person or partnership to which the return relates.

These amendments apply on Royal Assent.

Clause 234**Tax Shelters**

ITA

237.1

Section 237.1 of the Act requires promoters of a tax shelter to obtain an identification number from the Minister of National Revenue before selling the tax shelter.

Subclauses 234(1) to (3)

ITA

237.1(1)

Subsection 237.1(1) of the Act provides definitions for the purposes of the tax shelter identification rules. Subsection 237.1(1) is amended to ensure that the definition of:

- "person" includes a partnership;
- "promoter" includes a person who accepts, whether as principal or agent, consideration in respect of a tax shelter; and
- "tax shelter" applies to a property (including, for greater certainty, a right to income) where the amounts represented to be deductible, if a person were to acquire an interest in the property within four years after the day the property is acquired, *equal* or exceed the cost of the property (after the deduction of prescribed benefits).

For the purpose of the definition of "tax shelter", the cost of property is to be determined without reference to new section 143.2 of the Act. Consequential amendments are to be made to section 231 of the *Income Tax Regulations* to ensure that the prescribed benefits include section 143.2 reductions for any limited-recourse amounts and at-risk adjustments in respect of the taxpayer's expenditure.

The amendments relating to the definitions of "person" and "tax shelter" apply after November 1994, and the amendment relating to the definition of "promoter" applies after December 1, 1994.

Subclause 234(4)

ITA

237.1(4) and (6)

Subsections 237.1(4) and (6) of the Act are amended, applicable after December 1, 1994, consequential on the other amendments to section 237.1 of the Act described in these notes.

ITA

237.1(5)

Subsection 237.1(5) of the Act requires that the promoters of a tax shelter make reasonable efforts to ensure that the identification number assigned to a tax shelter is provided to every person who acquires an interest in the tax shelter. Subsection 237.1(5) is amended to require that promoters:

- prominently display on the upper right-hand corner of any statement of earnings the identification number for the tax shelter, and
- prominently display a specific "tax shelter statement" on every written statement made after 1995 by the promoter that refers (directly or indirectly and either expressly or impliedly) to the issuance of an identification number for the tax shelter, as well as on copies of the information return.

The above display requirements are analogous to the display requirements in former subsection 231(5) of the *Income Tax Regulations*. This amendment applies after December 1, 1994.

ITA

237.1(6.1)

New subsection 237.1(6.1) of the Act provides that an amount may not be deducted or claimed by any person for any taxation year in respect of a tax shelter where a penalty (and interest thereon) under subsection 162(9) of the Act or new subsection 237.1(7.1) of the Act has not been paid or, where it has been paid, an amount on account of the penalty (and interest) has been repaid under subsection 164(1.1) of the Act or applied under subsection 164(2) of the Act.

This subsection applies after December 1, 1994.

ITA

237.1(6.2)

New subsection 237.1(6.2) of the Act provides to the Minister of National Revenue the authority to make such assessments,

determinations and redeterminations as are necessary to give effect to this subsection 237(6.1) of the Act. New subsection 237.1(6.2) applies after December 1, 1994.

ITA

237.1(7)

Subsection 237.1(7) of the Act imposes an obligation on promoters to make an information return in respect of tax shelters.

Subsection 237.1(7) is amended in two respects. First, a new requirement is imposed on promoters to provide either the Social Insurance Number or business number of investors in the tax shelter in the information return. Second, some grammatical and reference changes consequential on other amendments to section 237.1 are added.

These amendments generally apply after December 1, 1994; however, the requirement to furnish business numbers on information returns applies only on Royal Assent to this amendment.

ITA

237.1(7.1) to (7.3)

New subsection 237.1(7.1) of the Act provides that a tax shelter information return required under new subsection 237.1(7) of the Act is required to be filed with the Minister of National Revenue by the end of February of the year after the year in which the tax shelter was acquired. Where, however, the person required to file the information return in respect of a business or activity discontinues that business or activity in a calendar year, new subsection 237(7.2) of the Act provides that the return in respect of the calendar year is due the earlier of the day that is provided under new subsection 237.1(7.1) and the day that is 30 days after the discontinuance. Further, new subsection 237.1(7.3) of the Act provides that the filer of such an information return is to forward to each person to whom the return related two copies of the portion of the return relating to that person. These amendments apply after December 1, 1994.

ITA

237.1(7.4)

New subsection 237.1(7.4) of the Act is analogous to repealed subsection 162(9) of the Act. Subsection 237.1(7.4) imposes a penalty for failure to comply with the reporting requirements in respect of tax shelters under section 237.1 of the Act. The penalty that applies for failures to comply with reporting requirements is increased from 3 per cent to 25 per cent. This subsection applies after December 1, 1994.

Clause 235

Other Offences and Punishments

ITA

239

Section 239 of the Act establishes various offences involving wilful contravention and other contraventions that are considered serious.

Subclause 235(1)

ITA

239(1.1)

Subsection 239(1) of the Act creates an offence for making false statements, altering documents, etc. for the purpose of evading or reducing the tax payable by a person under the Act. It has been suggested that this subsection does not cover the situation where no tax is payable by the person but the same things are done for the purpose of obtaining or increasing a refund or credit under the Act. New subsection 239(1.1) of the Act avoids further uncertainty by creating a new offence for doing those things for the purpose of obtaining or increasing a refund or credit. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Subclause 235(2)

Prosecution on Indictment

ITA
239(2)

Subsection 239(2) of the Act provides that a charge for an offence under subsection 239(1) of the Act may be prosecuted by indictment, in which case an accused may be liable to a larger fine or a longer term of imprisonment. The amendment would make subsection 239(2) apply also to charges under new subsection 239(1.1) of the Act. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Subclause 235(3)

Offence With Respect to an Identification Number

ITA
239(2.3)

Subsection 239(2.3) of the Act provides that it is a criminal offence for a person who has been provided with an individual's Social Insurance Number pursuant to the Act or the regulations to use or communicate the number for other purposes. This subsection is amended to apply also with respect to a taxpayer or partnership's business number.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Subclause 235(4)

Penalty on Conviction

ITA
239(3)

Subsection 239(3) of the Act protects a person convicted of an offence under section 239 of the Act from being penalized later under sections 162 or 163 of the Act. The amendment rewords subsection 239(3) to make it clear that it also applies to persons

convicted under new subsection 239(1.1) of the Act. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 236

Taxpayer Information

ITA
241

Section 241 of the Act prohibits the use or communication of information obtained under the Act unless specifically authorized by one of the provisions found in that section.

Subclauses 236(1) to (7)

Various provisions in section 241 of the Act are amended to add references to the *Unemployment Insurance Act*, which was repealed by Bill C-12. These amendments are deemed to have come into force on June 30, 1996.

Subclause 236(5)

ITA
241(4)(d)(xiii)(B)

Subparagraph 241(4)(d)(xiii) of the Act allows taxpayer information to be provided to certain persons for the purposes of setting off sums of money owed by Her Majesty in Right of Canada against certain debts owed by the taxpayer. The taxpayer debts are those owed to Her Majesty in Right of Canada as well as those owed for taxes to Her Majesty in Right of a province if the province's tax is collected by the Minister of National Revenue. The amendment would remove the condition that debts owed to Her Majesty in Right of a province be for taxes collected by the Minister, thereby allowing taxpayer information to be provided for set-offs against any provincial debt.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Subclause 236(8)

ITA

241(4)(m)

Subsection 241(4) of the Act specifies various circumstances in which government officials may use confidential taxpayer information or provide it to others. New paragraph 241(4)(m) of the Act is consequential on the enactment of new subsection 164(1.8) of the Act, which authorizes the Minister of National Revenue to pay all or part of an individual's tax refund to the government of a province at the request of the individual. New paragraph 241(4)(m) allows a government official to provide taxpayer information to an official of a provincial government where the information will be used solely in management or administration of a program relating to payments authorized under new subsection 164(1.8). This information will allow provincial governments to identify those individuals who have requested that their tax refunds be paid to the province and the amount of the payments.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Subclause 236(9)

ITA

241(10)

"business number"

The definition of "business number" in subsection 241(10) of the Act is repealed as that term is now defined for the purposes of the Act in subsection 248(1) of the Act.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Subclause 236(10)**Definitions**

ITA

241(10)

"authorized person"

Section 241 of the Act prohibits the use or communication of information obtained under the Act unless specifically authorized by one of the provisions found in that section. Various provisions in section 241 are amended to add a reference to the *Unemployment Insurance Act*, which was repealed by Bill C-12. This amendment is deemed to have come into force on June 30, 1996.

Clause 237**Procedure and Evidence**

ITA

244

Section 244 of the Act provides a number of evidentiary and procedural rules dealing with the administration and enforcement of the Act.

Subclause 237(1)**Proof of Documents**

ITA

244(9)

An affidavit may be sworn by an officer who has charge of the appropriate records and, in such cases, a document annexed to an affidavit is a true copy of a document and is evidence of the nature and contents of the document. Subsection 244(9) of the Act is amended, effective on Royal Assent, to give this same effect to a print-out of an electronic document.

Subclause 237(2)**Proof of Documents**

ITA

244(13)

Subsection 244(13) of the Act provides that any document purported to be executed by an officer authorized by regulation to act for the Minister of National Revenue is deemed to have been executed by that officer unless called into question by the appropriate authority. This subsection is amended, as a consequence of the repeal of paragraph 221(1)(f) of the Act and the addition of subsection 220(2.01) to the Act, to replace the reference to a person authorized by regulation with a reference to a person authorized by the Minister.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Mailing Date

ITA

244(14)

Subsection 244(14) of the Act provides a rule presuming the date shown on a notice of assessment made by the Minister of National Revenue, or on a notice or notification made by the Minister under certain other provisions of the Act, to be the date of mailing. The scope of this provision is extended so that it also applies in respect of a notice of determination made by the Minister. Subsection 244(14) is also amended by replacing the reference to subsection 152(4) of the Act with references to subsections 152(3.1) and 165(3) of the Act.

Prior to an amendment made to subsection 152(4) of the Act by chapter 39 of the Statutes of Canada, 1990, subparagraph 152(4)(a)(ii) contained a reference to the day of mailing of a notice of assessment or a notification that no tax is payable. As a result of that amendment, the computation of the time limit is now contained in subsection 152(3.1). Subsection 244(14) is therefore amended to refer to subsection 152(3.1) instead of 152(4).

Under subsection 165(3) of the Act, the Minister shall, on receipt of a notice of objection, reconsider an assessment and vacate, confirm or vary the assessment or reassess. The Minister also has to notify in writing the taxpayer of the decision. The provisions of subsection 244(14) apply to a notice of assessment that has been varied under subsection 165(3) or to a reassessment because such notices are caught by the words "notice of assessment" but a notice that confirms an assessment is not. A reference to subsection 165(3) is therefore added to subsection 244(14), so that the date shown on a notice that confirms an assessment and that was sent in accordance with subsection 165(3) is presumed to be the mailing date of the notice.

These amendments to subsection 244(14) apply on Royal Assent.

Date when Assessment Made

ITA
244(15)

Subsection 244(15) of the Act provides that a notice of assessment sent by the Minister of National Revenue is deemed to have been made on the day of mailing of the notice of the assessment. The scope of that provision is extended so that it also applies to a notice of determination.

This amendment to subsection 244(15) applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 238

Transfer Pricing

ITA
247

Proposed new section 247 in proposed new Part XVI.1 of the Act is related to the issue of transfer pricing for property or services purchased and sold in cross-border transactions and the determination of amounts for tax purposes.

Definitions

ITA

247(1)

Proposed new subsection 247(1) of the Act defines a number of terms for the purpose of proposed new section 247 dealing with transfer pricing.

An "arm's length allocation" means an allocation of profit or loss that would have occurred between the participants in a transaction assuming they had been dealing at arm's length with each other. Similarly, an "arm's length transfer price" means an amount that would have been a transfer price in respect of a transaction assuming the participants in the transaction had been dealing at arm's length with each other.

The term "transfer price" is used in the definition "arm's length transfer price". It is defined as an amount paid or payable or received or receivable by a participant in a transaction as a price, a rental, a royalty, a premium or other payment for, or for the use, production or reproduction of, property or as consideration for services, as part of the transaction. For greater certainty, the term services includes the services of an employee and the insurance or reinsurance of risks.

The term "qualifying cost contribution arrangement" refers to an arrangement under which the participants collectively make reasonable efforts to establish a basis for contributing to, and to contribute on that basis to, the cost of producing, developing or acquiring any property, or acquiring or performing any services, in proportion to the benefits which each participant is reasonably expected to derive from the property or services as a result of the arrangement.

The terms "arm's length allocation", "arm's length transfer price" and "qualifying cost contribution arrangement" are relevant for the purposes of the penalty provision in proposed new subsection 247(3) of the Act for certain transfer pricing adjustments made by the Minister of National Revenue pursuant to proposed new subsection 247(2) of the Act.

A "tax benefit" means a reduction or deferral of tax or other amount payable under the Act or an increase in a refund of tax or other amount under the Act. this term is relevant for the purposes of proposed new subparagraph 247(2)(b)(ii) of the Act.

A "transfer pricing capital adjustment" of a taxpayer for a taxation year consists of two amounts. The first amount is the total of

- 3/4 of all reductions made under proposed new subsection 247(2) to the adjusted cost base of a non-depreciable capital property of the taxpayer or an eligible capital expenditure of the taxpayer and
- all reductions made under proposed new subsection 247(2) to the capital cost of a depreciable property of the taxpayer.

The second amount is relevant only if the taxpayer is a member of a partnership. It is equal to the total of all amounts each of which is that proportion of the total of

- 3/4 of all reductions made under proposed new subsection 247(2) to the adjusted cost base of a non-depreciable capital property of the partnership or an eligible capital expenditure of the partnership, and
- all reductions made under proposed new subsection 247(2) to the capital cost of a depreciable property of the partnership,

that the taxpayer's share of the income or loss of the partnership for the period is of the total income or loss of the partnership for the period.

If the income and loss of the partnership for the period are nil, the partnership is deemed to have income in the amount of \$1,000,000 for the purpose of determining the taxpayer's share of the partnership's income for the purpose of this definition.

Conversely, a "transfer pricing capital setoff adjustment" of a taxpayer for a taxation year contains the corresponding increases made under proposed new subsection 247(2) to the adjusted cost base or capital cost of capital property or the eligible capital expenditures of the taxpayer or the partnership, as the case may be.

A "transfer pricing income adjustment" of a taxpayer for a taxation year means the total of all amounts by which the taxpayer's income for the year would increase or the taxpayer's loss for the year from a source would decrease because of an adjustment made under proposed new subsection 247(2), assuming that was the only adjustment made under that subsection.

Conversely, a "transfer pricing income setoff adjustment" of a taxpayer for a taxation year means the total of all amounts by which the taxpayer's income for the year would decrease or the taxpayer's loss for the year from a source would increase because of an adjustment made under proposed new subsection 247(2), assuming that was the only adjustment made under that subsection.

The definitions "transfer pricing capital adjustment", "transfer pricing capital setoff adjustment", "transfer pricing income adjustment" and "transfer pricing income setoff adjustment" are relevant for the purpose of the penalty in proposed new subsection 247(3).

The "documentation-due date" is the date by which a person or partnership is required to have prepared its transfer pricing documentation under new subsection 247(4) of the Act. The documentation-due date for a taxation year of a person is the person's tax return filing-due date for the year. In the case of a partnership, for a fiscal period, it is the day by which its return under section 229 of the *Income Tax Regulations* is required to be filed for the period or would be required to be so filed if that section applied to the partnership.

Transfer Pricing Adjustment

ITA
247(2)

In general terms, proposed new subsection 247(2) of the Act requires that, for tax purposes, non-arm's length parties conduct their transactions under terms and conditions that would have prevailed if the parties had been dealing at arm's length with each other. Therefore, proposed new subsection 247(2) embodies the arm's length principle.

More specifically, proposed new subsection 247(2) applies in situations where a taxpayer or a partnership and a non-resident person with whom the taxpayer, the partnership or a member of the partnership does not deal at arm's length (or a partnership of which the non-resident person is a member) are participants in a transaction or a series of transactions and

- the terms or conditions of the transaction or series differ from those that would have been made between persons dealing at arm's length, or
- the transaction or series would not have been entered into between persons dealing at arm's length and may reasonably be considered not to have been entered into primarily for bona fide purposes other than to obtain a tax benefit.

Where these conditions are met, proposed new subsection 247(2) may adjust any amounts that, but for that subsection and the general anti-avoidance rule in section 245 of the Act, would have been determined for the purposes of the Act in respect of the taxpayer or the partnership. Such amounts may be adjusted to reflect the quantum or nature of the amounts that would have been determined if the participants had been dealing at arm's length with each other.

Proposed new subsection 247(2) applies to taxation years and fiscal periods that begin after 1997.

Penalty

ITA 247(3)

In general terms, proposed new subsection 247(3) of the Act provides that a taxpayer is liable to a penalty for a taxation year if the total amount of the taxpayer's "reduced" transfer pricing income and capital adjustments for the year exceeds the lesser of 10 per cent of the taxpayer's gross revenue for the year and \$5,000,000. A taxpayer's transfer pricing income and capital adjustments are reduced to the extent that they can reasonably be considered to relate to

- a transaction that is a qualifying cost contribution arrangement (see proposed new subsection 247(1) of the Act) and in which the

taxpayer (or a partnership of which the taxpayer is a member) is a participant, or

- a transaction in respect of which the taxpayer (or a partnership of which the taxpayer is a member) made reasonable efforts to determine arm's length transfer prices or arm's length allocations (see proposed new subsection 247(1)), and to use those prices or allocations for tax purposes.

They are further reduced by the total of the taxpayer's transfer pricing capital and income setoff adjustments, to the extent those adjustments can reasonably be considered to relate to transactions described above.

It should be noted, however, that no reduction may be made to a taxpayer's transfer pricing income and capital adjustments or to a taxpayer's transfer pricing income and capital setoff adjustments if the taxpayer (or a partnership of which the taxpayer is a member) has failed to document its transactions in accordance with the provisions of proposed new subsection 247(4) of the Act. Briefly, that subsection requires a taxpayer (or a partnership of which the taxpayer is a member) to document the transactions that are governed by proposed new subsection 247(2) of the Act by the taxpayer's (or partnership's) documentation-due date (see new subsection 247(1)) and to provide such documentation to the Minister of National Revenue within 3 months of a request therefor. If the taxpayer fails to comply with these requirements, proposed new subsection 247(4) deems the taxpayer not to have made reasonable efforts to determine arm's length transfer prices or arm's length allocations in respect of a transaction or not to have participated in a qualifying cost contribution arrangement.

If the taxpayer's "reduced" transfer pricing income and capital adjustments for the year exceed the lesser of \$5,000,000 and 10 per cent of the taxpayer's gross revenue for the year, determined without reference to proposed new subsection 247(2), subsections 69(1) and (1.2) and section 245 of the Act, the taxpayer is liable to a penalty for the year equal to 10 per cent of the amount of the "reduced" transfer pricing income and capital adjustments.

The penalty in proposed new subsection 247(3) of the Act applies to adjustments made under proposed new subsection 247(2) for taxation

years or fiscal periods that begin after 1998; however, adjustments made in respect of transactions completed before Announcement Date are not subject to the penalty.

Contemporaneous Documentation

ITA

247(4)

In broad terms, proposed new subsection 247(4) of the Act requires a taxpayer to document its transactions that are governed by proposed new subsection 247(2) of the Act, failing which the taxpayer will be liable to the penalty (assuming the taxpayer's "reduced" transfer pricing income and capital adjustments exceed the penalty threshold) in proposed new subsection 247(3) of the Act.

More specifically, proposed new subsection 247(4) deems a taxpayer not to have made reasonable efforts to determine arm's length transfer prices or allocations in respect of a transaction nor to have participated in a transaction that is a qualifying cost contribution arrangement, unless the taxpayer (or the partnership) makes or obtains certain records or documents by its documentation-due date (see new subsection 247(1) of the Act) for the taxation year (or fiscal period) in which the transaction is entered into. Put another way, the taxpayer's transfer pricing income and capital adjustments otherwise determined for the year will not be able to be reduced for purposes of calculating the penalty in proposed new subsection 247(3) unless certain documentation requirements have first been satisfied.

Similarly, in computing the penalty, the taxpayer's transfer pricing income and capital adjustment cannot be reduced by the taxpayer's transfer pricing income and capital setoff adjustments unless the documentation requirements are met for the transactions which give rise to the setoff adjustments.

The records or documents which are required to be made or obtained must provide a description that is complete and accurate in all material respects of

- the property or services to which the transaction relates,

- the terms and conditions of the transaction and how they relate to the terms and conditions of other transactions entered into between the participants,
- the identity of the participants and their relationship at the time the transaction was entered into,
- the functions performed, the property used or contributed and the risks assumed by the participants,
- the data and transfer pricing methods (for example, the comparable uncontrolled price method) considered and the analysis performed to determine the transfer prices or allocations of profits or losses or contributions to costs in respect of the transaction, and
- the assumptions, strategies and policies, if any, that influenced the determination of the transfer prices or the allocations of profits or losses or contributions to costs in respect of the transaction.

Where the transaction that is being documented spans more than one taxation year or fiscal period, the taxpayer or partnership must completely and accurately document each material change occurring in the subsequent year or period to the matters listed above. Such documentation is required to be made or obtained by the taxpayer's or partnership's documentation-due date (see new subsection 247(1) of the Act) for that subsequent year or period.

All the documentation that must be prepared under this subsection is required to be provided to the Minister of National Revenue within 3 months of service, made personally or by registered or certified mail, of a written request therefor.

Proposed new subsection 247(4) applies to adjustments made under proposed new subsection 247(2) for taxation years that begin after 1998. It should be noted, however, that a record or document made or obtained or provided to the Minister by the documentation-due date for the taxpayer's first taxation year (or the partnership's first fiscal period) that begins after 1998 is deemed to have been made, obtained or provided on a timely basis.

Partner's Gross Revenue

ITA

247(5)

Proposed new subsection 247(5) of the Act provides a rule to determine a taxpayer's gross revenue from membership in a partnership for the purpose of the penalty provision in proposed new subsection 247(3) of the Act. Under proposed new subsection 247(3), a taxpayer is not liable to a penalty for a taxation year unless the total of the taxpayer's "reduced" transfer pricing income and capital adjustments for the year exceeds the lesser of \$5,000,000 and 10 per cent of the taxpayer's gross revenue for the year, determined without reference to proposed new subsection 247(2) of the Act, subsections 69(1) and (1.2) and section 245 of the Act.

Under proposed new subsection 247(5), the taxpayer's gross revenue for a taxation year as a member of a partnership is that proportion of the partnership's gross revenue for a fiscal period ending in the year (computed as though the partnership were a taxpayer and without reference to any amounts received or receivable from other partnerships of which the taxpayer is a member in the year), that the taxpayer's share of the income or loss of the partnership from its activities for the period is of the total income or loss of the partnership from its activities for the period. If the income or loss of the partnership for the period are nil, the partnership is deemed to have income in the amount of \$1,000,000 for the purpose of determining the taxpayer's share of the partnership's income for the purpose of this subsection.

Proposed new subsection 247(5) applies with respect to adjustments made under proposed new subsection 247(2) for taxation years and fiscal periods that begin after 1998; however, proposed new subsection 247(5) does not apply with respect to transactions completed before Announcement Date.

Deemed Member of Partnership

ITA

247(6)

Proposed new subsection 247(6) of the Act provides that, for the purpose of proposed new section 247 of the Act, a person who is a member of a partnership which in turn is a member of another partnership is considered to be a member of that other partnership. It also provides that a member's share of the income or loss of the other partnership is deemed to be the amount to which it is directly or indirectly entitled.

Proposed new subsection 247(6) applies to taxation years and fiscal periods that begin after 1997.

Exclusion for Loans to Subsidiary

ITA

247(7)

Proposed new subsection 247(7) of the Act effectively exempts interest-free and low interest loans made by a corporation resident in Canada to a non-resident subsidiary it controls from the application of proposed new subsection 247(2) of the Act.

Proposed new subsection 247(7) applies to taxation years and fiscal periods that begin after 1997.

Provisions Not Applicable

ITA

247(8)

Proposed new subsection 247(8) of the Act ensures that where

- proposed new subsection 247(2) of the Act would apply to adjust an amount under the Act, assuming the Act were read without reference to section 67 and 68 and subsections 69(1) and (1.2) of the Act, and

- subsection 247(2) is, in fact, applied to adjust the quantum or nature of that amount, then sections 67 and 68 and subsections 69(1) and (1.2) shall not apply to determine the quantum of that amount.

Proposed new subsection 247(8) applies to taxation years and fiscal periods that begin after 1997.

Anti-avoidance

ITA

247(9)

Proposed new subsection 247(9) of the Act is an anti-avoidance rule intended to prevent taxpayers from artificially increasing their gross revenue for the purpose of the penalty in proposed new subsection 247(3) of the Act. It provides that, for the purpose of the gross revenue penalty threshold in proposed new subparagraph 247(3)(b)(i) of the act and the determination of a partner's gross revenue under proposed new subsection 247(5), a transaction or a series of transactions is deemed not to have occurred where a purpose of the transaction or series was to increase a taxpayer's gross revenue for the purpose of the penalty.

Proposed new subsection 247(9) applies with respect to adjustments made under proposed new subsection 247(2) for taxation years and fiscal periods that begin after 1998; however, proposed new subsection 247(9) does not apply with respect to transactions completed before Announcement Date.

No Adjustment Unless Appropriate

ITA

247(10)

Proposed new subsection 247(10) of the Act provides that adjustments (other than adjustments that result in or increase a transfer pricing capital or income adjustment of a taxpayer for a taxation year) shall not be made under proposed new subsection 247(2) of the Act unless the Minister considers that such adjustments would be appropriate in the circumstances.

Proposed new subsection 247(10) applies to taxation years and fiscal periods that begin after 1997.

Provisions Applicable to Part

ITA
247(11)

Proposed new subsection 247(11) of the Act ensures that the provisions of Part I of the Act relating to assessments, payments, penalties, refunds, objections and appeals apply to proposed new Part XVI.1 of the Act.

Proposed new subsection 247(11) applies to taxation years and fiscal periods that begin after 1997.

Clause 239

Definitions

ITA
248

Section 248 of the Act defines a number of terms that apply for the purposes of the Act, and sets out various rules relating to the interpretation and application of various provisions of the Act.

Subclauses 239(1) to (6)

"business number"

The definition of "business number" is currently in subsection 241(10) of the Act. That definition is moved to subsection 248(1) to apply for all purposes of the Act.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

"Canadian field processing"

Subsection 248(1) of the Act defines "Canadian field processing". Activities characterized as "Canadian field processing" are not treated

as "manufacturing or processing" (M & P) activities that qualify for the M & P tax credit or favourable treatment under the capital cost allowance rules. Instead, such activities result in an increase in a taxpayer's entitlement to the resource allowance under paragraph 20(1)(v.1) of the Act.

As currently defined, "Canadian field processing" includes the processing in Canada of raw natural gas at a natural gas processing plant to any stage that is not beyond the stage of natural gas acceptable to a common carrier of natural gas. Paragraph (g) ensures that natural gas is still considered to be "raw", despite having been processed at a field separation and dehydration facility.

Paragraph (g) of the definition is being amended so that natural gas will be considered to be "raw" only until it is accepted by a common carrier. This amendment clarifies the tax treatment of mainline straddle plants, which receive their gas from common carriers. The input received by such plants can consist, in part, of sweet natural gas which has only been processed at field dehydration and separation facilities and which otherwise would be treated as "raw" natural gas for the purpose of the definition. As a consequence, all of the processing activities of the small number of these plants in Canada will generally be treated as M & P activities rather than as Canadian field processing.

This amendment applies after 1996.

"cemetery care trust"

Subsection 248(1) of the Act is amended to introduce the definition "cemetery care trust". For further information, see the commentary on the new definition in subsection 148.1(1) of the Act.

This amendment applies after 1992.

"cost amount"

Subparagraph (e)(iv) of the definition of "cost amount" in subsection 248(1) of the Act is amended consequential on the rules that apply to a right to receive production to which a matchable expenditure relates ("right to receive production" and "matchable

expenditure" are defined in new section 18.1). This subsection applies after November 17, 1996.

"flow-through share"

Subsection 248(1) is amended to add the definition "flow-through share", which has the meaning assigned by subsection 66(15) of the Act. This amendment applies after November 1994.

"legal representative"

Subsection 248(1) of the Act is amended to add a definition of "legal representative" of a taxpayer. This definition contemplates persons who are acting in a fiduciary or a representative capacity. Specifically, trustees in bankruptcy, assignees, liquidators, curators, receivers of any kind, trustees, heirs, administrators, executors or committees as well as any other like person are considered to be legal representatives, provided that they administer, wind up, control or otherwise deal in a representative or fiduciary capacity with the taxpayer's property or property held for the taxpayer's benefit. Typically, legal representatives will be subject to the joint and several liability rules in subsection 159(1), as well as to the requirement to obtain a clearance certificate before distributing any property under their control.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

"lending asset"

A lending asset is a bond, debenture, mortgage, note, agreement of sale or any other indebtedness or a prescribed share but does not include a prescribed property. Section 6209 of the *Income Tax Regulations* sets out the shares and the properties that are prescribed for the purpose of this definition. The definition of lending asset is amended to refer to prescribed property rather than prescribed security. New subparagraph 6209(b)(iii) of the Regulations provides that certain leases will be prescribed property. The new definition of lending asset applies to taxation years that end after September 1997, and also to taxation years that end after 1995 and before October 1997 where the taxpayer elects to have the reserve provisions in new paragraph 20(1)(l) of the Act apply to those years.

"licensed annuities provider"

The definition "licensed annuities provider" is added to subsection 248(1) of the Act to make the definition of that term in subsection 147(1) generally applicable for all purposes of the Act. Under subsection 147(1), a "licensed annuities provider" is a person licensed or otherwise authorized under the laws of Canada or a province to carry on an annuities business in Canada.

The term is now used in the amended definitions of "qualified investment" in subsections 146(1) and 146.3(1) of the Act.

This definition applies after 1996.

"majority interest partner"

The new definition "majority interest partner" in subsection 248(1) of the Act replaces that formerly found in subsection 97(3.1) of the Act. The new definition differs in two respects from the existing one. First, it applies on the basis of the entitlement of a member of a partnership to the partnership's income from all sources, rather than that member's entitlement to income from each source. Second, it uses the concept of affiliated persons introduced in new section 251.1 of the Act in its aggregation of various partnership interests.

A person or partnership (the "taxpayer") will be considered to be a majority interest partner of a partnership at any given time where the taxpayer was entitled to more than half of the partnership's income from all sources for the immediately preceding fiscal period (or, where the partnership is in its first fiscal period, for that period), or would be entitled to more than half of the amount paid to all members of the partnership if it were wound up at that time. For the purposes of this rule, a taxpayer will be considered to hold each interest that the taxpayer or an affiliated person held in the partnership. (The concept of affiliated persons has been introduced in new section 251.1 of the Act, and is described in the commentary to that section.)

This definition applies after April 26, 1995.

"mineral"

"mineral resource"

Subsection 248(1) of the Act includes definitions of "mineral" and "mineral resource", which are used in the Act and the *Income Tax Regulations* for the purposes of determining a taxpayer's mining income.

The definition "mineral" is amended to eliminate a reference to "oil sands". This reference is redundant because of the existing reference in the definition to "bituminous sands". The definition "mineral" is also amended so that ammonite gemstone is included within its scope. Ammonite gemstone is a naturally occurring substance which is obtained from the fossils of ammonite (an extinct shellfish).

The definition "mineral resource" is likewise amended so that a "mineral resource" includes deposits from which the main mineral extracted is ammonite gemstone.

These amendments generally apply to taxation years that begin after 1996, subject to transition rules described below.

The first transition rule provides, for greater certainty, that the amendments with respect to ammonite gemstone do not result in the recategorization of previously-made resource expenditures or previously incurred resource costs. Thus, for example, pre-1997 exploration expenses for ammonite gemstone deposits will not be included in a taxpayer's cumulative Canadian exploration expense after 1996. In addition, the amendments will not result in the creation of depletion pools that are deductible under section 65 of the Act.

The second transition rule allows for the conversion, on a rollover basis, from another category of property for income tax purposes to either Canadian resource property or foreign resource property. The conversion normally takes place at the beginning of taxation years that begin after 1996. Note, in this context, that subsection 13(5) of the Act already provides rules to allow transfers on a rollover basis between different classes of depreciable properties (including transfers resulting from changes to the law or regulations).

The intention of the second transition rule, in conjunction with subsection 13(5), is to provide for a fresh start in connection with properties that are recategorized as a consequence of the changes with respect to ammonite gemstones. In this context, it is contemplated that these amendments may have the following effect:

- certain non-depreciable capital property (e.g., real property with substantial ammonite gemstone content) could be reclassified as "Canadian resource property" or "foreign resource property" for income tax purposes, and
- depreciable property of a class may be recategorized as depreciable property of another class.

"record"

Subsection 248(1) of the Act is amended to add the definition of record. The definition encompasses a variety of items, whether they are in writing or in any other form. This definition applies on Royal Assent.

"scientific research and experimental development"

The definition "scientific research and experimental development" in subsection 248(1) of the Act is amended to eliminate the cross reference to the definition in Income Tax Regulation 2900(1) and now contains the substantive definition of "scientific research and experimental development". Subsection 2900(1) of the *Income Tax Regulations* is being repealed contemporaneously.

Paragraph (d) of the definition has been amended for greater certainty to emphasize that, in applying the definition to a taxpayer, paragraph (d) includes only work undertaken by or on behalf of the taxpayer with respect to the items included in that paragraph where the work is commensurate with the needs, and directly in support, of work described in paragraph (a), (b), or (c) of the definition that is undertaken in Canada by or on behalf of the taxpayer.

The new definition applies to work performed after February 27, 1995. However, for the purposes of paragraphs 149(1)(j) and 8(b) of the Act, the new definition does not apply to work performed pursuant to an agreement in writing made before February 28, 1995.

"term preferred share"

Subsection 248(1) of the Act contains a definition of "term preferred share". These are shares the dividends on which are denied the intercorporate dividend deduction if received by a specified financial institution in certain circumstances. The definition contains a number of exclusions, including that in paragraph (d.1) for shares issued before April 22, 1980 by a corporation described in any of paragraphs 39(5)(b) to (f) of the Act (or an associated corporation) if the shares are listed on a Canadian stock exchange.

Paragraph (d.1) of the definition is amended so that instead of referring to a corporation described in any of paragraphs 39(5)(b) to (f), it refers to a corporation referred to in any of paragraphs (a) to (d) of the definition of "specified financial institution" in subsection 248(1) or a corporation whose principal business is money lending or purchasing debt obligations. This amendment is made as a consequence of amendments to subsection 39(5), and does not change the substance of the exclusion. This amendment applies after February 22, 1994.

Subclause 239(7)

Beneficially Interested

ITA
248(25)

Subsection 248(25) of the Act provides that a person or partnership is "beneficially interested" in a trust if that person or partnership has an absolute or conditional right to the income or capital of the trust, either directly from the trust or indirectly through one or more trusts, or if that person or partnership is otherwise regarded as "beneficially interested" in the trust.

Amended subsection 248(25) is divided into three paragraphs. New paragraph 248(25)(a) of the Act contains, with some minor modifications, former subsection 248(25). Minor changes have been made to the parenthetical words in that subsection and the look-through portion of the rule has been extended to include partnerships as well as trusts.

New paragraph 248(25)(b) of the Act expands the meaning of beneficially interested by deeming a person or partnership, under certain conditions, to be beneficially interested in a particular trust at a particular time where the person or partnership would not otherwise be regarded as beneficially interested in the particular trust at that time. More specifically, a person or partnership will be deemed to be beneficially interested in a particular trust at a particular time where the following conditions are met:

- the particular person or partnership is not otherwise beneficially interested in the particular trust at the particular time;
- because of the terms or conditions of the particular trust or any arrangement, such as an arrangement evidenced by a letter of wishes, in respect of the trust, the particular person or partnership might become, because of the exercise of any discretion by anyone, beneficially interested in the particular trust at the particular time or at a later time; and
- at or before the particular time either (1) the particular trust has acquired property directly or indirectly in any manner whatever from the particular person or partnership or another person or partnership now described in any of subclauses 248(25)(b)(ii)(A)(II) to (V) of the Act (a "connected person") or (2) the particular person or partnership or a connected person has given a guarantee on behalf of the particular trust or provided it with any other type of financial assistance.

If the above conditions are met, the particular person or partnership is deemed considered to be beneficially interested in the particular trust at the particular time.

New paragraph 248(25)(c) of the Act provides that a member of a partnership that is beneficially interested in a trust is deemed to be beneficially interested in the trust.

These amendments apply after November 1997.

Clause 240

Fiscal Periods –

Alternative Method Not Applicable to Tax Shelter Investments

ITA

249.1(5)

Subsection 249.1(5) of the Act provides that the "alternative fiscal-period method" in subsection 249.1(4) of the Act does not apply in the case of a business the expenditures of which are, or were, primarily tax shelters. Subsection 249.1(5) is amended, applicable to fiscal periods that begin after 1994, consequential on the enactment of the definition of "tax shelter investment" in new subsection 143.2(1) of the Act.

Clause 241

International Shipping Corporations

ITA

250(6)

Whether or not a person is resident in Canada for tax purposes is a factual question, subject to several special rules in the Act. One of these rules, in subsection 250(6) of the Act, provides additional certainty as to the residence of an international shipping corporation. Subsection 250(6) treats a corporation formed outside Canada as being throughout a taxation year resident in its country of incorporation and not in Canada, provided certain criteria are met. One requirement, in paragraph 250(6)(a) of the Act, is that the corporation's principal business in the year be the operation of ships in international traffic. A second, in paragraph 250(6)(b) of the Act, is that all or substantially all of the corporation's gross revenue for the year be from such operations.

For liability, registry or other reasons, a shipping corporation may place its ships in one or more separate wholly-owned subsidiaries. Revenue from the operation of ships currently does not include dividends from such a subsidiary. Nor does the holding of one or

more shipping subsidiaries clearly qualify as the operation of ships in international traffic.

Paragraph 250(6)(a) is amended to treat the holding of shipping subsidiaries as the equivalent, for these purposes, of carrying on a shipping operation directly. More specifically, amended paragraph 250(6)(a) requires that a corporation either meet the principal business test itself, or hold throughout the year shares of one or more wholly-owned corporations, each of which itself meets the tests in subsection 250(6). Provided the total cost amount to the parent corporation of its shares in such subsidiaries is throughout the year at least half the total cost amount of all its property, the parent corporation need not itself meet the principal-business test.

Similarly, paragraph 250(6)(b) is amended to count as international shipping revenue dividends from subsidiary wholly-owned corporations that themselves qualify as non-residents under the provision. Amended paragraph 250(6)(b) requires that all or substantially all of a corporation's gross revenue for the year under consideration be from:

- the operation of ships in transporting passengers or goods in international traffic;
- dividends from one or more subsidiary wholly-owned corporations (as defined by subsection 87(1.4) of the Act), each of which is treated by subsection 250(6) as resident in a country other than Canada throughout each of its taxation years that began after February 1991 (when subsection 250(6) was introduced) and before the last time at which it paid any of those dividends; or
- any combination of the above.

This amendment applies to the 1995 and subsequent taxation years.

Clause 242

Corporations – Control and Share Rights

ITA 251

Section 251 deals with the concept of arm's length and defines the circumstances in which persons, including corporations, will be regarded as related for tax purposes.

Subclause 242(1)

Amalgamations of Related Corporations

ITA 251(3.2)

New subsection 251(3.2) of the Act provides that where there is an amalgamation of 2 or more related corporations (other than related corporations that are related because of a right referred to in paragraph 251(5)(b) of the Act), the new corporation formed as result of the amalgamation will be considered to be related to each of the predecessor corporations. For example, assume ACo is a widely-held publicly-traded taxable Canadian corporation. ACo owns 65 per cent and 70 per cent of two taxable Canadian corporations MCo and NCo respectively. ACo, MCo and NCo amalgamate to form AmalCo. AmalCo is related to ACo, MCo and NCo. New subsection 251(3.2) applies to amalgamations that occur after 1996.

Subclauses 242(2) and (3)

ITA 251(5)(b)

Subsection 251(5) of the Act sets out rules that apply in deciding under subsection 251(2) of the Act whether persons are related, and in applying the definition "Canadian controlled private corporation" in subsection 125(7) of the Act. Paragraph 251(5)(b) of the Act describes how a person who has any of certain rights is to be treated in determining who controls a corporation. These rights – which may be held under a contract, in equity or otherwise, and may be immediate or future, absolute or contingent – are described in

subparagraphs 251(5)(b)(i) and (ii) of the Act. Those subparagraphs also describe the consequences of holding the rights.

Besides adding a clarifying time reference in the opening words of paragraph 251(5)(b), this amendment adds two new sorts of rights to those listed in the provision. New subparagraph 251(5)(b)(iii) of the Act provides that a person who has at any time a right to (or to acquire or control) voting rights in respect of a corporation's shares will be considered to be able to exercise those voting rights at that time. Similarly, new subparagraph 251(5)(b)(iv) of the Act provides that a person who has at any time a right to cause the reduction of other shareholders' voting rights will be treated as though those voting rights were so reduced at that time. Neither provision applies to a right that is not exercisable at the time in question because it can be exercised only on an individual's death, bankruptcy or permanent disability.

These amendments apply after April 26, 1995.

Clause 243

Affiliated Persons

ITA
251.1

New section 251.1 of the Act introduces the concept of "affiliated persons" or persons affiliated with one another. This concept, defined in new subsection 251.1(1) of the Act, is relevant to a number of other new and amended provisions of the Act, most notably those restricting the realization of losses on certain transfers. New section 251.1 applies after April 26, 1995.

Definition of Affiliated Persons

ITA
251.1(1)
"affiliated persons"

In order to understand new subsection 251.1(1)'s definition of "affiliated person," a few rules set out in new subsections 251.1(3)

and (4) of the Act for the purposes of that section should be noted at the outset. The most basic of these are that persons are considered to be affiliated with themselves, and that a person includes a partnership. In addition, the word "controlled" is to be read in this context as "controlled, directly or indirectly in any manner whatever."

New paragraph 251.1(1)(a) of the Act provides that two individuals are considered to be affiliated only where they are spouses of one another.

New paragraph 251.1(1)(b) of the Act describes a corporation as being affiliated with three categories of person. The first is a person by whom the corporation is controlled. The second are the members of an affiliated group of persons by which the corporation is controlled. An affiliated group of persons, under new subsection 251.1(2) of the Act, is a group of persons each member of which is affiliated with every other member. The third category are the spouses of persons in either of the first two categories.

EXAMPLE 1 – paragraphs 251.1(1)(a) and (b):

F, an individual, controls one corporation ("F Ltd") alone, and controls a second corporation ("FG Ltd") as a member of a group that consists of F and G, another individual. F is a spouse of a third individual, M, but not of G.

F and M are affiliated persons under paragraph 251.1(1)(a). F Ltd is affiliated with F under subparagraph 251.1(1)(b)(i), and with M under subparagraph (iii). Since F and G are not affiliated with one another (and are thus not an affiliated group), FG Ltd is not affiliated with either F or G.

Where a corporation is controlled by another corporation, or by an affiliated group that includes a corporation, new paragraph 251.1(1)(b) will treat the two corporations as being affiliated with one another. New paragraph 251.1(1)(c) of the Act lists several additional circumstances under which two corporations are affiliated persons. In the first of these, in subparagraph (c)(i), each corporation is controlled by a person, and those controlling persons are affiliated with one another. Similarly, where one corporation is controlled by a person and the other corporation is controlled by a group of persons, the two corporations are affiliated

under subparagraph (c)(ii) if each member of that group is affiliated with the person controlling the first corporation. Finally, under subparagraph (c)(iii) corporations that are controlled by groups of persons are affiliated if each member of each group is affiliated with at least one member of the other group.

It should be noted that the references in paragraph 251.1(1)(c) to groups of persons are not confined to affiliated groups of persons.

EXAMPLE 2 – subparagraphs 251.1(1)(c)(i) and (ii):

A Ltd, B Ltd, C Ltd and D Ltd are corporations. A Ltd is controlled by K, an individual. B Ltd is controlled by Q, K's spouse. C Ltd is controlled by a group made up of K and Q, and D Ltd is controlled by a group made up of B Ltd and C Ltd.

Since K and Q are affiliated, A Ltd and B Ltd are affiliated under subparagraph 251.1(1)(c)(i). A Ltd and C Ltd are affiliated under subparagraph (c)(ii), as are B Ltd and C Ltd. D Ltd is affiliated with B Ltd and C Ltd – the members of an affiliated group that controls D Ltd – under subparagraph 251.1(b)(ii). Are A Ltd and D Ltd affiliated? B Ltd and C Ltd are each affiliated with K, because K and Q form the affiliated group that controls both companies. Under subparagraph (c)(ii), therefore, A Ltd and D Ltd are affiliated.

EXAMPLE 3 – subparagraph 251.1(1)(c)(iii):

H, D and L, three individuals, control HDL Ltd as a group. J, E and M are spouses of H, D and L respectively, and control JEM Ltd as a group. Under subparagraph 251.1(c)(iii), HDL Ltd and JEM Ltd are affiliated, because each member of each group is affiliated with at least one member of the other group.

New paragraph 251.1(1)(d) of the Act specifies a circumstance, in addition to those addressed elsewhere in subsection 251.1(1), in which a corporation and a partnership are affiliated. Where a corporation is controlled by a group of persons each member of which is affiliated with at least one member of a majority-interest group of partners of a partnership (as defined in new subsection 251.1(2) of the Act), and each member of that majority-interest group of partners is affiliated with at least

one member of the group that controls the corporation, the corporation and the partnership are affiliated under paragraph (d). This rule resembles the rule in subparagraph 251.1(1)(c)(iii), described above.

Additional specific rules regarding the affiliations of partnerships are provided in new paragraphs 251.1(1)(e) and (f) of the Act. Under paragraph (e), a partnership and a majority-interest partner of the partnership are affiliated with one another. In determining whether a person is a majority-interest partner of a partnership, the new definition of "majority-interest partner" in subsection 248(1) of the Act looks not only to that person's interest, if any, in the partnership, but also to the interests of all persons affiliated with that person. In effect, then, any person affiliated with a person who holds a majority interest in a partnership is also a majority-interest partner, and thus is affiliated with the partnership under paragraph 251.1(1)(e).

Paragraph 251.1(1)(f) provides a set of rules for partnerships broadly comparable to those established for corporations in paragraph 251.1(1)(c). Two partnerships are affiliated under paragraph (f) if any of three situations obtains. First, under subparagraph (f)(i) the partnerships are affiliated if the same person is a majority-interest partner of both partnerships. Second, under subparagraph (f)(ii) the partnerships are affiliated if a majority-interest partner of one is affiliated with each member of a majority-interest group of partners of the other. Lastly, where there is a majority-interest group of partners of each partnership (or more than one such group), the partnerships are affiliated under subparagraph (f)(iii) if each member of a group of each partnership is affiliated with at least one member of a group of the other partnership.

The possibility that a partnership may have more than one majority-interest group of partners means that the interests of all partners – and of all persons affiliated with a partner – must be carefully considered in order to establish whether two partnerships (or a partnership and a corporation) are affiliated.

Affiliation Where Amalgamation or Merger

ITA

251.1(2)

New subsection 251.1(2) of the Act provides a special rule for the affiliation of corporations in relation to an amalgamation or merger. Where two or more corporations amalgamate or merge to form a new corporation, that new corporation and a predecessor corporation will in certain cases be treated as having been affiliated with one another. This deemed affiliation will arise where the new corporation and the predecessor would have been affiliated if the new corporation had existed before the amalgamation or merger, and if it had the same shareholders at that time as it had after the merger.

Definitions

ITA

251.1(3)

New subsection 251.1(3) of the Act sets out several special definitions relevant to the definition "affiliated persons" in new subsection 251.1(1) of the Act. Each of these special definitions applies for the purposes of section 251.1 of the Act.

"affiliated group of persons"

An affiliated group of persons is a group of persons each member of which is affiliated with every other member.

"controlled"

Under subsection 256(5.1) of the Act, the expression "controlled, directly or indirectly in any manner whatever" is given a particular meaning, commonly referred to as "de facto control". The definition of the word "controlled" in new subsection 251.1(2) of the Act imports this de facto control test into section 251.1 of the Act.

"majority-interest group of partners"

A majority-interest group of partners of a partnership is any group of partners that meets two criteria. First, the partnership interests of the

group members must be such that if one person held all of those interests, that person would be a majority-interest partner of the partnership. Second, there must be no subset of the group of which that would be true: it must be the case, in other words, that if the interest of any member of the group were set aside, and the remaining group members' interests were held by one person, that person would not be a majority-interest partner of the partnership.

EXAMPLE 4 – majority-interest group of partners:

5 partners each hold a 20-per-cent interest in a partnership. In this case, any group of 3 partners is a majority-interest group of partners of the partnership. A group of fewer than 3 will not represent interests that would, if they were held by one person, make that person a majority-interest partner, and thus will not meet the first criterion. A group of more than 3 will not meet the second criterion, since even if one member's interest were ignored, the interests of the remaining group members would, if held by one person, make that person a majority-interest partner.

Interpretation

ITA

251.1(4)

New subsection 251.1(4) of the Act sets out two rules relevant to the definition "affiliated persons" in new subsection 251.1(1) of the Act. These rules, which are also described in the commentary to that subsection, provide (for the purposes of section 251.1 of the Act) that persons are affiliated with themselves and that a person includes a partnership.

Clause 244

Meaning of Spouse

ITA

252(4)

Subsection 252(4) of the Act provides that the term "spouse" of a taxpayer generally includes a person of the opposite sex who has

been cohabiting in a conjugal relationship with the taxpayer for at least twelve months or who is a parent of a child of whom the taxpayer is also a parent. This amendment to subsection 252(4), which applies after 1992, ensures that the parental relationship in this case extends only to the parent's own children, and not, for example, to daughters-in-law or sons-in-law.

Clause 245

Contract Under Pension Plan

ITA

254

Section 254 of the Act contains rules that apply where a contract is issued in satisfaction of an individual's rights under a pension plan. Paragraph 254(a) of the Act provides that, where the rights provided under the contract are rights provided under the plan, any payment made under the contract is considered to be a payment from the plan. By virtue of paragraph 56(1)(a) of the Act, such payments are included in the recipient's income for the year in which they are received. Paragraph 254(a) also ensures that there is no immediate taxation by deeming the individual not to have received a payment from the plan as a consequence of the contract being issued. Where the rights provided under the contract are not rights provided under the plan, paragraph 254(b) of the Act deems the individual to have received from the plan an amount equal to the value of those rights. The individual is required, by virtue of paragraph 56(1)(a), to include that amount in income for the year in which the contract is issued.

Section 254 is amended to restrict its application to contracts issued before July 31, 1997. Similarly, paragraph 254(a) is amended so that it applies only where an individual acquired an interest in a contract before July 31, 1997. This change is consequential on the introduction of new subsection 147.4(1) of the Act, which deals with annuity contracts acquired on or after July 31, 1997. It should be noted that an amendment to a contract to which paragraph 254(a) applies will be subject to new subsection 147.4(2) of the Act if it materially alters the rights under the contract. The consequences of the application of that subsection are that there is an immediate income inclusion and paragraph 254(a) ceases to apply to payments

made under the contract. It should also be noted that, where a contract to which paragraph 254(a) applies is replaced by a new contract, new subsection 147.4(3) of the Act provides that payments under the new contract continue to be subject to paragraph 254(a) so long as the rights under the two contracts are not materially different. For further details, see the commentary on section 147.4 of the Act.

Finally, it should be noted that new subsection 147.4(1) of the Act applies only to contracts acquired in satisfaction of benefits provided to an individual under a registered pension plan. Consequently, neither paragraph 254(a) nor subsection 147.4(1) apply to defer immediate taxation in respect of annuity contracts acquired on or after July 31, 1997 under unregistered pension arrangements.

Clause 246

Acquisition of Control of a Corporation

ITA

256

Section 256 of the Act provides rules for determining whether corporations are to be considered to be associated and whether control of a corporation has been acquired for the purposes of the Act.

Subclause 246(1)

ITA

256(6)

The portion of subsection 256(6) of the English version of the Act after paragraph (b) is amended to delete the reference to "for the purposes of that provision", as the opening portion of that subsection no longer specifies that the rule it contains applies "for the purposes of any provision of this Act". This amendment applies to taxation years that begin after 1988.

Subclauses 246(2)**Acquiring Control**

ITA

256(7)

The opening words of subsection 256(7) of the Act are amended to add references to subsections 10(10), 13(21.2) and (24), 14(12), 18(15) and 40(3.4) of the Act, and the definition "superficial loss" in section 54 of the Act. After April 26, 1995, subsection 256(7) will apply to these provisions in addition to those to which it currently applies.

Subclauses 246(3) and (4)

ITA

256(7)

Subsection 256(7) of the Act describes the circumstances where control of a corporation is considered not to have been acquired, and certain circumstances where control of a corporation is considered to have been acquired, for the purposes of various provisions of the Act.

Subparagraph 256(7)(a)(ii) of the Act provides that control of a particular corporation or a corporation controlling it will not be considered to have been acquired because of a redemption or cancellation of shares where each person or each member of a group of persons that controls the corporation after the redemption or cancellation was related to the corporation immediately before the redemption or cancellation.

Subparagraph 256(7)(a)(ii) is amended, applicable to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years, in two ways. First, the amendments provide that a change in the rights, privileges, restrictions or conditions attaching to shares of the corporation or of a corporation that controls it will not result in an acquisition of control in circumstances set out in this subparagraph. Second, the amendments modify the circumstances in which these events will not result in an acquisition of control. **Each** person and each member of **each** group of persons that controls the corporation after the redemption or cancellation of shares or the change in the rights, privileges,

restrictions or conditions attached to the shares must be related to the corporation

- immediately before purchase, cancellation or change, or
- immediately before the death of a person where the shares were held immediately before the purchase, cancellation or change by an estate that acquired them on the death of a person.

Where there has been a merger of two or more corporations to form a new corporation, existing paragraph 256(7)(b) of the Act generally deems control of a predecessor corporation to have been acquired if the person or group of persons who control the new corporation did not control the predecessor corporation immediately before the amalgamation. This paragraph is amended to provide that control of a corporation is considered not to have been acquired solely because of an amalgamation unless it is deemed by either of two new rules, set out in subparagraphs 256(7)(b)(ii) and (iii) of the Act, to have been acquired.

The first of these rules, in subparagraph 256(7)(b)(ii), replicates existing paragraph (b). Where a person or group of persons controls the new corporation and did not control a predecessor corporation, that person or group is treated as having acquired control of that predecessor, and of any corporation it controlled before the amalgamation. An exception provides that this deemed acquisition of control will not apply if, had the person or group acquired all the shares of the predecessor before the amalgamation, the person or group would not have acquired control of the predecessor. This ensures that subparagraph 256(7)(b)(ii) does not deem an acquisition of control in certain internal reorganizations of corporate groups.

The second rule, in subparagraph 256(7)(b)(iii), deems control of a predecessor corporation and of each corporation controlled by it before the merger to have been acquired by a (hypothetical) person or group of persons unless

- the predecessor corporation was related, immediately before the merger, to each other predecessor corporation, or
- if one person had (again hypothetically) acquired all the shares of the new corporation received by shareholders of the predecessor

corporation (or of another predecessor that controlled that predecessor) on the merger in consideration for their shares of the predecessor corporation (or the other predecessor, as the case may be), that person would have acquired control of the new corporation, or

- subparagraph 256(7)(b)(iii) would otherwise deem control of every predecessor to have been acquired, in an amalgamation of two corporations and their controlled subsidiaries – as it would, for example, if two corporations of equal value amalgamated, with the shareholders of each taking back half the shares of the new corporation.

Amended paragraph 256(7)(b) of the Act applies to mergers occurring after April 26, 1995, except in certain specific circumstances. The amendment may also apply to a merger that occurred after 1992 and before April 26, 1995, where the corporation formed on the merger so elects within six months of Royal Assent to the amendment.

New paragraph 256(7)(c) of the Act deals with reverse takeover transactions which are illustrated by the following examples.

EXAMPLE A:

An individual, Mr. X, owns all the shares of a corporation (Lossco) which have a total fair market value of \$100,000. A profitable public corporation (Pubco) that is not controlled by any person or group of persons wishes to gain access to Lossco's non-capital loss carryforward. If Pubco were to acquire the shares of Lossco from Mr. X, various stop-loss rules in the Act would limit the deductibility of those losses. Instead, the shareholders of Pubco transfer their shares of Pubco to Lossco in exchange for shares of Lossco worth \$10,000,000. Mr. X relinquishes control of Lossco as a result of the exchange.

EXAMPLE B:

Assume the same facts as in example A except that, instead of transferring their shares of Pubco to Lossco in a share-for-share exchange, the shareholders of Pubco receive shares of Lossco in consideration for the disposition of their shares of Pubco on a

triangular amalgamation or merger of Pubco and a wholly owned subsidiary of Lossco.

In each of these examples, there is no acquisition of control of Lossco under the existing rules unless there is a group of shareholders that controls Lossco after the takeover. However, if new paragraph 256(7)(c) were applied to each of these examples, control of Lossco would be considered to have been acquired by a person or group of persons because the shares of Lossco issued to the shareholders of Pubco in each case are such that, if they had been acquired by one person, that person would have acquired control of Lossco. This paragraph applies to mergers that occur after April 26, 1995 except in certain specified circumstances.

New paragraph 256(7)(d) of the Act provides that no acquisition of control of a corporation will be considered to have occurred solely because of a share-for-share exchange where the person or group of persons who controlled the corporation before the exchange still controls it after the exchange. This paragraph applies to exchanges that occur after April 26, 1995.

New paragraph 256(7)(e) of the Act provides that no acquisition of control of a particular corporation will be considered to have occurred solely because of an exchange of shares of the particular corporation for shares of the acquiring corporation when the acquiring corporation is not controlled by a person or group of persons immediately after the exchange and the fair market value of the shares of the particular corporation is not less than 95 per cent of the fair market value of the assets of the acquiring corporation. Subject to specified grandfathering, new paragraph 256(7)(e) applies to exchanges that occur after April 26, 1995.

Subsection 256(7) is also amended to add a reference to new section 18.1 (relating to matchable expenditures) so that in the circumstances described in subsection 256(7) control of a corporation will not be considered to have been acquired for the purpose of subparagraph 18.1(10)(b)(ii) of the Act. This amendment applies after November 17, 1996.

Subclause 246(5)**Deemed Right of Exercise**

ITA
256(8)

Subsection 256(8) of the Act extends the circumstances in which an acquisition of control is considered to have occurred for the purposes of a number of provisions of the Act. If a taxpayer acquires a right referred to in paragraph 251(5)(b) of the Act with respect to shares, and it can reasonably be concluded that one of the main purposes of acquiring the right is to avoid the application of certain income tax provisions that are triggered by an acquisition of control, subsection 256(8) will apply. In its current form, the subsection treats the taxpayer, for the purposes of determining whether control of the corporation has been acquired, as having acquired the shares.

This amendment modifies subsection 256(8) in three respects. First, subsection 10(10), paragraph 88(1)(c.3) and subsections 181.1(7) and 190.1(6) of the Act are added to the list of rules whose avoidance will trigger the provision, and for the purposes of which it will apply. Paragraph 88(1)(c.3) relates to the so-called back-door butterfly which restricts the capital property eligible for the paragraph 88(1)(d) step-up in cost of assets acquired on certain corporate wind-ups. Subsection 181.1(7) limits the unused surtax credit that a corporation may deduct in computing its tax liability under Part I.3 of the Act after it has undergone an acquisition of control. Subsection 190.1(6) similarly limits a financial institution's deduction of unused Part I tax credits and unused surtax credits.

Second, new paragraph 256(8)(d) provides that an acquisition of a right that is intended to avoid the application of new section 251.1 of the Act will trigger its application by treating the right to have been exercised. Section 251.1 defines "affiliated persons" for the purposes of the Act – a definition applying in particular with respect to certain transfers giving rise to losses.

Third, the effect of subsection 256(8) is broadened, to correspond to an amendment to paragraph 251(5)(b). Under that amendment a right to affect the voting rights of shares is treated comparably to a right to acquire the shares themselves or to force their redemption. Amended

subsection 256(8) therefore treats the taxpayer as having exercised the right in question, rather than as having acquired the shares.

This amendment applies after April 26, 1995 except that the references to subparagraph 88(1)(c)(vi) and paragraph 88(1)(c.3) of the Act apply after February 21, 1994.

Corporations Without Share Capital

ITA

256(8.1)

Certain corporations, such as mutual insurers and some non-profit entities, are organized without share capital. New subsection 256(8.1) of the Act ensures that subsections 256(7) and (8) of the Act apply appropriately to such corporations. For the purposes of those subsections, a corporation without share capital is treated as having a single class of shares, and each participant in the corporation is treated as having an appropriate number of those shares, having regard to the total number of participants and the nature of their participation.

New subsection 256(8.1) applies after April 26, 1995.

Clause 247

Coming-Into-Force – Loss Deferral

This legislation includes a number of amendments to the Act to consolidate, simplify and improve the rules that defer losses that would otherwise arise on certain transfers of property. Those amendments generally apply to dispositions after April 26, 1995. Section 247 of this bill sets out certain exceptions to that effective date.

First, dispositions that occurred before 1996 pursuant to written obligations made on or before April 26, 1995, are not subject to the new loss-deferral rules.

Second, a disposition is also not subject to the new rules if it, or a series of transactions of which it formed a part, was substantially

advanced before April 27, 1995 (unless the transaction or series was intended to give an unrelated person access to a deduction or a balance of undeducted outlays, expenses or other amounts).

For these purposes, a person will not be considered obliged to acquire a property where the person may be excused from fulfilling the obligation because of any change to the Act or because of any adverse assessment made under the Act.

If a transferor who would otherwise be subject to either of these exceptions would nonetheless prefer to have the new rules apply to its disposition, the transferor may obtain that result by filing an election with the Minister of National Revenue before the end of the third month following the month in which this Act is assented to. It should be noted that such an election cannot be made in respect of only some of the listed amendments: if it is made, the election applies all of the new rules to the given transaction.

Clause 248

Depreciable Property – Transitional Rules

Income Tax Application Rules

20(1)

Subsection 20(1) of the *Income Tax Application Rules* (the "Rules") is designed to prevent the taxation of gains on depreciable property that accrued to December 31, 1971 (referred to as "valuation day"). This is achieved by providing that, where a taxpayer's capital cost of the depreciable property at the time of disposition is less than its fair market value on valuation day and less than the proceeds of disposition, the taxpayer's proceeds of disposition, for the purposes of section 13 of the amended Act and subdivision c of Division B of Part I of the Act (the subdivision that deals with capital gains and losses), will be the amount that is equal to the total of its capital cost to the taxpayer and the amount by which the proceeds of disposition exceed the fair market value of the property on valuation day. Where the taxpayer elects under subsection 110.6(19) of the Act in respect of depreciable property, the taxpayer is deemed by that subsection to have disposed of the property for proceeds of disposition equal to the amount designated in the election in respect of the property. If that

property were owned by the taxpayer without interruption since before 1972, the proceeds so determined are reduced by paragraph 20(1)(a) of the Rules. In turn, under paragraph 20(1)(c) of the Rules the taxpayer is treated for the purposes of the Act (other than for certain specified purposes such as, paragraphs 8(1)(j) and (p) and sections 13 and 20 of the Act) to have reacquired the property at a capital cost equal to the taxpayer's proceeds of disposition determined under paragraph 20(1)(a) of the Rules.

Paragraph 20(1)(c) of the Rules is amended, applicable to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years, to provide that, where a taxpayer has designated an amount for the election under subsection 110.6(19) of the Act that does not exceed 110 per cent of the fair market value of the property on February 22, 1994, the taxpayer is treated for the purposes of the Act (other than for the purposes of paragraphs 8(1)(j) and (p) and sections 13 and 20 of the Act) to have reacquired the property at a capital cost equal to the taxpayer's proceeds of disposition determined under paragraph 20(1)(a) of the Rules minus the amount by which the designated amount exceeds the fair market value of the property on February 22, 1994. In addition, paragraph 20(1)(c) of the Rules is amended, applicable to the 1994 and subsequent taxation years, to ensure that where a taxpayer elects under subsection 110.6(19) of the Act beyond 110 per cent of the fair market value of the property on February 22, 1994 the capital cost of the property on its reacquisition will be equal to the cost after the reacquisition determined under subsection 110.6(19) of the Act minus the valuation day "tax-free zone". This latter amendment ensures that the same penalty results on the subsequent disposition of the property as would have resulted if the property were not subject to the Rules.

Clause 249

Capital Gains Subject to Tax

Income Tax Application Rules 26(5)

Subsection 26(5) of the Rules is relevant for the purposes of computing the adjusted cost base of certain capital property held by a taxpayer (or a non-arm's length person) at the end of 1971. This rule has the effect of ignoring any increases in the adjusted cost base of

such property arising because of the operation of the stop-loss rules in paragraphs 40(2)(e), (e.1) and (e.2) and subsection 85(4) of the Act. Paragraph 40(2)(e) and 85(4) are being repealed, and subsection 26(5) of the Rules is thus being amended to ensure that it refers to those provisions as they read prior to their repeal. Reference is also being added to new subsection 40(3.3) of the Act, which largely replaces subsection 85(4) insofar as the latter provision applied to non-depreciable capital property.

Bond Conversion

Income Tax Application Rules 26(25)

Subsection 26(25) of the Rules provides for the determination of a taxpayer's cost of a bond owned on December 31, 1971 by the taxpayer and exchanged after May 6, 1974 by the taxpayer for another bond of the same debtor where section 77 of the *Income Tax Act* applied to the exchange. Subsection 26(25) of the Rules is amended as a consequence of the repeal of section 77 of the amended Act and the introduction of section 51.1 of the Act. New subsection 26(25) of the Rules applies to exchanges that occur after October 1994 which is the same effective date as the repeal of section 77 and the introduction of section 51.1.

Subclause 249(3)

Additions to Taxable Canadian Property

Income Tax Application Rules 26(30)

Subsections 26(1.1) to (29) of the Rules generally relate to the computation of a taxpayer's gain or loss on property the taxpayer held on December 31, 1971. New subsection 26(30) provides that these rules do not apply to a non-resident's disposition of a property that has become a taxable Canadian property because of amendments to the Act that take effect on April 26, 1995. Gains and losses on such property are computed according to a special proration rule in new subsection 40(9) of that Act, rather than according to these provisions of the Rules. New subsection 26(30) applies to dispositions that occur after April 26, 1995.

Clause 250

Deemed Trusts

Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act 67(3)

Subsection 67(3) of the *Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act* provides exceptions to the limitations against statutory deemed trusts in case of bankruptcy. The amendment to subsection 67(3) is consequential on the amendment to subsection 227(4) and the addition of subsection 227(4.1) of the *Income Tax Act*. This amendment comes into force on June 15, 1994.

Clause 251

Delegation

Canada Pension Plan 5(2)

New subsection 5(2) is added to the *Canada Pension Plan* to provide that the Minister of National Revenue may administratively delegate powers and duties of that Minister under the *Canada Pension Plan* to an officer or class of officers within Revenue Canada. This new subsection replaces the requirement that such delegation be done by a regulation under subsection 40(2) of the Act. This amendment will allow a more timely revision of the delegation of the Minister's powers and duties required by an amendment to the Act or a reorganization within Revenue Canada and is consequential to similar amendments to the *Income Tax Act*. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 252

Withholdings – Where Amount Not Deducted Not Remitted

Canada Pension Plan 23(3), (4) and (4.1)

Subsection 23(3) of the *Canada Pension Plan* provides for a deemed trust in respect of amounts deducted by an employer from the remuneration of an employee on account of *Canada Pension Plan* premiums. Subsection 227(4) of the *Income Tax Act* is being amended in response to the recent decision of the Supreme Court of Canada in Her Majesty the Queen v. Royal Bank of Canada, which held that current rules in the *Income Tax Act* creating a deemed trust do not give priority to the Crown over certain assignments of inventory and that clearer language is required to assign absolute priority to the Crown under that Act. Subsections 23(3) and (4) of the Act are similarly amended to provide such clear language for the purposes of the Act.

The amendments to subsections 23(3) and (4) are deemed to have come into force on June 15, 1994.

Clause 253

Electronic Records

Canada Pension Plan 24(2.1) and (2.2)

Subsection 24(1) of the *Canada Pension Plan* requires every employer paying remuneration to an employee employed by the employer in a pensionable employment to keep records and books of account. New subsection (2.1) of the Act requires an employer who keeps records in an electronic format to retain them in that format for the retention period referred to in subsection 24(2) of the Act. New subsection (2.2) enables the Minister to exempt an employer or a class of employers from the requirement to keep their records in an electronic format under such terms and conditions as are acceptable to the Minister.

These amendments apply on Royal Assent.

Clause 254

Judicial Authorization – Copies of Evidence

Canada Pension Plan 25(7) and (10)

The Minister of National Revenue must, pursuant to subsection 25(6) of the *Canada Pension Plan*, obtain judicial authorization before imposing a requirement that a person provide information related to unnamed third parties. Subsection 25(7) sets out the conditions that must be met before such judicial authorization is granted.

Paragraphs 25(7)(c) and (d) of the Act are repealed in order to simplify those conditions. The amendment to subsection 25(10) of the Act is consequential to the repeal of paragraphs 25(7)(c) and (d). Both these amendments, which apply on Royal Assent, are consequential to the repeal of paragraphs 231.2(3)(c) and (d) of the *Income Tax Act*, which were repealed in Bill C-36.

Copies as Evidence

Canada Pension Plan 25(12)

Subsection 25(12) of the *Canada Pension Plan* permits the making of copies of documents obtained in certain circumstances, and states that the copy made has the same probative force as the original document. This subsection is amended to enable the making of a print-out of an electronic document and sets out that this print-out has the same probative force as the original document.

This amendment applies to copies and print-outs made after Royal Assent.

Clause 255**Appeal Period –
Reasons for Decisions***Canada Pension Plan*

28

Current subsection 28(1) of the *Canada Pension Plan* provides that an appeal to the Tax Court of Canada of a decision on an appeal to, the Minister of National Revenue in respect of the liability for an employer or an employee to make a contribution under that Act, or as to the amount of such contribution, may be made solely by registered mail. The amendment broadens the available methods in which an appeal may be filed by providing that appeals made under that subsection be governed by the *Tax Court of Canada Act*. It also extends the time within which an application to appeal may be made to 90 days after the expiration of the 90-day appeal period currently provided in subsection 28(1).

These amendments apply in respect of appeals instituted after the fourth month following the month in which this Act receives Royal Assent.

New subsection 28(1.2) of the *Canada Pension Plan* provides that the provisions of section 167 of the *Income Tax Act* (extension of time to appeal) apply with the exception of paragraph 167(5)(a) of that Act. That paragraph limits the time within which an application for an extension may be filed to one year after the expiration of 90 days after the mailing of a notice of objection. The balance of section 167 deals with the contents of the application and how that application is made.

Subsection 28(2) of the *Canada Pension Plan* provides that when the Tax Court of Canada hears an appeal made by an employee or an employer affected by a decision on an appeal to, the Minister under section 27 or 27.1 of the Act, the Tax Court must notify in writing the parties to the appeal of the reasons for its decision. In order to achieve greater procedural harmonization between income tax and Canada pension plan matters, this amendment removes the obligation on the Tax Court to provide written reasons for its decision. Subsection 28(2) will therefore be similar, in that respect, to

section 18.23 of the *Tax Court of Canada Act*, which governs appeals under the *Income Tax Act* that are subject to the informal procedure.

New subsection 28(1.2) and amended subsection 28(2) apply on Royal Assent.

Clause 256

Regulations for Delegation

Canada Pension Plan
40(2)

Subsection 40(2) of the *Canada Pension Plan* authorizes the making of regulations to delegate the powers and duties of the Minister of National Revenue under Part I of the Act. This subsection is repealed because of the addition of new subsection 5(2) to the Act, which allows for the delegation of powers and duties of the Minister on an administrative basis. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 257

Definitions

Children's Special Allowances Act
2
"Minister"

The definition of Minister in section 2 of the *Children's Special Allowances Act* is changed to the Minister of National Revenue, applicable after August 27, 1995, as a result of the transfer of the administration of this Act from the Department of National Health and Welfare to the Department of National Revenue.

Clause 258**Release of Information***Children's Special Allowances Act*
10(2)

Subsection 10(2) of the *Children's Special Allowances Act* (CSA) allows for the provision of information obtained by the Department of National Health and Welfare in the course of the administration of the Act and the regulations or the carrying out of an agreement entered into under section 11 of the Act, to various departments. The subsection is being amended to delete the reference to the Department of National Health and Welfare as the Department of National Revenue will be responsible for the administration of that Act. In addition, the subsection is amended to remove the list of Departments which receive information under that Act and will now restrict the communication of information to any person who needs the information for the purposes of the administration of that Act or the *Income Tax Act*.

These amendments apply after August 27, 1995.

Clause 259**Agreements with Provinces for Exchange of Information***Children's Special Allowances Act*
11

Section 11 of the *Children's Special Allowances Act* allows the Minister of Health and Welfare to enter into agreements with the provinces for the exchange of information. The section is amended, applicable after August 27, 1995, to remove the reference to the Department of National Health and Welfare as a result of the transfer of the administration of this Act to the Department of National Revenue.

Clause 260

Deemed Trusts

Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act 18.3(2)

Subsection 18.3(2) of the *Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act* provides exceptions to the limitations against statutory deemed trusts in the case of certain bankruptcies. The amendment to subsection 18.3(2) is consequential on the amendment to subsection 227(4) and the addition of subsection 227(4.1) of the *Income Tax Act*.

This amendment is deemed to have come into force on September 30, 1997.

Clause 261

Issuance of Permits

Cultural Property Export and Import Act 39

Section 39 of the *Cultural Property Export and Import Act* empowers the Governor in Council, on the recommendation of the Minister of Heritage and the Secretary of State for External Affairs, to make regulations to deal with a number of matters. Paragraph 39(a) of the Act allows regulations to be made to deal with the issuance of permits under the Act.

The federal budget of 1990 provided that the fair market value, for purposes of the *Income Tax Act*, of objects proposed to be donated to certain institutions be determined by the Canadian Cultural Property Export Review Board. Amendments were made to both the *Income Tax Act* and the *Cultural Property Export and Import Act* to implement this measure.

This amendment to paragraph 39(a), which is consequential on those previous amendments, is intended to ensure that, in making such determinations and issuing certificates, the Canadian Cultural Property

Export Review Board may obtain information, documentation and undertaking from applicants, and may establish procedure and conditions to be followed as is necessary to their mandate.

This amendment is effective as of Royal Assent.

Clause 262

Delegation

Customs Act

2(4)

New subsection 2(4) is added to the *Customs Act* to provide that the Minister of National Revenue may administratively delegate powers and duties of the Minister under that Act to an officer or class of officers in Revenue Canada. This new subsection replaces the requirement that such delegation be done by a regulation under section 134 or paragraph 164(1)(a) of the Act. This amendment will allow a more timely revision of the delegation of powers and duties of the Minister required by an amendment to the Act or a reorganization within Revenue Canada and is consequential to similar amendments to the *Income Tax Act*. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 263

Ministerial Order for Delegation

Customs Act

134

Section 134 of the *Customs Act* authorizes the Minister of National Revenue to delegate powers and duties of the Minister under sections 131 to 133 of the Act by Ministerial order. This section is repealed because of the addition of new subsection 2(4) to the Act, which allows for the delegation of powers and duties of the Minister on an administrative basis. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 264

Regulations for Delegation

Customs Act

164(1)(a)

Paragraph 164(1)(a) of the *Customs Act* authorizes the making of regulations to delegate powers and duties of the Minister of National Revenue under that Act. This paragraph is repealed because of the addition of new subsection 2(4) to the Act, which allows for the delegation of powers and duties of the Minister on an administrative basis. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 265

Goods Assisting Persons with Disabilities

Customs Tariff

Code 2531 of Schedule II of the *Customs Tariff*

Subclause 266(1) introduces a concessionary tariff provision (code 2531) in Schedule II to the *Customs Tariff* to remove the customs duties on goods specifically designed for people with disabilities. For a number of years, the *Customs Tariff* has provided duty-free entry for certain goods specified by Order, which are designed for the use of persons with disabilities. The February 1997 Federal Budget announced that, effective February 18, 1997, the *Customs Tariff* would be amended to eliminate the tariff on all goods specifically designed for people with disabilities.

This amendment is effective February 18, 1997. Further, the amendment does not apply to goods imported after the coming into force of Bill C-11. (C-11 replaces the *Customs Tariff* with a new, simpler Tariff.) This is because Bill C-11 contains provisions that replicate those that would be enacted by subclause 266(1).

Clause 266**Withholding –
Amounts Deducted and Not Remitted**

Employment Insurance Act
86(2) and (2.1)

Subsections 86(2) and (2.1) of the *Employment Insurance Act* provide for a deemed trust in respect of amounts deducted by an employer from the remuneration of an employee on account of unemployment insurance premiums. The amendments to this subsection are similar to the amendments to subsection 227(4) of the *Income Tax Act* and they apply from the time that subsection 86(2) of the *Employment Insurance Act* took effect (i.e., June 30, 1996).

Clause 267**Electronic Records**

Employment Insurance Act
87(3.1) and (3.2)

Subsection 87(3) of the *Employment Insurance Act* requires every employer paying remuneration to a person employed by the employer in insurable employment to keep records and books of account. New subsection 87(3.1) of the Act requires an employer who keeps records in an electronic format to retain them in that format for the retention period referred to in subsection 87(2) of the Act. New subsection 87(3.2) of the Act enables the Minister to exempt an employer or a class of employees from the requirement to keep their records in electronic format under such terms and conditions as are acceptable to the Minister.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 268

Appeal to the Tax Court of Canada

Employment Insurance Act

103(1)

Subsection 103(1) of the *Employment Insurance Act* provides for an appeal to the Tax Court of Canada of a decision on an appeal to the Minister of National Revenue in respect of a ruling or an assessment. Currently, the rules governing those appeals are found in the *Tax Court of Canada Rules of Procedure respecting the Unemployment Insurance Act*. Subsection 103(1) is amended to provide that such an appeal shall be made in accordance with the *Tax Court of Canada Act*. Therefore, the rules governing those appeals will be contained in both the above-mentioned Rules of Procedure and the *Tax Court of Canada Act*.

Subsection 103(1) also provides that the Court may, on application made within 90 days after a decision is communicated, extend the time for filing an appeal. This amendment extends the time in which such an application may be made to 90 days after the expiration of the 90-day appeal period.

This amendment applies in respect of appeals instituted after the fourth month following the month in which this Act receives Royal Assent.

Extension of Time to Appeal

Employment Insurance Act

103(1.1)

New subsection 103(1.1) of the *Employment Insurance Act* provides that the provisions of section 167 of the *Income Tax Act* (extension of time to appeal) apply with the exception of paragraph 167(5)(a) of that Act. That paragraph limits the time within which an application for an extension may be filed to one year after the expiration of 90 days after the mailing of a notice of objection. The balance of section 167 deals with the contents of the application and how that application is made.

This amendment applies in respect of appeals instituted after the fourth month following the month in which this Act receives Royal Assent.

Reasons for Decisions

Employment Insurance Act

103(3)

Subsection 103(3) of the *Employment Insurance Act* provides that when the Tax Court of Canada hears an appeal in respect of a ruling or an assessment, it must notify the parties to the appeal, in writing, of the reasons for its decision. In order to achieve greater procedural harmonization between income tax and employment insurance matters, this amendment removes the obligation on the Tax Court to provide written reasons for its decision. In this respect, amended subsection 103(3) will be similar to section 18.23 of the *Tax Court of Canada Act*, which governs appeals under the *Income Tax Act* that are subject to the informal procedure.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 269

Regulations for Delegation

Employment Insurance Act

108(1.1)

New subsection 108(1.1) is added to the *Employment Insurance Act* to provide that the Minister of National Revenue may administratively delegate powers and duties of that Minister under that Act to an officer or a class of officers in the Department. This new subsection replaces the requirement in the former *Unemployment Insurance Act* that such delegation be done by regulation. This amendment will allow a more timely revision of the delegation of the Minister's powers and duties required by an amendment to the Act or a reorganization within Revenue Canada, and is consequential to similar amendments to the *Income Tax Act*.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 270

Judges Sitting as Umpires

Employment Insurance Act
112(2)

Subsection 112(2) of the *Employment Insurance Act* currently provides that only judges and former judges appointed under a federal or provincial Act of Parliament may be appointed as an employment insurance umpire. This subsection is amended, with application after Royal Assent, to provide that superior court judges and former superior court judges may also be appointed to act in this capacity.

Clause 271

Judicial Authorization

Employment Insurance Act
126(16) and (19)

The Minister of National Revenue must, pursuant to subsection 126(15) of the Act, obtain judicial authorization before imposing a requirement that a person provide information related to unnamed third parties. Subsection 126(16) of the Act sets out the conditions that must be met before such judicial authorization is granted. Paragraphs 126(16)(c) and (d) of the Act are repealed in order to simplify those conditions. The amendment to subsection (19) of the Act is consequential on the repeal of paragraphs 126(16)(c) and (d). Both these amendments, which apply on Royal Assent, are consequential on the repeal of paragraphs 231.2(3)(c) and (d) of the *Income Tax Act*, which were repealed in Bill C-36.

Clause 272**Time for Repayment***Employment Insurance Act*
145(7)

A claimant required to make a benefit repayment must repay the amount within a specific time. Subsection 145(7) of the Act sets out the date by which this repayment must be made, which, in the previous wording, referred to the date in section 146 of the Act. Since section 146 is being amended to use current terms from the *Income Tax Act*, subsection 145(7) is amended to require that the repayment must be made by April 30 in the next year, or, in the case of a claimant who dies after October in the year and before May in the next year, within six months after the day of death. This amendment is deemed to have come into force on June 30, 1996.

Clause 273**Returns***Employment Insurance Act*
146(b)

A claimant required to make a benefit repayment must submit the social benefits repayment portions of the tax return. Section 146 of the Act sets out the time periods in which this return must be filed. As a result of changes to the filing requirements in the *Income Tax Act*, this provision is amended to refer to the claimants filing-due date, as defined in subsection 248(1) of the *Income Tax Act*. This amendment is deemed to have come into force on June 30, 1996.

Clause 274

Appeals – Written Reasons Not Required

Employment Insurance Act 159(1.01)

Section 159 of the *Employment Insurance Act* deals with how various matters previously instituted under the *Unemployment Insurance Act* are to be dealt with under the *Employment Insurance Act*.

Subsection 70(2) of the *Unemployment Insurance Act* provided that the Tax Court of Canada could vary, reverse or affirm an assessment of the Minister of National Revenue. It also required that the Tax Court provide written reasons for any such decision. New subsection 159(1.01) of the *Employment Insurance Act* provides that subsection 70(2) of the *Unemployment Insurance Act* continues to apply in respect of appeals under that Act; however, the Court need not provide written reasons for any such decision. The amendment parallels similar amendments to the *Canada Pension Plan* and the *Employment Insurance Act* in respect of appeals under those Acts.

Subsection 159(1.01) applies after Royal Assent.

Clause 275

Definitions

Excise Tax Act 2

Section 2 of the *Excise Tax Act* is amended to add a definition of "document" and of "record". These definitions are made to parallel the definitions under Part IX of the Act. These amendments apply on Royal Assent.

Clause 276**Records and Books of Account***Excise Tax Act*

20.2(2)

Subsection 20.2(2) of the *Excise Tax Act* requires each licensed carrier that is required to make a return of the amounts described in paragraph 20(1)(b) of the Act to keep records and books of account. This subsection is amended to add a reference to new subsection 98(2.01) of the Act, which deals with the retention of electronic records. These amendments come into force on Royal Assent.

Clause 277**Exception – First Split-Run Edition***Excise Tax Act*

38.1

In December 1995 the *Excise Tax Act* was amended to impose an excise tax on split-run editions of periodicals. The tax is payable by either the publisher, a person related to the publisher, the distributor, the printer or the wholesaler of the periodical. The taxpayer is the first person on this list who is resident in Canada.

Some concern has been expressed that periodical distributors, printers and wholesalers could face a tax liability on an issue before they are reasonably able to determine whether a particular periodical is a split-run periodical. To give potential taxpayers more time to become aware of new split-run titles before incurring tax liability, new section 38.1 of the Act exempts from the tax the first split-run issue of a periodical if the person who would otherwise be responsible for paying the tax is the distributor, printer or wholesaler. This exemption will apply to periodicals published after March 6, 1996.

Clause 278

Electronic Records

Excise Tax Act

98(2.01) and (2.02)

Subsection 98(1) of the *Excise Tax Act* compels every person who is required to pay or collect taxes or other sums or to affix or cancel stamps, or every person who makes an application under any of sections 68 to 70 of the Act, to keep records and books of account. New subsection (2.01) requires a person who keeps records in an electronic format to retain them in that format for the retention period referred to in subsection 98(2) of the Act. New subsection (2.02) enables the Minister to exempt a person or a class of persons from the requirement to keep their records in an electronic format under such terms and conditions as are acceptable to the Minister.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 279

Copies as Evidence

Excise Tax Act

100(1.1)

Subsection 100(1.1) of the *Excise Tax Act* permits the making of copies of documents obtained in certain circumstances. This subsection is amended to enable the making of a print-out of an electronic document and sets out that this print-out, as well as a copy of any document, is evidence of the nature and content of the original document and has the same probative force as the original document.

This amendment applies to copies and print-outs made after Royal Assent.

Clause 280**Proof of Documents**

Excise Tax Act
105(5)

An affidavit may be sworn by an officer who has charge of the appropriate records and, in such cases, a document annexed to an affidavit is a true copy of a document and is evidence of the nature and contents of the document. Subsection 105(5) of the *Excise Tax Act* is amended to give this same effect to a print-out of an electronic document. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 281**Definitions**

Excise Tax Act
123(1)

Subsection 123(1) of the *Excise Tax Act* is amended to add various items to the definition of record, and states that these items may be in writing or in any other form. These amendments apply on Royal Assent.

Clause 282**Electronic Records**

Excise Tax Act
286(3.1) and (3.2)

Subsection 286(1) of the *Excise Tax Act* compels every person who carries on a business or is engaged in a commercial activity in Canada, every person who is required under Part IX of that Act to file a return and every person who makes an application for a rebate or refund to keep records and books of account. New subsection (3.1) requires a person who keeps records in an electronic format to retain them in that format for the retention period referred

to in subsection 286(3) of the Act. New subsection (3.2) enables the Minister to exempt a person or a class of persons from the requirement to keep their records in an electronic format under such terms and conditions as are acceptable to the Minister.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 283

Copies as Evidence

Excise Tax Act

291(1)

Subsection 291(1) of the *Excise Tax Act* permits the making of copies of documents obtained in certain circumstances, and states that the copy made has the same probative force as the original document. This subsection is amended to enable the making of a print-out of an electronic document and sets out that this print-out has the same probative force as the original document.

This amendment applies to copies and print-outs made after Royal Assent.

Clause 284

Provision of Information

Excise Tax Act

295

Paragraph 295(4)(b) and subparagraph 295(5)(d)(ii) of the *Excise Tax Act* were amended, effective June 30, 1996, to replace references to the *Unemployment Insurance Act* with references to the *Employment Insurance Act*. These provisions are amended by adding a reference to the *Unemployment Insurance Act*, to ensure that they apply in respect of legal proceedings relating to the administration or enforcement of that Act.

This amendment is deemed to have come into force on June 30, 1996.

Clause 285

Proof of Documents

Excise Tax Act
335(5)

An affidavit may be sworn by an officer who has charge of the appropriate records and, in such cases, a document annexed to an affidavit is a true copy of a document and is evidence of the nature and contents of the document. Subsection 335(5) of the Act is amended to give this same effect to a print-out of an electronic document. This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 286

Periodic Pension Payment

Income Tax Conventions Interpretation Act
5

Canada's tax treaties generally treat a "periodic pension payment" differently from a lump sum payment from a similar source. Section 5 of the *Income Tax Conventions Interpretation Act* (ITCIA) defines what constitutes a "periodic pension payment" for the purpose of Canada's tax treaties.

Paragraph (c) of the definition of "periodic pension payment" generally includes a payment received in a year under a registered retirement income fund (RRIF), unless the total of the payment (and all previous payments in the year under the RRIF) exceeds the greater of:

- twice what the "minimum amount" under the fund for the year would be if the definition "minimum amount" applied to all RRIFs, including those entered into before March 1986, and

- 10 per cent of the fair market value of the property held in connection with the fund at the beginning of the year.

Note that in calculating these amounts, where property has been transferred to the carrier in the year before the particular payment is made, it is assumed that the transferred property was actually held in connection with the fund at the beginning of the year (referred to below as the "transfer assumption").

Paragraph (c) of the definition of "periodic pension payment" is amended so that the definition generally includes a payment made in the year under an RRIF, unless the total of the payment and all payments previously made in the year under the RRIF exceeds the total of:

- the greater of
 - twice what the minimum amount under the fund for the year would be if the transfer assumption were made, the definition "minimum amount" applied to all RRIFs, including those entered into before March 1986, and the value of C in that definition were nil, and
 - 10 per cent of the fair market value of the property (other than any properties that are annuity contracts that cannot be surrendered for cash) held in connection with the fund at the beginning of the year, determined as if the transfer assumption were made, and
- the total periodic payments previously received by the RRIF trust in the year under annuity contracts held by the trust that are qualified investments (as defined by subsection 146.3(1) of the *Income Tax Act*) and that cannot be surrendered for cash.

This amendment is intended to ensure that, where an RRIF trust receives periodic payments under an annuity contract that it holds as a qualified investment, each payment flowed out to the RRIF annuitant is a "periodic pension payment".

Paragraph (c) excludes certain types, and portions of certain types, of RRIF payments. Paragraph (c) is also amended so that each type of RRIF payment ignored for the purpose of the existing rules is now

described as a "specified portion" of an RRIF payment – a term that is defined in new subsection 5.1(2) of the ITCIA. This amendment does not represent a change in policy.

This amendment applies to amounts paid after 1997.

Clause 287

Definition – "specified portion"

Income Tax Conventions Interpretation Act
5.1

Paragraph (c) of the definition "periodic pension payment" in section 5 of the *Income Tax Conventions Interpretation Act* (ITCIA) excludes certain types, and portions of certain types, of RRIF payments from being periodic pension payments. Paragraph (c) is amended so that any portion of an RRIF payment excluded for the purpose of the existing rules is now described as a "specified portion" of an RRIF payment – a term that is defined in new subsection 5.1(2) of the ITCIA. The ignored RRIF payments are those not required to be included in computing income and those for which "rollover" treatment is available under paragraph 60(l) of the *Income Tax Act*.

This amendment applies to amounts paid after 1997.

Clause 288

Provision of Information

Old Age Security Act
33(2)(c)

Paragraph 33(2)(c) of the *Old Age Security Act* allows for the provision of information obtained pursuant to the *Old Age Security Act* or the regulations to any officer or employee of the Department of National Health and Welfare for the purposes of the administration of certain Acts. The subsection is amended, applicable after August 27, 1995, to delete references to the *Children's Special Allowances Act* and the *Income Tax Act* as a result of the transfer of

the eligibility portion of the child tax benefit program to the Department of National Revenue.

Clause 289

Deputy Judges of the Court

Tax Court of Canada Act

9

Section 9 of the *Tax Court of Canada Act* provides for the appointment of deputy judges to the Tax Court. Subsection 9(1) of the Act provides that any judge or former judge of a superior, county or district court in Canada, or any judge or former judge of any other court who was appointed pursuant to a federal or provincial Act of Parliament, may be so appointed.

Subsection 9(1) is amended, with application after Royal Assent, to provide that former judges of the Tax Court of Canada may also be so appointed.

Clause 290

Extensions of Time

Tax Court of Canada Act

12(4)

Subsection 12(4) of the *Tax Court of Canada Act* lists the various statutes that provide for the Tax Court's exclusive jurisdiction to hear and determine applications for an extension of time. This subsection is amended, with application after Royal Assent, to add references to applications for extensions of time made under the *Employment Insurance Act* and the *Canada Pension Plan*.

Clause 291**General Procedure for Tax Appeals***Tax Court of Canada Act*

17.2(1) to (3)

Section 17.2 of the *Tax Court of Canada Act* contains the proceedings applicable to appeals arising under the *Income Tax Act* and Part IX of the *Excise Tax Act* (GST) that are governed by the general procedure. Subsections 17.2(1) and (2) of the Act are amended to provide that the originating document may be filed not only by depositing it in, or mailing it to, the Registry of the Court but also by any other means (including electronic means) that may be provided for in the rules of Court (e.g., by facsimile transmission).

New subsection 17.2(2.1) of the Act provides that an originating document is deemed to be filed the day it is received by the Registry of the Court. This amendment removes uncertainty that occurs in determining when an appeal received by mail by the Registry was actually sent. New subsection 17.2(2.2) of the Act requires that, whenever the originating document is filed by a means other than mail or deposit, the appellant or his or her lawyer must send the original of the document and two copies thereof to the Registry of the Court. This will ensure that the Registry may adequately verify the accuracy of the copies of the originating document that must be served on the Deputy Attorney General of Canada under subsection 17.2(3) of the Act.

A consequential amendment is also made to subsection 17.2(3) so that the obligation for the Registry of the Court to transmit copies of the originating document is created at the time the Registry receives the original of the document as opposed to the time of filing. This is of particular importance where the document is filed by sending a copy of the originating document, as opposed to the original, by electronic means.

The amendments apply in respect of appeals instituted after the fourth month that follows the month in which this Act receives Royal Assent.

Clause 292

Informal Procedure for Tax Appeals

Tax Court of Canada Act

18.15

Section 18.15 of the *Tax Court of Canada Act* describes how appeals arising under the *Income Tax Act* and Part IX of the *Excise Tax Act* (GST) may be made to the Tax Court under the informal procedure. It is to be noted that section 18.15 applies to GST appeals because section 18.302 of the Act renders section 18.15 applicable to appeals referred to in section 18.3001 of the Act, that is, to GST appeals.

Filing Fee

Tax Court of Canada Act

18.15(3)

Subsection 18.15(3) of the *Tax Court of Canada Act* is amended to add paragraph (b). This paragraph provides that a taxpayer must pay a filing fee of \$100 when instituting an appeal governed by the informal procedure.

This amendment applies to appeals instituted after the fourth month that follows the month in which this Act is assented to.

Manner of Filing an Appeal

Tax Court of Canada Act

18.15(3.1) to (3.3)

Subsection 18.15(3.1) of the *Tax Court of Canada Act* is amended to provide that a written appeal may be filed not only by depositing it in, or mailing it to, the Registry of the Court but also by any other means (including electronic means) that may be provided for in the rules of Court (e.g., by facsimile transmission).

New subsection 18.15(3.2) of the Act provides that a written appeal is deemed to be filed the day it is received by the Registry of the Court. This amendment removes uncertainty that occurs in determining when an appeal received by mail by the Registry was actually sent. New

subsection 18.15(3.3) of the Act requires that, whenever the written appeal is filed by a means other than mail or deposit, the appellant or his or her counsel or agent must send the original of the document to the Registry of the Court.

New subsections 18.15(3.1) to (3.3) apply to appeals instituted after the fourth month following the month in which this Act receives Royal Assent.

Waiver of Filing Fee

Tax Court of Canada Act
18.15(3.4) and (3.5)

Subsections 18.15(3.4) and (3.5) are being added to the *Tax Court of Canada Act* as a consequence of the introduction of the new requirement to pay a filing fee when an appeal under the *Income Tax Act* or part IX of the *Excise Tax Act* (GST) is instituted in the Tax Court and the appellant elects to have the informal procedure apply to the proceedings.

New subsection 18.15(3.4) allows the appellant to make an application to the Court not to have to pay the filing fee. The Court may grant that request if it believes that the levy of the fee would cause severe financial hardship to the applicant. The following situation may be an example of severe financial hardship: A is a single parent who has a dispute regarding the quantum of child tax benefit for which he or she is eligible. A's sole source of income is social assistance.

In deciding whether or not to grant such a request, new subsection 18.15(3.5) provides that the Court may solely consider the information contained in the written appeal. That subsection does not provide authority for the Court to access any other document or ask for representation from the appellant or the Attorney-General of Canada.

New subsections 18.15(3.4) and (3.5) apply to appeals instituted after the fourth month following the month in which this Act receives Royal Assent.

Clause 293**Reimbursement of Filing Fees***Tax Court of Canada Act*

18.26

Section 18.26 of the *Tax Court of Canada Act* provides that if an income tax appeal governed by the informal procedure is allowed, the Tax Court may, depending on the extent to which the appellant is successful, award costs to an appellant. The section is amended to provide that, where the appeal is allowed, the appellant that paid a filing fee in accordance with paragraph 18.15(3)(b) of the Act has the right to be reimbursed the fee by the Court even if the appellant has been successful in part only.

This amendment is effective upon Royal Assent.

Clause 294**Variation of Filing Fee***Tax Court of Canada Act*

18.27

Section 18.27 of the *Tax Court of Canada Act* provides the Governor in Council with the authority to make regulations to increase, amongst other things, the threshold amounts that an income tax appeal must meet to qualify, upon the making of an election to that effect by the appellant, for the application of the informal procedure. Subsection 18.27(1) of the Act is amended by adding paragraph (d). This paragraph provides the Governor in Council with the authority to make regulations to vary the amount of the filing fee that a taxpayer who elected that a GST or ITA appeal be governed by the informal procedure must pay under paragraph 18.15(3)(b) of the Act. The amount of \$100 would, therefore, be capable of being increased or decreased by a regulation made by the Governor in Council.

This amendment is effective upon Royal Assent.

Clause 295**Appeals Other Than Income Tax or GST***Tax Court of Canada Act*

18.29(1) and (3)

Subsection 18.29(1) of the *Tax Court of Canada Act* provides that the provisions governing the informal procedure for income tax appeals also apply to appeals arising under Part I of the *Canada Pension Plan*, Parts III or VII of the *Unemployment Insurance Act* or, to some extent, the *Old Age Security Act*, the *War Veterans Allowance Act* or Part XI of the *Civilian War Pensions and Allowances Act*.

The first amendment to subsection 18.29(1), which applies on Royal Assent, ensures that no filing fee will be levied where an appeal governed by the informal procedure arises under any of the above-mentioned legislation. This is achieved by deleting from the list of provisions referred to in that provision paragraph 18.15(3)(b) and subsections 18.15(3.4) and (3.5) of the Act.

The second amendment to subsection 18.29(1) provides that new subsections 18.15(3.1) to (3.3) of the Act, which deal with the manner of filing an appeal, apply in respect of the above-mentioned legislation. In particular, the reference to subsection 18.15(3.2) deems a written appeal to be filed on the day it is received by the Registry of the Court.

Finally, subsection 18.29(3) of the Act is amended to provide that subsection 18.15(3.2) applies, in addition to the provisions already referred to in subsection 18.29(1), to applications for extension of time to make an objection or an appeal under the *Income Tax Act* or Part IX of the *Excise Tax Act* (GST). In addition, references to applications for extensions of time under the *Employment Insurance Act* and the *Canada Pension Plan* have been added.

The second amendment to subsection 18.29(1) and the amendment to subsection 18.29(3) apply in respect of appeals instituted after the fourth month following the month in which this Act receives Royal Assent.

Clauses 296 and 297

GST Appeals

Tax Court of Canada Act

18.3001 and 18.3002

Sections 18.3001 to 18.302 of the *Tax Court of Canada Act* apply to appeals arising under Part IX of the *Excise Tax Act* (GST).

Section 18.3001 and subsection 18.3002(1) currently refer to section 18.301 of the Act. However, that section was renumbered as 18.302 by section 224 of Chapter 27 of the Statutes of Canada, 1993, effective upon Royal Assent, June 10, 1993. The amendments to section 18.3001 and subsection 18.3002(1) substitute a reference to section 18.302 of the Act for the reference to section 18.301.

The amendments are deemed to have come into force on June 10, 1993.

Clause 298

Reimbursement of Filing Fee

Tax Court of Canada Act

18.3009

Section 18.3009 of the *Tax Court of Canada Act* provides that where a GST appeal governed by the informal procedure is allowed, the Tax Court may, depending on the extent to which the appellant is successful, award costs to the appellant. The section is amended to provide that, where the appeal is allowed, an appellant that paid a filing fee in accordance with paragraph 18.15(3)(b) of that Act has the right to be reimbursed the fee by the Court even if the appellant has been successful in part only.

The amendment is effective upon Royal Assent.

Clauses 299 and 300**Definitions and Filing Requirements***Tax Rebate Discounting Act*

2(1)

The *Tax Rebate Discounting Act* establishes the procedures to be followed by tax discounters who acquire the right to a taxpayer's income tax refund, including the filing of prescribed forms.

The definition "Minister" in this Act is being amended to refer to the Minister of National Revenue as a consequence of the transfer of the administration of this Act from the Department of Industry to the Department of National Revenue.

The definition "prescribed" in this Act is being amended to remove the need to amend the regulations made under this Act in order to change the content of prescribed forms. The amendment will allow the prescribed forms to be revised on the authorization of the Minister of National Revenue, the same as the procedure followed for revising prescribed forms under the other Acts administered by that Minister.

Subparagraph 4(1)(b)(i) of the Act is being amended to delete the requirement that the discounting transaction be described in a prescribed manner. This change is consequential to the amendment of the definition "prescribed" described above. There is no need to refer to a prescribed manner, the description of the transaction will be part of the prescribed form.

These amendments apply on Royal Assent.

Clause 301

Prescribed Form of Notice

Tax Rebate Discounting Act 5(b)

Paragraph 5(b) of the French version of the *Tax Rebate Discounting Act* is amended to reflect the amendments made to the definition of "prescribed" in the English version of the Act, as the French version of the Act does not contain such a definition.

This amendment applies on Royal Assent.

Clause 302

UI Withholdings

Unemployment Insurance Act 57(2)

Subsection 57(2) of the *Unemployment Insurance Act* formerly provided for a deemed trust in respect of amounts deducted by an employer from the remuneration of an employee on account of unemployment insurance premiums. The amendments to this subsection are similar to the amendment to subsection 227(4) of the *Income Tax Act*. This amendment is deemed to have come into force on June 15, 1994.

Clause 303

Disposition of Farmland

Western Grains Transition Payments Act 4(4)

Subsection 4(4) deals with the income tax treatment of payments received under the *Western Grain Transition Payments Act*. Subsection 4(4) of the Act is amended to clarify that, where a payment is received by a taxpayer in respect of farmland that was

held as capital property and that was disposed of by the taxpayer before receipt of the payment, the amount must be applied to reduce the adjusted cost base of the land immediately before the disposition. This ensures that taxpayers who dispose of their farmland before receiving the payment are treated as advantageously for tax purposes as those who had received the payment before disposition.

This amendment applies to payments made after June 22, 1995.

Clause 304

Small Business Deduction

S.C. 1988, c. 55
102(1) and (5)

Income Tax Act
125(1)

Subsection 125(1) of the *Income Tax Act* establishes the special low rate of tax applicable to the income of a Canadian-controlled private corporation from an active business carried on in Canada. This preferential tax rate is provided by way of an annual tax credit, commonly referred to as the "small business deduction". This amendment repeals certain of the provisions enacting the 1988 amendments to subsection 125(1) of the Act. It is strictly consequential on the amendment to subsection 125(1) of the Act contained in this legislation, which corrects an error that occurred at the time of the 1988 amendments.

Clause 305

Foreign Affiliates

S.C. 1995, c. 21
46(8)

Subsection 46(8) of *An Act to amend the Income Tax Act, the Income Tax Application Rules and related Acts*, being chapter 21 of the Statutes of Canada, 1995 provided the coming into force for certain

amendments to the foreign affiliate rules in the *Income Tax Act*, including an amendment to subsection 95(6) of that Act. Subsection 46(8), which is being replaced by new subsections 46(8) and (9), indicated that those amendments applied to taxation years of foreign affiliates that began after 1994, except that, where there was a change to the taxation year of a foreign affiliate in 1994 and after February 22, 1994, the amended subsection applied to taxation years of the foreign affiliate that ended after 1994 unless certain conditions were met.

The coming into force for the amendment to subsection 95(6) of the *Income Tax Act* has been changed by new subsection 46(9). That amendment now applies to rights acquired and shares acquired or disposed of in taxation years of foreign affiliates that begin after 1994, except that, where there was a change to the taxation year of a foreign affiliate in 1994 and after February 22, 1994, the amendment applies to rights acquired and shares acquired or disposed of in taxation years of the foreign affiliate that end after 1994. However, where a written request to change the taxation year of a particular foreign affiliate was made before February 22, 1994 to the income taxation authority of the country in which the affiliate was resident and subject to income taxation, or where the change in taxation year causes the first taxation year commencing after 1994 to commence earlier than if there had been no change in the affiliate's taxation year, the amendment will remain applicable to rights acquired and shares acquired or disposed of in taxation years of foreign affiliates that began after 1994.

Clause 306

Scientific Research and Experimental Development

Income Tax Budget Amendments Act
30(26) and (26.1)

Subsection 30(26) of the *Income Tax Budget Amendments Act*, S.C. 1996, c. 21, provides the coming-into-force for a number of changes to provisions of the *Income Tax Act* relating to scientific research and experimental development (SR&ED).

Before these changes, where a taxpayer (the "payer") contracted with another person (the "performer") with whom the payer was not dealing at non-arm's length for the performance of SR&ED, the payer would generally have a qualified expenditure in the amount of the payment paid or payable under the contract, while for the performer the amount would be a contract payment which would reduce the performer's total expenditures eligible for SR&ED treatment.

Section 30 of the *Income Tax Budget Amendments Act*, amended the definitions "contract payment" and "qualified expenditure" in subsection 127(9) of the *Income Tax Act* to provide that payments under contracts made between non-arm's length parties would no longer constitute qualified expenditures for payers, or contract payments for performers. That is, in non-arm's length SR&ED contract situations, it is now the SR&ED performer who is eligible to claim SR&ED tax treatment in respect of the expenditures to which the contract relates. This amendment applies to taxation years that begin after 1995.

However, because paragraph (f) of the definition "qualified expenditure", which now generally excludes amounts paid under non-arm's length contracts, contemplates a taxpayer who is a payer and not a performer in respect of an SR&ED contract, while the definition "contract payment" contemplates a taxpayer who is a performer of SR&ED under a contract, in certain circumstances where a non-arm's length payer and performer do not have the same taxation year end, the existing coming-into-force of these changes could have unintended results.

EXAMPLE:

A non-arm's length payer has a taxation year beginning February 1, 1996, to which the new provisions apply, while the performer has a taxation year beginning November 1, 1995, to which the old provisions apply. The payer will not have a qualified expenditure in respect of the non-arm's length payment under the new rules. The payment will be a contract payment for the performer which will reduce its qualified expenditures. As a result, according to the existing coming-into-force no taxpayer will be eligible for SR&ED tax treatment in respect of the SR&ED performed under the contract.

Amended subsection 30(26) and new subsection 30(26.1) address this by providing that, in situations such as this where taxation years of contracting parties fall on opposite sides of the original coming-into-force, the relevant amounts are deemed to be governed by the new rules, such that the performer, and not the payer, is eligible for SR&ED treatment in respect of the amount.

These provisions are deemed to have come into force on June 20, 1996.

Clause 307

Definitions – Support

Income Tax Budget Amendments Act, 1996
9(8)

Subsection 9(8) of the *Income Tax Budget Amendments Act, 1996* provides that the definitions "child support amount", "commencement day" and "support amount" in subsection 56.1(4) of the *Income Tax Act*, which are relevant under the new tax regime applicable to support amounts, are applicable after 1996. An exception is provided under that subsection to ensure that amounts received under decrees, orders, judgment or written agreements that were subject to the former regime, and which were not required to be included in the recipient's income continue to be tax exempt, provided the amounts paid for the support of children are not modified after April 1997.

This amendment ensures that the tax treatment of support payments triggered by events that occurred before the implementation of the new regime is not modified. This includes certain amounts payable under court orders or written agreements entered into or last amended after March 27, 1987 and before 1988 and which, following the Gagnon decision (86 DTC 6179), were ruled deductible by the payers (even though the recipients had no discretion as to their use). Despite their deductibility from a payer's standpoint, those amounts were not required to be included in the recipients' incomes.

Also, with respect to marriage breakdowns that occurred before 1993, in order for a recipient to be taxed on support amounts received, the payer and the recipient had to live apart pursuant to their divorce,

judicial separation or written separation agreement. This amendment ensures that the new regime does not subject to tax amounts that were exempt because this particular requirement was not met in the hands of the recipients.

This amendment is retroactive to April 25, 1997, which is the date the legislation implementing the new tax regime for support amounts was assented to.

Clause 308

Canadian Exploration Expenses, Canadian Development Expenses, and Canadian Oil and Gas Property Expenses

Income Tax Budget Amendments Act, 1996
18(10)

Subsection 87(4.4) of the *Income Tax Act* applies where a corporation that has entered into a flow-through share arrangement with a shareholder amalgamates with another corporation. The rules in this subsection generally enable the corporation formed as a consequence of the amalgamation to renounce expenses incurred after the amalgamation to the shareholder.

Two amendments to subsection 87(4.4) were made in the *Income Tax Budget Amendments Act, 1996*. One amendment eliminated a reference to flow-through share renunciations under subsection 66(12.64), together with a corresponding reference in subsection 87(4.4) to Canadian oil and gas property expenses. This amendment was consequential on the repeal of subsection 66(12.74). The existing text of the coming-into-force provision is flawed with regard to amalgamations that occur after 1995 and before 1999 because that corresponding reference has been omitted.

Subsection 18(10) of the *Income Tax Budget Amendments Act, 1996*, which brought this change into force, has been corrected in respect of such amalgamations to include the corresponding reference to Canadian oil and gas property expenses.

